

Manual Guide - Notebook Series I & II

This manual covers **two** notebook series, and this document contains two manuals with information relating to both notebook series. The main difference between the two notebook series is in the chipset and CPU's supported as outlined in the table below.

Feature	Notebook Series I	Notebook Series II		Feature
Chipset	Mobile Intel® HM70 Express Chipset	Mobile Intel® HM76 Express Chipset		Chipset
Supported CPU List	Intel® Pentium® B980	Intel® Core i7-3612QM	Intel® Core i3-2350M	Supported CPU List
	Intel® Pentium® B970	Intel® Core i7-3520M	Intel® Core i3-2330M	
	Intel® Pentium® B960	Intel® Core i5-3360M	Intel® Core i3-2310M	
	Intel® Pentium® B950	Intel® Core i5-3320M	Intel® Pentium® B970	
	Intel® Pentium® B840	Intel® Core i5-3210M	Intel® Pentium® B960	
	Intel® Celeron® B820	Intel® Core i7-2620M	Intel® Pentium® B950	
	Intel® Celeron® B815	Intel® Core i5-2540M	Intel® Pentium® B940	
	Intel® Celeron® B810	Intel® Core i5-2520M	Intel® Pentium® B840	
	Intel® Celeron® B730	Intel® Core i5-2450M	Intel® Celeron® B815	
	Intel® Celeron® B720	Intel® Core i5-2430M	Intel® Celeron® B810	
		Intel® Core i5-2410M	Intel® Celeron® B800	
	Intel® Core i3-3110M	Intel® Celeron® B720		
	Intel® Core i3-2370M	Intel® Celeron® B710		

Within each of the two series there are **three** different models (entitled **Models A, B & C**, with different design styles differing in color, general appearance and features supported. Note that your computer may look slightly different from those pictured throughout either manual. See Appendix D at the end of each manual for full specification details. If you need any assistance you can contact your service representative for further help.

USER'S MANUAL

Notebook Series I

notebook



Notice

The company reserves the right to revise this publication or to change its contents without notice. Information contained herein is for reference only and does not constitute a commitment on the part of the manufacturer or any subsequent vendor. They assume no responsibility or liability for any errors or inaccuracies that may appear in this publication nor are they in anyway responsible for any loss or damage resulting from the use (or misuse) of this publication.

This publication and any accompanying software may not, in whole or in part, be reproduced, translated, transmitted or reduced to any machine readable form without prior consent from the vendor, manufacturer or creators of this publication, except for copies kept by the user for backup purposes.

Brand and product names mentioned in this publication may or may not be copyrights and/or registered trademarks of their respective companies. They are mentioned for identification purposes only and are not intended as an endorsement of that product or its manufacturer.

©June 2013

Trademarks

Intel, **Pentium** and **Intel Core** are trademarks/registered trademarks of Intel Corporation.

Preface

R&TTE Directive

This device is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of the R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC.

This device will be sold in the following EEA countries: Austria, Italy, Belgium, Liechtenstein, Denmark, Luxembourg, Finland, Netherlands, France, Norway, Germany, Portugal, Greece, Spain, Iceland, Sweden, Ireland, United Kingdom, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Estonia, Hungary, Latvia, Lithuania, Malta, Slovakia, Poland, Slovenia.

ErP Off Mode Power Consumption Statement:

The figures below note the power consumption of this computer in compliance with European Commission (EC) regulations on power consumption in off mode

- Off Mode < 0.5W

CE Marking

This device has been tested to and conforms to the regulatory requirements of the European Union and has attained CE Marking. The CE Mark is a conformity marking consisting of the letters “CE”. The CE Mark applies to products regulated by certain European health, safety and environmental protection legislation. The CE Mark is obligatory for products it applies to: the manufacturer affixes the marking in order to be allowed to sell his product in the European market.

This product conforms to the essential requirements of the R&TTE directive 1999/5/EC in order to attain CE Marking. A notified body has determined that this device has properly demonstrated that the requirements of the directive have been met and has issued a favorable certificate of expert opinion. As such the device will bear the notified body number 0560 after the CE mark.

The CE Marking is not a quality mark. Foremost, it refers to the safety rather than to the quality of a product. Secondly, CE Marking is mandatory for the product it applies to, whereas most quality markings are voluntary.

FCC Statement (Federal Communications Commission)

You are cautioned that changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Re orient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the service representative or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.

And

2. This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement:

1. This Transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.
2. This equipment complies with FCC RF radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20 centimeters between the radiator and your body.



Warning

Use only shielded cables to connect I/O devices to this equipment. You are cautioned that changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer for compliance with the above standards could void your authority to operate the equipment.

If your purchase option includes both **Wireless LAN** and **3.75G** modules, then the appropriate antennas will be installed. Note that In order to comply with FCC RF exposure compliance requirements, the antenna must not be co-located or operate in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Important Notice - 3G & Bluetooth/Wireless LAN Modules

In order to comply with FCC regulations you should NOT operate the 3G module and the Bluetooth/Wireless LAN modules at the same time as this may disrupt radio frequency, and cause interference. When the 3G module is powered on, make sure that the Bluetooth/Wireless LAN modules are powered off.

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

Follow basic safety precautions, including those listed below, to reduce the risk of fire, electric shock, and injury to persons when using any electrical equipment:

1. Do not use this product near water, for example near a bath tub, wash bowl, kitchen sink or laundry tub, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
2. Avoid using this equipment with a telephone line (other than a cordless type) during an electrical storm. There may be a remote risk of electrical shock from lightning.
3. Do not use the telephone to report a gas leak in the vicinity of the leak.
4. Use only the power cord and batteries indicated in this manual. Do not dispose of batteries in a fire. They may explode. Check with local codes for possible special disposal instructions.
5. This product is intended to be supplied by a Listed Power Unit with an AC Input of 100 - 240V, 50 - 60Hz, DC Output of 19V, 3.42A or 18.5V, 3.5A (**65 Watts**) minimum AC/DC Adapter.

This Computer's Optical Device is a Laser Class 1 Product

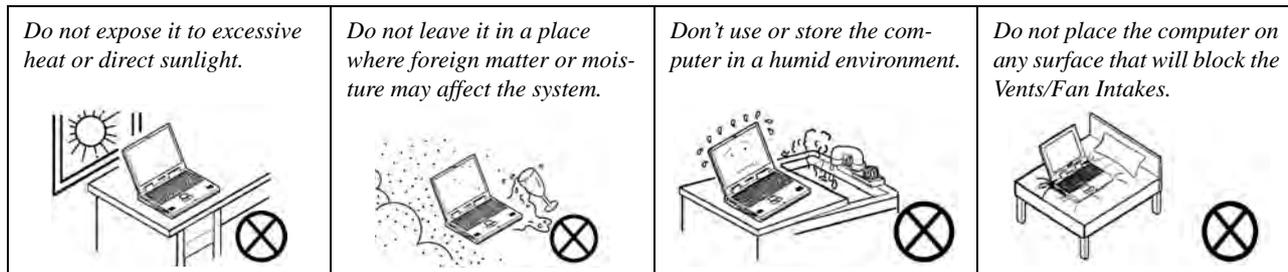
Instructions for Care and Operation

The notebook computer is quite rugged, but it can be damaged. To prevent this, follow these suggestions:

1. **Don't drop it, or expose it to shock.** If the computer falls, the case and the components could be damaged.

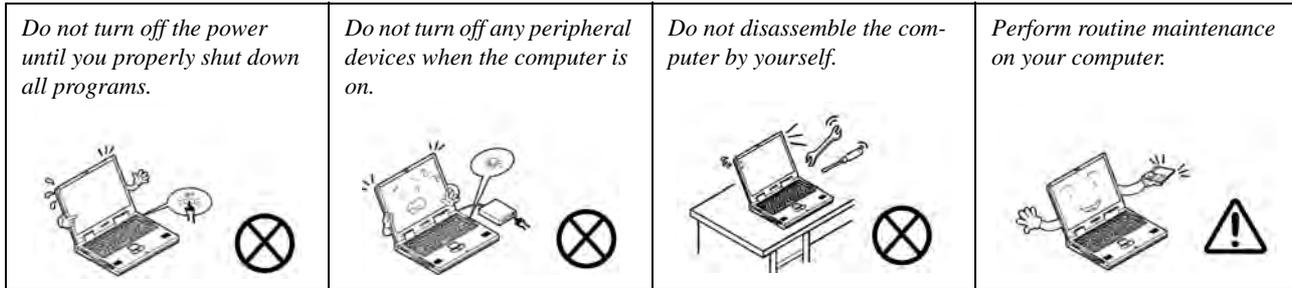


2. **Keep it dry, and don't overheat it.** Keep the computer and power supply away from any kind of heating element. This is an electrical appliance. If water or any other liquid gets into it, the computer could be badly damaged.

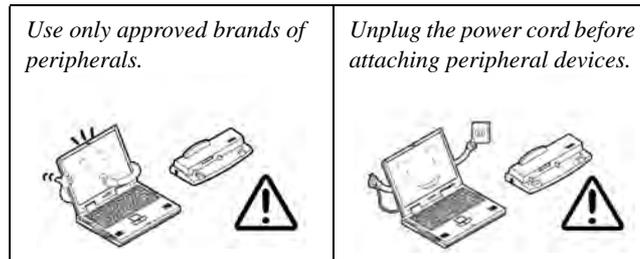


Preface

- Avoid interference.** Keep the computer away from high capacity transformers, electric motors, and other strong magnetic fields. These can hinder proper performance and damage your data.
- Follow the proper working procedures for the computer.** Shut the computer down properly and don't forget to save your work. Remember to periodically save your data as data may be lost if the battery is depleted.



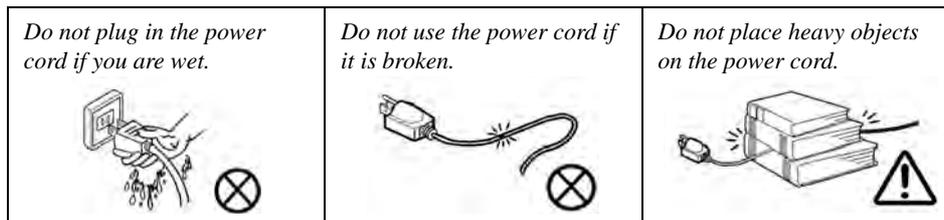
- Take care when using peripheral devices.**



Power Safety

The computer has specific power requirements:

- Only use a power adapter approved for use with this computer.
- Your AC/DC adapter may be designed for international travel but it still requires a steady, uninterrupted power supply. If you are unsure of your local power specifications, consult your service representative or local power company.
- The power adapter may have either a 2-prong or a 3-prong grounded plug. The third prong is an important safety feature; do not defeat its purpose. If you do not have access to a compatible outlet, have a qualified electrician install one.
- When you want to unplug the power cord, be sure to disconnect it by the plug head, not by its wire.
- Make sure the socket and any extension cord(s) you use can support the total current load of all the connected devices.
- Before cleaning the computer, make sure it is disconnected from any external power supplies (i.e. AC/DC adapter or car adapter).



Power Safety Warning

Before you undertake any upgrade procedures, make sure that you have turned off the power, and disconnected all peripherals and cables (including telephone lines and power cord).

You must also remove your battery in order to prevent accidentally turning the machine on. **Before removing the battery disconnect the AC/DC adapter from the computer.**

Polymer Battery Precautions

Note the following information which is specific to polymer batteries only, and where applicable, this overrides the general battery precaution information overleaf.

- Polymer batteries may experience a slight expansion or swelling, however this is part of the battery's safety mechanism and is not a cause for concern.
- Use proper handling procedures when using polymer batteries. Do not use polymer batteries in high ambient temperature environments, and do not store unused batteries for extended periods.

See also the general battery precautionary information overleaf for further information.

Battery Precautions

- Only use batteries designed for this computer. The wrong battery type may explode, leak or damage the computer.
- Do not remove any batteries from the computer while it is powered on.
- Do not continue to use a battery that has been dropped, or that appears damaged (e.g. bent or twisted) in any way. Even if the computer continues to work with a damaged battery in place, it may cause circuit damage, which may possibly result in fire.
- If you do not use the battery for an extended period, then remove the battery from the computer for storage.
- Recharge the batteries using the notebook's system. Incorrect recharging may make the battery explode.
- Do not try to repair a battery pack. Refer any battery pack repair or replacement to your service representative or qualified service personnel.
- Keep children away from, and promptly dispose of a damaged battery. Always dispose of batteries carefully. Batteries may explode or leak if exposed to fire, or improperly handled or discarded.
- Keep the battery away from metal appliances.
- Affix tape to the battery contacts before disposing of the battery.
- Do not touch the battery contacts with your hands or metal objects.



Battery Disposal & Caution

The product that you have purchased contains a rechargeable battery. The battery is recyclable. At the end of its useful life, under various state and local laws, it may be illegal to dispose of this battery into the municipal waste stream. Check with your local solid waste officials for details in your area for recycling options or proper disposal.

Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Discard used battery according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Cleaning

Do not apply cleaner directly to the computer; use a soft clean cloth.

Do not use volatile (petroleum distillates) or abrasive cleaners on any part of the computer.

Servicing

Do not attempt to service the computer yourself. Doing so may violate your warranty and expose you and the computer to electric shock. Refer all servicing to authorized service personnel. Unplug the computer from the power supply. Then refer servicing to qualified service personnel under any of the following conditions:

- When the power cord or AC/DC adapter is damaged or frayed.
- If the computer has been exposed to rain or other liquids.
- If the computer does not work normally when you follow the operating instructions.
- If the computer has been dropped or damaged (do not touch the poisonous liquid if the LCD panel breaks).
- If there is an unusual odor, heat or smoke coming from your computer.



Removal Warning

When removing any cover(s) and screw(s) for the purposes of device upgrade, remember to replace the cover(s) and screw(s) before restoring power to the system.

Also note the following when the cover is removed:

- Hazardous moving parts.
- Keep away from moving fan blades.

Travel Considerations

Packing

As you get ready for your trip, run through this list to make sure the system is ready to go:

1. Check that the battery pack and any spares are fully charged.
2. Power off the computer and peripherals.
3. Close the display panel and make sure it's latched.
4. Disconnect the AC/DC adapter and cables. Stow them in the carrying bag.
5. The AC/DC adapter uses voltages from 100 to 240 volts so you won't need a second voltage adapter. However, check with your travel agent to see if you need any socket adapters.
6. Put the notebook in its carrying bag and secure it with the bag's straps.
7. If you're taking any peripherals (e.g. a printer, mouse or digital camera), pack them and those devices' adapters and/or cables.
8. Anticipate customs - Some jurisdictions may have import restrictions or require proof of ownership for both hardware and software. Make sure your documents are prepared.



Power Off Before Traveling

Make sure that your notebook is completely powered off before putting it into a travel bag (or any such container). Putting a notebook which is powered on in a travel bag may cause the vent(s)/fan intake(s)/outlet(s) to be blocked. To prevent your computer from overheating make sure nothing blocks the vent(s)/fan intake(s)/outlet(s) while the computer is in use.

Preface

On the Road

In addition to the general safety and maintenance suggestions in this preface, and Chapter 8: Troubleshooting, keep these points in mind:

Hand-carry the notebook - For security, don't let it out of your sight. In some areas, computer theft is very common. Don't check it with normal luggage. Baggage handlers may not be sufficiently careful. Avoid knocking the computer against hard objects.

Beware of Electromagnetic fields - Devices such as metal detectors & X-ray machines can damage the computer, hard disk, floppy disks, and other media. They may also destroy any stored data - Pass your computer and disks around the devices. Ask security officials to hand-inspect them (you may be asked to turn it on). **Note:** Some airports also scan luggage with these devices.

Fly safely - Most airlines have regulations about the use of computers and other electronic devices in flight. These restrictions are for your safety, follow them. If you stow the notebook in an overhead compartment, make sure it's secure. Contents may shift and/or fall out when the compartment is opened.

Get power where you can - If an electrical outlet is available, use the AC/DC adapter and keep your battery(ies) charged.

Keep it dry - If you move quickly from a cold to a warm location, water vapor can condense inside the computer. Wait a few minutes before turning it on so that any moisture can evaporate.

Developing Good Work Habits

Developing good work habits is important if you need to work in front of the computer for long periods of time. Improper work habits can result in discomfort or serious injury from repetitive strain to your hands, wrists or other joints. The following are some tips to reduce the strain:

- Adjust the height of the chair and/or desk so that the keyboard is at or slightly below the level of your elbow. Keep your forearms, wrists, and hands in a relaxed position.
- Your knees should be slightly higher than your hips. Place your feet flat on the floor or on a footrest if necessary.
- Use a chair with a back and adjust it to support your lower back comfortably.
- Sit straight so that your knees, hips and elbows form approximately 90-degree angles when you are working.
- Take periodic breaks if you are using the computer for long periods of time.



Remember to:

- Alter your posture frequently.
- Stretch and exercise your body several times a day.
- Take periodic breaks when you work at the computer for long periods of time. Frequent and short breaks are better than fewer and longer breaks.



Lighting

Proper lighting and comfortable display viewing angle can reduce eye strain and muscle fatigue in your neck and shoulders.

- Position the display to avoid glare or reflections from overhead lighting or outside sources of light.
- Keep the display screen clean and set the brightness and contrast to levels that allow you to see the screen clearly.
- Position the display directly in front of you at a comfortable viewing distance.
- Adjust the display-viewing angle to find the best position.

LCD Screen Care

To prevent **image persistence** on LCD monitors (caused by the continuous display of graphics on the screen for an extended period of time) take the following precautions:

- Set the *Windows* **Power Plans** to turn the screen off after a few minutes of screen idle time.
- Use a rotating, moving or blank screen saver (this prevents an image from being displayed too long).
- Rotate desktop background images every few days.
- Turn the monitor off when the system is not in use.

LCD Electro-Plated Logos

Note that in computers featuring a raised LCD electro-plated logo, the logo is covered by a protective adhesive. Due to general wear and tear, this adhesive may deteriorate over time and the exposed logo may develop sharp edges. Be careful when handling the computer in this case, and avoid touching the raised LCD electro-plated logo. Avoid placing any other items in the carrying bag which may rub against the top of the computer during transport. If any such wear and tear develops contact your distributor/supplier.

Contents

Notice	I
EuP-Standby and Off Mode Power Consumption Statement:	II
FCC Statement	IV
FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement:	V
Instructions for Care and Operation	VII
Power Safety	IX
Polymer Battery Precautions	X
Battery Precautions	XI
Cleaning	XII
Servicing	XII
Travel Considerations	XIII

Quick Start Guide

Overview	1-1
Advanced Users	1-2
Beginners and Not-So-Advanced Users	1-2
Warning Boxes	1-2
Not Included	1-3
System Startup	1-4
System Software	1-5
Model Differences	1-6

Preface

System Map: LCD Panel Open - Model A Design I	1-7
System Map: LCD Panel Open - Model A Design II	1-8
System Map: LCD Panel Open - Model B	1-9
System Map: Model C - LCD Panel Open	1-10
LED Indicators	1-11
Hot Key Buttons - Some Model A Design Styles	1-12
Keyboard - Model A	1-13
Keyboard - Models B & C	1-14
Function/Hot Key Indicators	1-15
Control Center	1-16
System Map: Front & Left Views - Models A & B	1-17
System Map: Front & Left Views - Model C	1-18
System Map: Right & Rear Views - Models A & B	1-19
System Map: Right & Rear Views - Model C	1-20
System Map: Bottom View - Model A	1-22
System Map: Bottom View - Model B	1-23
System Map: Bottom View - Model C	1-24
Video Features	1-26
Power Options	1-28

Features & Components

Overview	2-1
----------------	-----

Hard Disk Drive	2-2
Optical (CD/DVD) Device	2-3
Loading Discs	2-3
Handling CDs or DVDs	2-4
DVD Regional Codes	2-5
Multi-In-1 Card Reader	2-6
TouchPad and Buttons/Mouse	2-7
Gestures and Device Settings	2-9
Audio Features	2-12

Power Management

Overview	3-1
The Power Sources	3-2
AC/DC Adapter	3-2
Battery	3-2
Turning On the Computer	3-3
Power Plans	3-4
Power-Saving States	3-6
Sleep	3-6
Hibernate	3-7
Shut down	3-7
Configuring the Power Buttons	3-8

Preface

Resuming Operation	3-9
Power Conservation Modes	3-10
Battery Information	3-11
Conserving Battery Power	3-12
Battery Life	3-13
New Battery	3-13
Recharging the Battery with the AC/DC Adapter	3-13
Proper handling of the Battery Pack	3-14
Battery FAQ	3-15

Drivers & Utilities

What to Install	4-1
Module Driver Installation	4-1
Driver Installation	4-2
Updating/Reinstalling Individual Drivers	4-4
User Account Control	4-5
Windows Security Message	4-5
New Hardware Found	4-5
Driver Installation Procedure	4-6
Chipset	4-6
Video (VGA)	4-6
LAN	4-6

CardReader4-6

Touchpad4-6

Hot Key4-7

USB 3.0 (Win 7 Only)4-7

MEI Driver4-7

Audio4-7

Windows Experience Index4-8

Optional Drivers4-9

BIOS Utilities

Overview5-1

The Setup Utility5-2

Failing the POST5-3

Fatal Errors5-3

Non-Fatal Errors5-3

Setup Screens5-4

Main Menu5-5

System Time & Date (Main Menu)5-5

SATA Port # (Main Menu)5-6

System/Extended Memory: (Main Menu)5-6

MB Series / BIOS Revision / KBC/EC firmware Revision5-6

Advanced Menu5-7

Preface

Advanced Chipset Control (Advanced Menu)	5-7
Bluetooth Power Setting (Advanced Menu > Advanced Chipset Control)	5-8
SATA Mode Selection (Advanced Menu)	5-8
Boot Logo (Advanced Menu)	5-8
Power On Boot Beep (Advanced Menu)	5-8
Battery Low Alarm Beep: (Advanced Menu)	5-8
Security Menu	5-9
Set Supervisor Password (Security Menu)	5-9
Set User Password (Security Menu)	5-10
Password on boot: (Security Menu)	5-10
Secure Boot (Security Menu)	5-11
TPM Configuration (Security Menu)	5-12
TPM State (Security Menu > TPM Support Enabled)	5-13
Pending TPM operation (Security Menu > TPM Support & TPM State Enabled)	5-14
Boot Menu	5-15
Boot Option Priorities (Boot Menu)	5-16
.....	5-16
OS Select (Boot Menu)	5-16
UEFI Boot (Boot Menu > OS Select)	5-16
Exit Menu	5-17

Upgrading The Computer

Overview	6-1
When Not to Upgrade	6-2
Removing the Battery	6-4
Upgrading the Hard Disk Drive	6-5
Upgrading the Optical (CD/DVD) Device	6-8
Removing the Optical Device for Model A Computers	6-9
Removing the Optical Device for Model B & C Computers	6-11
Upgrading the System Memory (RAM)	6-12

Modules & Options

Overview	7-1
PC Camera Module	7-3
PC Camera Driver Installation	7-4
Wireless LAN Module	7-11
3rd Party 802.11b/g/n Driver Installation (for WLAN Module)	7-12
3rd Party 802.11b/g/n Driver Installation (for Combo Modules)	7-13
Intel® WLAN Driver Installation	7-14
Connecting to a Wireless Network in Windows 7	7-17
Connecting to a Wireless Network Using Intel® PROSet Wireless	7-20
Intel® My WiFi Configuration	7-22
Windows Mobility Center	7-31

Preface

Bluetooth & WLAN Combo Module	7-32
3rd Party Bluetooth (V4.0) Combo Driver Installation	7-33
Intel Bluetooth Combo Driver Installation	7-34
Standard Bluetooth Configuration in Windows 7	7-35
3G Module	7-39
Wireless Manager	7-43
Wireless Manager Installation	7-43
Wireless Manager Application	7-44
Profiles	7-47
Settings	7-51
Text Messaging Service (SMS)	7-54
SMS Utility	7-54
Sending a Text Message	7-56
Phonebook	7-59
SMS Settings	7-62
Sierra Wireless AirCard Watcher	7-65
Sierra Wireless AirCard Watcher Installation	7-65
AirCard Watcher Application	7-66
Air Card Watcher Menu	7-70
Selecting a Network Operator/Service Provider	7-71
Profiles	7-72
User Options	7-74

Text Messaging Service (SMS)	7-76
SMS Express	7-76
Sending a Text Message	7-77
Inbox	7-78
Mobile Partner	7-79
Mobile Partner Application Installation	7-79
Mobile Partner Application	7-80
Profile Management	7-80
Text Messaging Service	7-85
Trusted Platform Module	7-86
Enabling & Activating TPM	7-87
Trusted Platform Module (TPM) Driver Installation	7-89
Initializing TPM	7-90
Infineon Security Platform Settings Tool	7-92
Intel Rapid Storage Technology	7-100
IRST Driver Installation	7-100

Troubleshooting

Overview	8-1
Basic Hints and Tips	8-2
Backup and General Maintenance	8-3
Viruses	8-4

Preface

Upgrading and Adding New Hardware/Software	8-5
Problems and Possible Solutions	8-7
Bluetooth Connection Problems	8-12
Resolving the “Insert a SIM” issue with the 3G Module (Windows 8)	8-16

Interface (Ports & Jacks)

Overview	A-1
Notebook Ports and Jacks	A-2

Control Center

Overview	B-1
----------------	-----

Video Driver Controls

Video Driver Installation	C-1
Dynamic Video Memory Technology	C-1
Intel® Graphics & Media Control Panel	C-2
Display Devices & Options	C-4
Attaching Other Displays	C-5
Configuring an External Display in Windows 7	C-8
HDMI Audio Configuration	C-11

Specifications

Processors	D-2
------------------	-----

Core Logic	D-2
Memory	D-2
Display	D-2
Video Controller	D-2
Storage	D-3
Keyboard & Pointing Device	D-3
Audio	D-3
Interface	D-3
Card Reader	D-3
Slot	D-3
Communication	D-3
Power Management	D-4
Power	D-4
Indicators	D-4
Operating System	D-4
BIOS	D-4
Security	D-4
Features	D-4
Environmental Spec	D-5
Dimensions & Weight	D-5

Windows 8

Overview	E-1
Windows 8 Start Screen & Desktop	E-2
Apps & Tiles	E-3
Desktop Application	E-4
Windows 8 Charms Bar	E-6
Windows 8 Control Panel	E-8
Windows 8 Taskbar	E-11
LED Indicators	E-12
Keyboard - Windows 8	E-13
Keyboard Shortcuts	E-14
Function/Hot Key Indicators & Control Center	E-15
Video Features	E-16
To Configure Displays from Devices (Charms Bar):	E-16
Power Options	E-17
Shut Down, Restart or Sleep	E-17
Ctrl + Alt + Delete Key Combination	E-18
Wake On LAN Settings	E-19
Running Metro UI Apps	E-20
Drivers & Utilities	E-22
Driver Installation (Windows 8)	E-23
PC Camera (Windows 8)	E-25

Metro UI Camera App E-26

Taking Pictures/Capturing Video E-28

Wireless LAN Settings (Windows 8) E-30

WLAN Configuration in Windows 8 E-31

Charms Bar E-31

Desktop Mode E-34

Control Panel E-35

Bluetooth Settings (Windows 8) E-37

Bluetooth Configuration in Windows 8 E-38

Desktop Mode E-38

Charms Bar E-38

3G Settings (Windows 8) E-42

3G Configuration in Windows 8 E-43

Charms Bar E-43

Disabling a PIN code for a 3G Module E-46

Chapter 1: Quick Start Guide

Overview

This Quick Start Guide is a brief introduction to the basic features of your computer, to navigating around the computer and to getting your system started. The remainder of the manual covers the following:

- **Chapter 2** A guide to using some of the main features of the computer e.g. the **storage devices (hard disk, optical device, card reader)**, **Touchpad & Mouse & Audio**.
- **Chapter 3** The computer's **power** saving options.
- **Chapter 4** The installation of the **drivers** and utilities essential to the operation or improvement of some of the computer's subsystems.
- **Chapter 5** An outline of the computer's built-in software or **BIOS** (Basic Input Output System).
- **Chapter 6** Instructions for **upgrading** your computer.
- **Chapter 7** A quick guide to the computer's **PC Camera, Wireless LAN, Combo Bluetooth & WLAN** and **3G** modules (some of which may be **optional** depending on your purchase configuration).
- **Chapter 8** A **troubleshooting** guide.
- **Appendix A** Definitions of the **interface, ports/jacks** which allow your computer to communicate with external devices.
- **Appendix B** Information on **Control Center**.
- **Appendix C** Information on the **video driver controls**.
- **Appendix D** The computer's **specification**.
- **Appendix E** Information related to the *Windows 8* operating system.

Advanced Users

If you are an advanced user you may skip over most of this Quick Start Guide. However you may find it useful to refer to *“What to Install” on page 4 - 1*, *“BIOS Utilities” on page 5 - 1* and *“Upgrading The Computer” on page 6 - 1* in the remainder of the User’s Manual. You may also find the notes marked with a  of interest to you.

Beginners and Not-So-Advanced Users



Notes

Check the light colored boxes with the mark above to find detailed information about the computer’s features.

If you are new to computers (or do not have an advanced knowledge of them) then the information contained in the Quick Start Guide should be enough to get you up and running. Eventually you should try to look through all the documentation (more detailed descriptions of the functions, setup and system controls are covered in the remainder of the User’s Manual), but do not worry if you do not understand everything the first time. Keep this manual nearby and refer to it to learn as you go. You may find it useful to refer to the notes marked with a  as indicated in the margin. For a more detailed description of any of the interface ports and jacks see *“Interface (Ports & Jacks)” on page A - 1*.

Warning Boxes

No matter what your level please pay careful attention to the warning and safety information indicated by the  symbol. Also please note the safety and handling instructions as indicated in the *Preface*.

Not Included

Operating Systems (e.g. *Windows 7*) and applications (e.g. word processing, spreadsheet and database programs) have their own manuals, so please consult the appropriate manuals.



Drivers

If you are installing new system software, or are re-configuring your computer for a different system, you will need to install the drivers listed in ***“Drivers & Utilities” on page 4 - 1***. Drivers are programs which act as an interface between the computer and a hardware component e.g. a wireless network module. It is very important that you install the drivers in the order listed. You will be unable to use most advanced controls until the necessary drivers and utilities are properly installed. If your system hasn't been properly configured (your service representative may have already done that for you); refer to ***Chapter 4*** for installation instructions.

Ports and Jacks

See ***“Notebook Ports and Jacks” on page A - 2*** for a description of the interface (ports & jacks) which allow your computer to communicate with external devices, connect to the internet etc.

System Startup

1. Remove all packing materials.
2. Place the computer on a stable surface.
3. Securely attach any peripherals you want to use with the notebook (e.g. keyboard and mouse) to their ports.
4. Attach the AC/DC adapter to the DC-In jack on the left of the computer, then plug the AC power cord into an outlet, and connect the AC power cord to the AC/DC adapter.
5. Use one hand to raise the lid/LCD to a comfortable viewing angle (**do not exceed 130 degrees**); use the other hand (as illustrated in [Figure 1 - 1](#) below) to support the base of the computer (**Note: Never** lift the computer by the lid/LCD).



Figure 1 - 1 - Opening the Lid/LCD & Computer with AC/DC Adapter Plugged-In



Shutdown

Note that you should always shut your computer down by choosing the **Shut Down** command from the bottom right of the **Start** menu in **Windows**. This will help prevent hard disk or system problems.

System Software

Your computer may already come with system software pre-installed. Where this is not the case, or where you are re-configuring your computer for a different system, you will find the **Windows 7 (with Service Pack 1 installed)** and **Windows 8** operating systems are supported.

The majority of this menu covers information covers information related to the **Windows 7** operating system, however for specific information on the **Windows 8** operating system see [Appendix E](#).

Note: In order to run **Windows 7 (SPI)** without limitations or decreased performance, your computer requires a minimum **1GB** of system memory (RAM).



Windows 7/8 OS

In order to run **Windows 7 or 8 (32 Bit)** without limitations or decreased performance, your computer requires a minimum **1GB** of system memory (RAM), however if you are running **Windows 7 or 8 (64 bit)** your computer requires a minimum **2GB** of system memory (RAM).

Model Differences

This notebook series includes **three** different models that vary slightly in design style (**Models A and B** include two distinct design styles), color, general appearance and features supported. Note that your computer may look slightly different from that pictured throughout this manual.

Feature	Model A	Model B	Model C
Display Type Supported	14.0" / 35.56cm HD (1366 * 768), 16:9 Backlit Panel	15.6" / 39.62cm HD (1366 * 768) / HD+ (1600 * 900), FHD (1920 * 1080), 16:9 Backlit Panel	17.3" / 43.94cm HD+ (1600 * 900), FHD (1920 * 1080), 16:9 Backlit Panel
Dimensions & Weight	See " <i>Dimensions & Weight</i> " on page D - 5.		
See " <i>Specifications</i> " on page D - 1 for full details .			

Table 1 - 1 - Model Differences

System Map: LCD Panel Open - Model A Design I



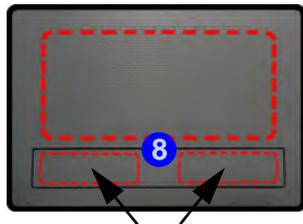

**Wireless Device
 Operation Aboard
 Aircraft**

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the key combinations to toggle power to the **3G/WLAN/Bluetooth** modules, and check the LED indicator or on-screen icon to see if the modules are powered on or not (see [Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15/ Table 1 - 2, on page 1 - 11](#)).

Figure 1 - 2
LCD Panel Open - Model A Design I

1. Built-In PC Camera (Optional)
2. LCD
3. Power Button
4. Hot Key Buttons
5. LED Status Indicators
6. Keyboard
7. Built-In Microphone
8. Touchpad & Buttons

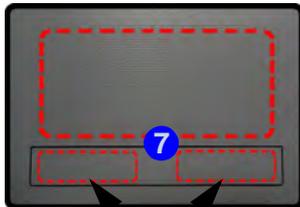


Touchpad Buttons
(valid operational area)

Note that the Touchpad and Buttons valid operational area is that indicated within the red dotted lines indicated on the right.

Figure 1 - 3
LCD Panel Open -
Model A Design II

1. Built-in PC Camera (Optional)
2. LCD
3. Power Button
4. LED Status Indicators
5. Keyboard
6. Built-In Microphone
7. Touchpad & Buttons



Touchpad Buttons
(valid operation area)

System Map: LCD Panel Open - Model A Design II



Note that the Touchpad and Buttons valid operational area is that indicated within the red dotted lines indicated on the left.



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the key combinations to toggle power to the **3G/WLAN/Bluetooth** modules, and check the LED indicator or on-screen icon to see if the modules are powered on or not (see [Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15](#) / [Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11](#)).

System Map: LCD Panel Open - Model B



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

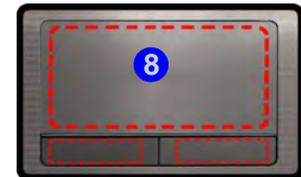
The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the key combinations to toggle power to the **3G/WLAN/Bluetooth** modules, and check the LED indicator or on-screen icon to see if the modules are powered on or not (see [Table 1 - 5](#), on [page 1 - 15](#); [Table 1 - 3](#), on [page 1 - 11](#)).



Figure 1 - 4
LCD Panel Open
Model B

1. Built-in PC Camera (Optional)
2. PC Camera LED
3. LCD
4. Power Button
5. LED Status Indicators
6. Keyboard
7. *Built-In Microphone
*Note that the microphone location is dependent upon your model design
8. Touchpad & Buttons

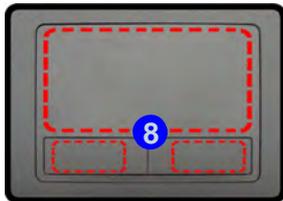


Note that the Touchpad and Buttons valid operational area is that indicated within the red dotted lines indicated on the right.

Quick Start Guide

Figure 1 - 5
LCD Panel Open
Model C

1. Built-In PC Camera (Optional)
2. PC Camera LED
3. LCD
4. Power Button
5. LED Indicators
6. Keyboard
7. Built-In Microphone
8. Touchpad & Buttons



Note that the Touchpad and Buttons valid operational area is that indicated within the red dotted lines above.

System Map: Model C - LCD Panel Open



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the key combinations to toggle power to the **WLAN/Bluetooth** modules, and check the LED indicator or on-screen icon to see if the modules are powered on or not (see [Table 1 - 5](#), on [page 1 - 15](#)/[Table 1 - 3](#), on [page 1 - 11](#)).

LED Indicators

The LED indicators on the computer display helpful information about the current status of the computer.

Icon	Color	Description
	Orange	DC Power is Plugged In
	Green	The Computer is On
	Blinking Green	The Computer is in Sleep Mode
	Blinking Orange	The PC Camera is In Use (for 14.0" / 35.56cm Model A computers only)
	Orange	The Battery is Charging
	Green	The Battery is Fully Charged
	Blinking Orange	The Battery Has Reached Critically Low Power Status

Table 1 - 2 - LED Power Indicators

Icon	Color	Description
	Green	The (optional) Wireless LAN Module is Powered On
	Orange	Win 7 - The (optional) Bluetooth Module is Powered On
Win 8 - The (optional) Bluetooth Module is Installed (<i>this is not a power on/off indicator in Windows 8</i>)		
	Green	Hard Disk Activity
	Green	Number Lock Activated
	Green	Caps Lock Activated
	Green	Scroll Lock Activated
	Blue	Power Button

Table 1 - 3 - LED Status Indicators

Hot Key Buttons - Some Model A Design Styles

These buttons give instant access to the default Internet browser and e-mail program, and allow you to toggle the **Silent Mode** on/off with one quick button press.

Hot Key	Function
	
 1 OR  1	Toggle *Silent Mode (for power saving) OR WLAN ON/OFF
 2	Activate the Default Internet Program
 3	Activate the Default E-Mail Browser (Note that this button has no function in Windows 7 without Outlook/Outlook Express installed. If Outlook/Outlook Express are installed then the button will activate the application)

Table 1 - 4 - Hot Key Buttons - Some Model A Design Styles

*When enabled, **Silent Mode** will reduce fan noise and save power consumption. Note this may reduce computer performance.

Keyboard - Model A

The keyboard has an embedded numerical keypad for easy numeric data input, and function keys to change operational features instantly. See [Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15](#) for function key details and [Appendix E](#) for *Windows 8* keyboard information.

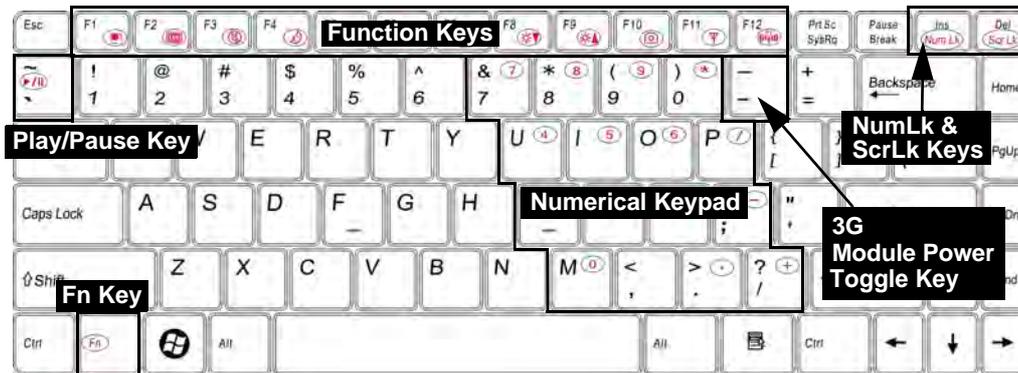


Figure 1 - 6 - Keyboard - Model A

Special Characters

Some software applications allow the number-keys to be used with **Alt** to produce special characters. These special characters can only be produced by using the numeric keypad. Regular number keys (in the upper row of the keyboard) will not work. Make sure that **NumLk** is on.



Other Keyboards

If your keyboard is damaged or you just want to make a change, you can use any standard USB keyboard. The system will detect and enable it automatically. However special functions/hot-keys unique to the system's regular keyboard may not work.

NumLk & ScrLk

Hold down the **Fn Key** and either **NumLk** or **ScrLk** to enable number or scroll lock, and check the LED indicator for status.



Other Keyboards

If your keyboard is damaged or you just want to make a change, you can use any standard USB keyboard. The system will detect and enable it automatically. However special functions/hot-keys unique to the system's regular keyboard may not work.

NumLk & ScrLk

Hold down the **Fn Key** and either **NumLk** or **ScrLk** to enable number or scroll lock, and check the LED indicator for status.

Keyboard - Models B & C

The keyboard has an embedded numerical keypad for easy numeric data input, and function keys to change operational features instantly. See [Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15](#) for function key details and [Appendix E](#) for *Windows 8* keyboard information.



Figure 1 - 7 - Keyboard - Models B & C



Special Characters

Some software applications allow the number-keys to be used with **Alt** to produce special characters. These special characters can only be produced by using the numeric keypad. Regular number keys (in the upper row of the keyboard) will not work. Make sure that **NumLk** is on.

Function/Hot Key Indicators

The **function keys** (F1 - F12 etc.) will act as **hot keys** when pressed while the **Fn** key is held down. In addition to the basic function key combinations; visual indicators are available when the hot key utility is installed.

Keys	Function	Keys	Function
Fn + ~	Play/Pause (in Audio/Video Programs)	Fn + F8/F9	Brightness Decrease/Increase 
Fn + 	3G Module Power Toggle (Models A & B Only)  		Silent Mode Toggle (for some Model A Designs Only - see page 3 - 2)  
Fn + F1	TouchPad Toggle  	Fn + F10	PC Camera Power Toggle  
Fn + F2	Turn LCD Backlight Off (Press a key to or use TouchPad to turn on)	Fn + F11	WLAN Module Power Toggle  
Fn + F3	Mute Toggle  	Fn + F12	Bluetooth Module Power Toggle  
Fn + F4	Sleep Toggle	Fn + NumLk	Number Lock Toggle  
Fn + F5/ F6	Volume Decrease/ Increase 	Fn + ScrLk	Scroll Lock Toggle  
Fn + F7	Display Toggle	Caps Lock	Caps Lock Toggle  

Table 1 - 5 - Function & Hot Key Indicators

Control Center

Press the **Fn + Esc** key combination, or **double-click the icon**  in the **notification area of the taskbar** to toggle the **Control Center** on/off. The **Control Center** gives quick access to frequently used controls and enables you to quickly turn modules on/off (see [Appendix B](#) for full details). The **Control Center** in **Windows 8** works under the **Desktop** app and not under the Start screen, and does not feature the wireless/Bluetooth buttons and Airplane Mode (see page [E - 15](#) for **Windows 8** information).



Control Center

Click on any button to turn any of the modules (e.g. TouchPad, Camera) on/off.

Click on the power conservation modes to switch between Performance, Balanced or Energy Star modes (see page [3 - 10](#)). To remove the Power Conservation Modes screen just click in a blank area of the icon or press a key on the keyboard.

Click on the buttons (or just click and hold the mouse button) to adjust the slider for Brightness/Volume.

Click on Display Switch and click to choose a display mode from the menu (see page [C - 10](#)).



Figure 1 - 8 - Control Center

System Map: Front & Left Views - Models A & B

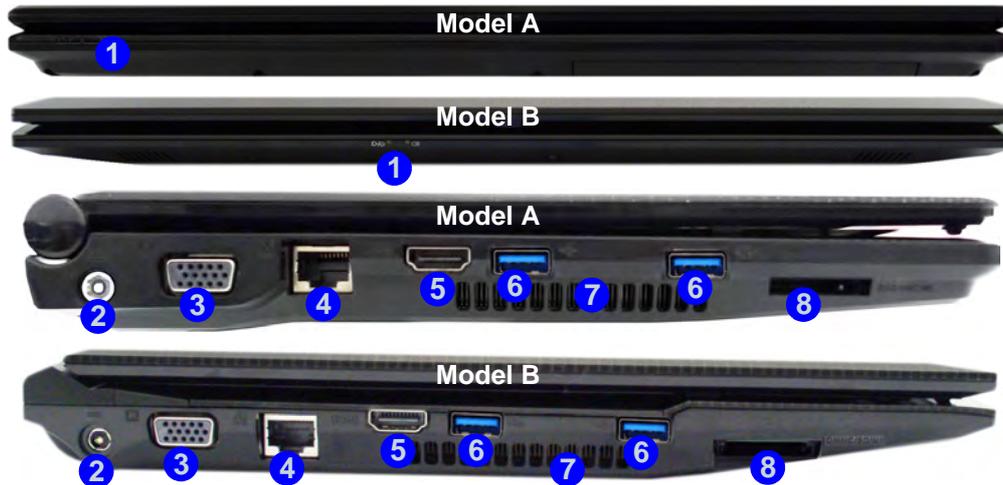


Figure 1 - 9
Front & Left Views
Models A & B

1. LED Power Indicators
2. DC-In Jack
3. External Monitor Port
4. RJ-45 LAN Jack
5. HDMI-Out Port
6. USB 3.0 Port
7. Vent/Fan Intake/Outlet
8. Multi-in-1 Card Reader



Multi-In-1 Card Reader

The card reader allows you to use the most popular digital storage card formats:

MMC (MultiMedia Card) / RSMHC
SD (Secure Digital) / Mini SD / SDHC / SDXC
MS (Memory Stick) / MS Pro / MS Duo

Figure 1 - 10
Front & Left Views
Model C

1. LED Indicators
2. DC-In Jack
3. External Monitor Port
4. RJ-45 LAN Jack
5. HDMI-Out Port
6. USB 3.0 Port
7. Vent/Fan Intake
8. Multi-In-1 Card Reader

System Map: Front & Left Views - Model C



Multi-In-1 Card Reader

The card reader allows you to use the most popular digital storage card formats:

MMC (MultiMedia Card) / RS MMC
SD (Secure Digital) / Mini SD / SDHC / SDXC
MS (Memory Stick) / MS Pro / MS Duo

USB 3.0 Port OR USB 2.0 Port

This model includes USB 3.0 ports on the left side of the computer. USB 3.0 ports are denoted by their **blue color**; USB 2.0 ports are colored black. Note that the USB 3.0 ports require a driver installation for **Windows 7** (**Windows 8** does not require a driver) and do not support wake on USB.

System Map: Right & Rear Views - Models A & B

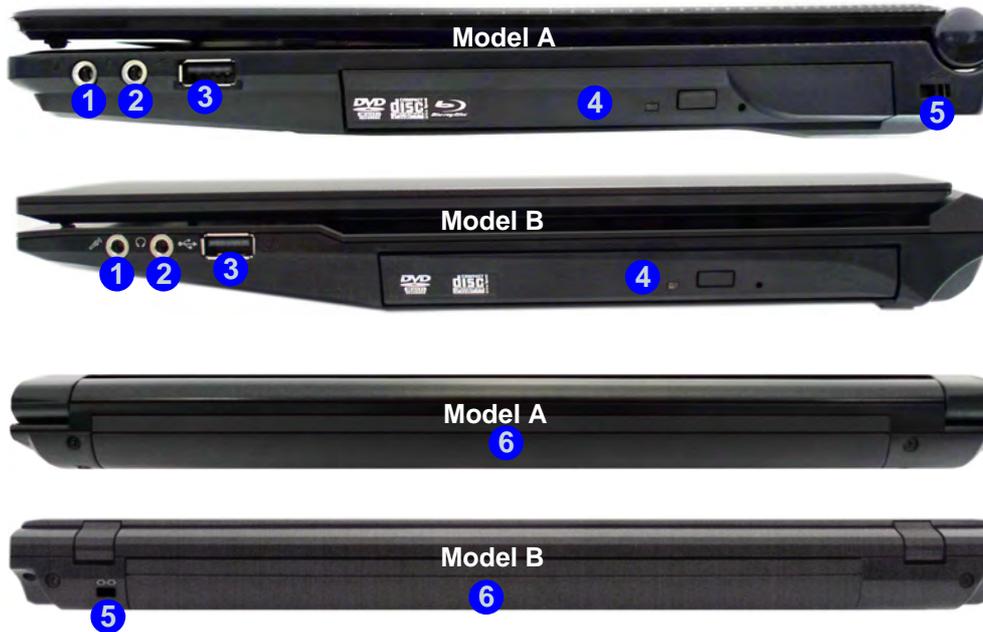


Figure 1 - 11
Right & Rear Views
Models A & B

1. Microphone-In Jack
2. Headphone-Out Jack
3. USB 2.0 Port
4. Optical Device Drive Bay (for CD/DVD Device)
5. Security Lock Slot
6. Battery



Battery Information

Always completely discharge, then fully charge, a new battery before using it. Completely discharge and charge the battery at least once every 30 days or after about 20 partial discharges. See ["Battery Information" on page 3 - 11](#) for full instructions.

Figure 1 - 12
**Right & Rear Views -
Model C**

1. Headphone-Out Jack
2. Microphone-In Jack
3. USB 2.0 Port
4. Optical Device Drive Bay
5. Security Lock Slot
6. Battery

System Map: Right & Rear Views - Model C



Battery Information

Always completely discharge, then fully charge, a new battery before using it. Completely discharge and charge the battery at least once every 30 days or after about 20 partial discharges. See [“Battery Information” on page 3 - 11](#) for full instructions.



Disk Eject Warning

Don't try to eject a CD/DVD while the system is accessing it. This may cause the system to "crash". Stop the disk first then eject it, or press the stop button twice.

CD/DVD Emergency Eject

If you need to manually eject a CD/DVD (e.g. due to an unexpected power interruption) you may push the end of a straightened paper clip into the emergency eject hole. Do not use a sharpened pencil or any object that may break and become lodged in the hole. Don't try to remove a floppy disk/CD/DVD while the system is accessing it. This may cause the system to "crash".



Changing DVD Regional Codes

Go to the **Control Panel** and double-click **Device Manager (Hardware and Sound)**, then click the **+** next to **DVD/CD-ROM drives**. Double-click on the DVD-ROM device to bring up the **Properties** dialog box, and select the **DVD Region** (tab) to bring up the control panel to allow you to adjust the regional code (see "[DVD Regional Codes](#)" on page 2 - 5).

DVD region detection is device dependent, not OS-dependent. You can select your module's region code **5** times. The fifth selection is permanent. This cannot be altered even if you change your operating system or you use the module in another computer.

Figure 1 - 13
Bottom View
Model A

1. Battery
2. Component Bay Cover
3. Vent/Fan Intake/Outlet
4. Hard Disk Bay Cover
5. 3.75G USIM Card Cover (Optional)



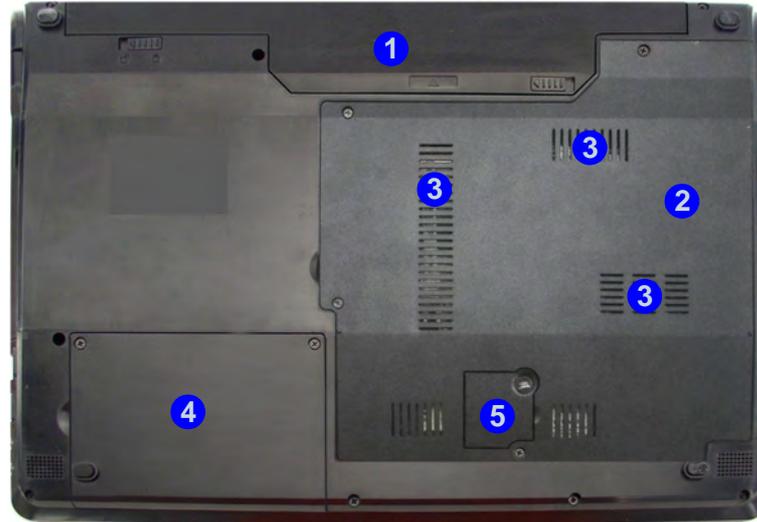
CPU

The CPU is not a user serviceable part.

Overheating

To prevent your computer from overheating make sure nothing blocks the Vent/Fan Intake while the computer is in use.

System Map: Bottom View - Model A



Bottom Covers

If your model includes the 3G option then a small cover **5** to enable you to access the module's USIM card will be included (see *"3G Module"* on page 7 - 39).

System Map: Bottom View - Model B

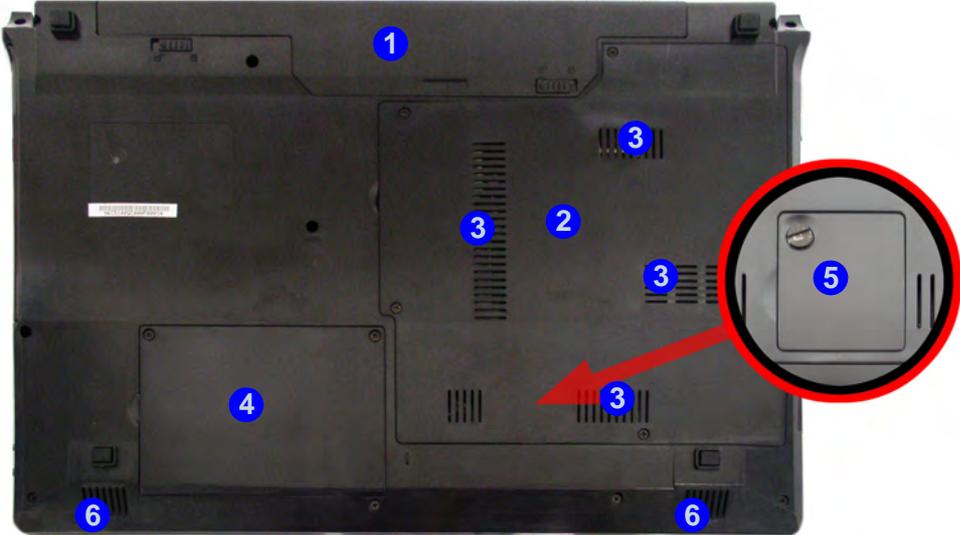


Figure 1 - 14
Bottom View - Model B

- 1. Battery
- 2. Component Bay Cover
- 3. Vent/Fan Intake/Outlet
- 4. Hard Disk Bay Cover
- 5. 3.75G USIM Card Cover (Optional)
- 6. Speakers


CPU

The CPU is not a user serviceable part.

Overheating

To prevent your computer from overheating make sure nothing blocks the Vent/Fan Intake while the computer is in use.


Bottom Covers

If your model includes the 3.75G option then a small cover **5** to enable you to access the module's USIM card will be included (see *"3G Module"* on page 7 - 39).

Figure 1 - 15
Bottom View
Model C

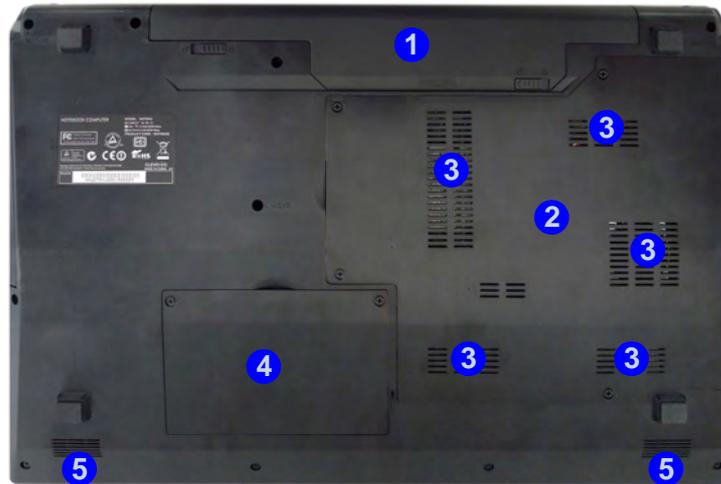
1. Battery
2. Component Bay Cover
3. Fan Intake/Vent
4. Hard Disk Bay Cover
5. Speakers



Battery Information

Always completely discharge, then fully charge, a new battery before using it. Completely discharge and charge the battery at least once every 30 days or after about 20 partial discharges.

System Map: Bottom View - Model C



CPU

The CPU is not a user serviceable part.

Overheating

To prevent your computer from overheating make sure nothing blocks the Vent/Fan Intake while the computer is in use.

Windows 7 Start Menu & Control Panel

Most of the control panels, utilities and programs within *Windows 7* are accessed from the **Start** menu (see [Appendix E](#) for information on the **Windows 8** OS). When you install programs and utilities they will be installed on your hard disk drive, and a shortcut will usually be placed in the **Start** menu and/or the desktop. Right-click the **Start menu** icon , and then select **Properties** to customize the appearance of the **Start** menu.

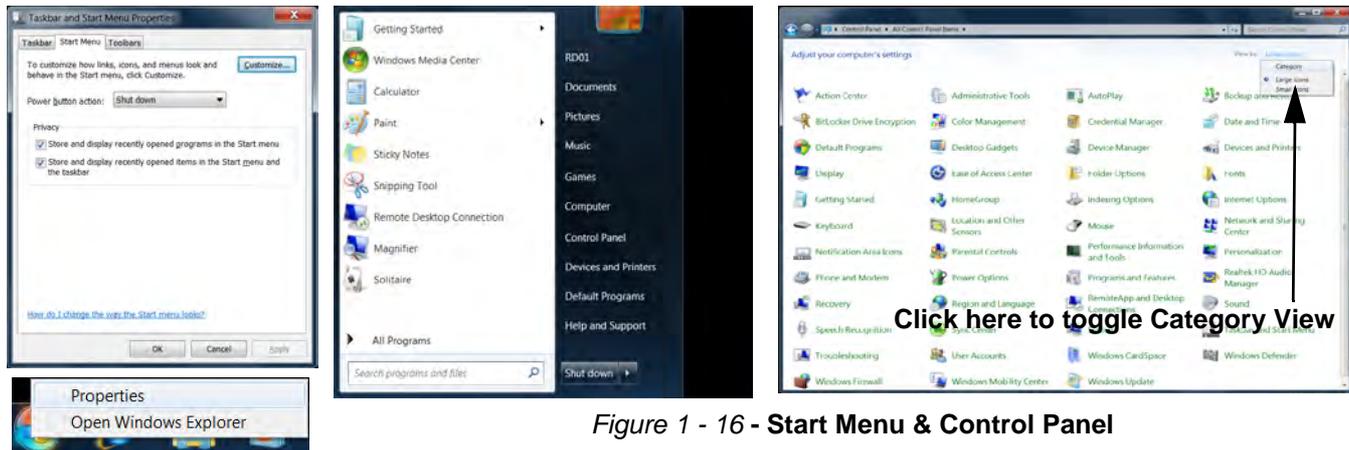


Figure 1 - 16 - Start Menu & Control Panel

In many instances throughout this manual you will see an instruction to open the **Control Panel**. The **Control Panel** is accessed from the **Start** menu, and it allows you to configure the settings for most of the key features in *Windows* (e.g. power, video, network, audio etc.). *Windows 7* provides basic controls for many of the features, however many new controls are added (or existing ones are enhanced) when you install the drivers. To see all controls it may be necessary to toggle off *Category View* to view the control panel icons.

Video Features

You can switch display devices, and configure display options, from the **Display** control panel (in **Appearance and Personalization**) in *Windows 7* (see over). For more detailed video information see “*Video Driver Controls*” on page C - 1. To access **Display (Control Panel)** and **Screen Resolution** in *Windows*:

1. Click **Start** and click **Control Panel**.
2. Click **Display** (icon) - In the **Appearance and Personalization** category.
3. Click **Adjust Screen Resolution/Adjust resolution**.
4. Alternatively you can right-click the desktop and select **Screen resolution**.
5. Use the dropbox to select the screen **Resolution** ① (*Figure 1 - 17*).
6. Click **Advanced settings** ② (*Figure 1 - 17*) to bring up the **Advanced** properties tabs.

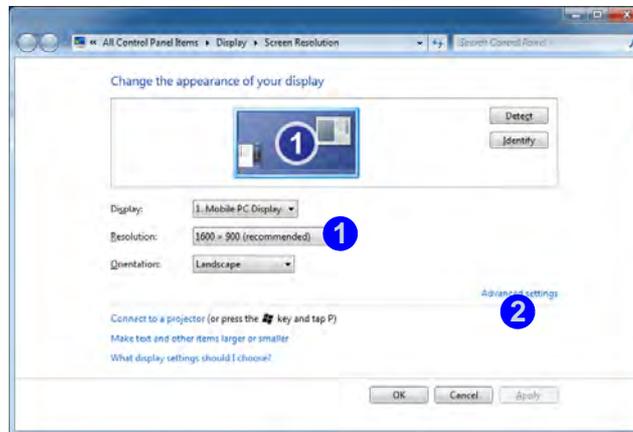


Figure 1 - 17 - Screen Resolution

To access the *Intel(R) Graphics and Media Control Panel*:

1. Click **Advanced settings** ② (*Figure 1 - 17 on page 1 - 26*) in the **Display Settings** control panel in *Windows*.
 2. Click **Graphics Properties (button)** ③ (*Figure 1 - 18*) in the **Intel Graphics & Media Control Panel** tab.
- OR
3. Right-click the desktop and select **Graphics Properties** from the menu.
- OR
4. Click the icon ④ (*Figure 1 - 18*) in the taskbar and select **Graphics Properties** from the menu.
- OR
5. Access the **Intel(R) Graphics and Media Control Panel** from the *Windows* control panel in **Classic View**.

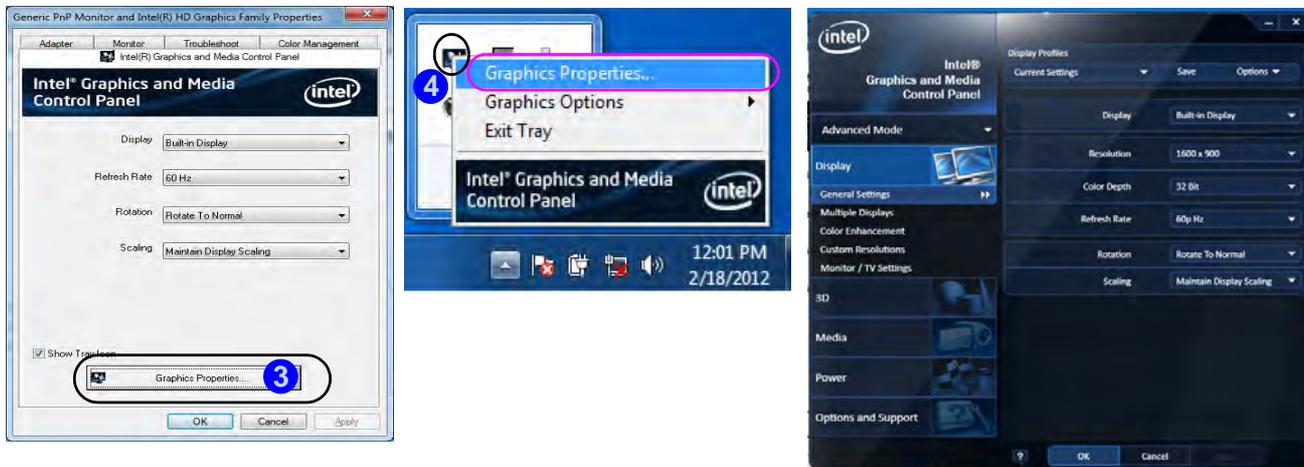


Figure 1 - 18 - Intel Graphics and Media Control Panel

Power Options

The **Power Options (Hardware and Sound)** menu control panel icon in *Windows* (see page *1 - 24* or see *Appendix E* for information on the **Windows 8 OS**) allows you to configure power management features for your computer. You can conserve power by means of **power plans** and configure the options for the **power button**, **sleep button**, **computer lid (when closed)**, **display** and **sleep** mode from the left menu. Note that the **Power saver** plan may have an affect on computer performance.

Click to select one of the existing plans, or click *Create a power plan* in the left menu and select the options to create a new plan. Click *Change plan settings* and click *Change advanced power settings* to access further configuration options. Pay attention to the instructions on battery care in *“Battery Information”* on page *3 - 11*.

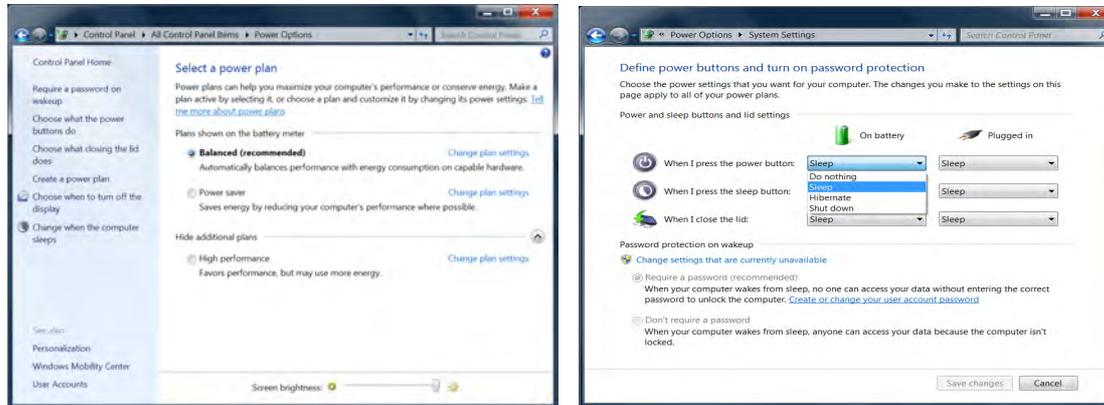


Figure 1 - 19 - Power Options

Chapter 2: Features & Components

Overview

Read this chapter to learn more about the following main features and components of the computer:

- Hard Disk Drive
- Optical (CD/DVD) Device
- Multi-In-1 Card Reader
- TouchPad and Buttons/Mouse
- Audio Features

For information on the *Windows 8* operating system see [Appendix E](#).



Power Safety

Before attempting to access any of the internal components of your computer please ensure that the machine is not connected to the AC power, and that the machine is turned off. Also ensure that all peripheral cables, including phone lines, are disconnected from the computer.

Hard Disk Drive

The hard disk drive is used to store your data in the computer. The hard disk can be taken out to accommodate other 2.5" serial (SATA) hard disk drives with a height of 9.5 mm.

The hard disk is accessible from the bottom of your computer as seen below. For further details see [“Upgrading the Hard Disk Drive” on page 6 - 5](#).

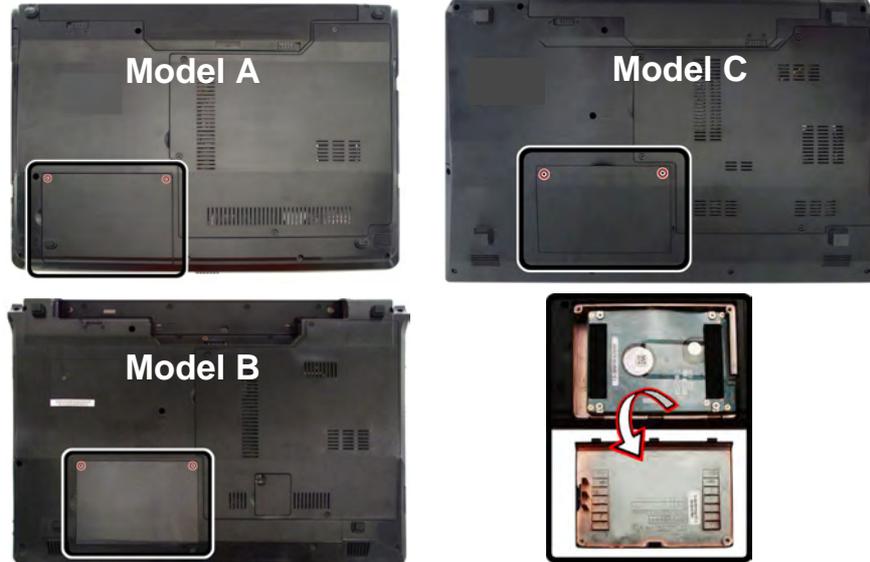


Figure 2 - 1
Hard Disk Location

Optical (CD/DVD) Device

There is a bay for a 5.25" optical (CD/DVD) device (12.7mm height). The actual device will depend on the module you purchased (see *“Storage” on page D - 3*). The optical device is usually labeled **“Drive D:”** and may be used as a boot device if properly set in the **BIOS** (see *“Boot Menu” on page 5 - 15*).

Loading Discs

To insert a CD/DVD, press the open button **1** and carefully place a CD/DVD onto the disc tray with label-side facing up (use just enough force for the disc to click onto the tray’s spindle). Gently push the CD/DVD tray in until its lock “clicks” and you are ready to start. The busy indicator **2** will light up while data is being accessed, or while an audio/video CD, or DVD, is playing. If power is unexpectedly interrupted, insert an object such as a straightened paper clip into the emergency eject hole **3** to open the tray.



Sound Volume Adjustment

How high the sound volume can be set depends on the setting of the volume control within **Windows**. Click the **Volume** icon on the taskbar to check the setting (see *“Audio Features” on page 2 - 12*).

Figure 2 - 2
Optical Device



CD Emergency Eject

If you need to manually eject a CD (e.g. due to an unexpected power interruption) you may push the end of a straightened paper clip into the emergency eject hole. However please do NOT use a sharpened pencil or similar object that may break and become lodged in the hole.

Disk Eject Warning

Don't try to remove a CD/DVD while the system is accessing it. This may cause the system to "crash".

Handling CDs or DVDs

Proper handling of your CDs/DVDs will prevent them from being damaged. Please follow the advice below to make sure that the data stored on your CDs/DVDs can be accessed.

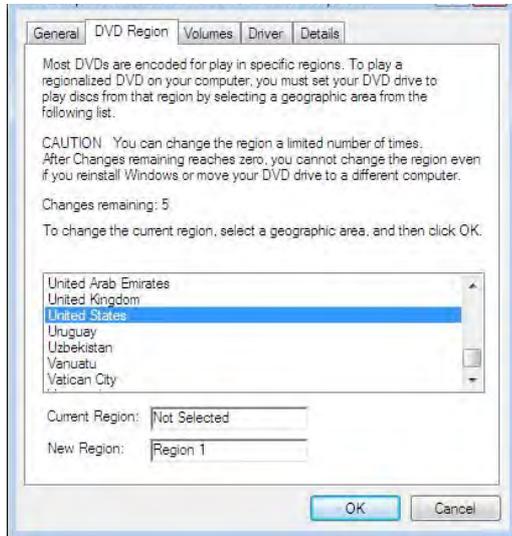
Note the following:

- Hold the CD or DVD by the edges; do not touch the surface of the disc.
- Use a clean, soft, dry cloth to remove dust or fingerprints.
- Do not write on the surface with a pen.
- Do not attach paper or other materials to the surface of the disc.
- Do not store or place the CD or DVD in high-temperature areas.
- Do not use benzene, thinner, or other cleaners to clean the CD or DVD.
- Do not bend the CD or DVD.
- Do not drop or subject the CD or DVD to shock.

DVD Regional Codes

To change the DVD regional codes:

1. Go to the **Control Panel**
2. Double-click **Device Manager (Hardware and Sound)**, then click the **+** next to **DVD/CD-ROM drives**.
3. Double-click on the DVD-ROM device to bring up the **Properties** dialog box, and select the **DVD Region** (tab) to bring up the control panel to allow you to adjust the regional code.



- **Region 1** - USA & Canada
- **Region 2** - Western Europe, Japan, South Africa, Middle East & Egypt
- **Region 3** - South-East Asia, Taiwan, South Korea, The Philippines, Indonesia, Hong Kong
- **Region 4** - South & Central America, Mexico, Australia, New Zealand
- **Region 5** - N Korea, Russia, Eastern Europe, India & Most of Africa
- **Region 6** - China



DVD Region Note

DVD region detection is device dependent, not OS-dependent. You can select your module's region code 5 times. The fifth selection is permanent. This cannot be altered even if you change your operating system or you use the module in another computer.

Figure 2 - 3
DVD Region Codes



Card Reader Cover

Make sure you keep the rubber cover provided in the card reader when not in use. This will help prevent foreign objects and/or dust getting in to the card reader.

Multi-In-1 Card Reader

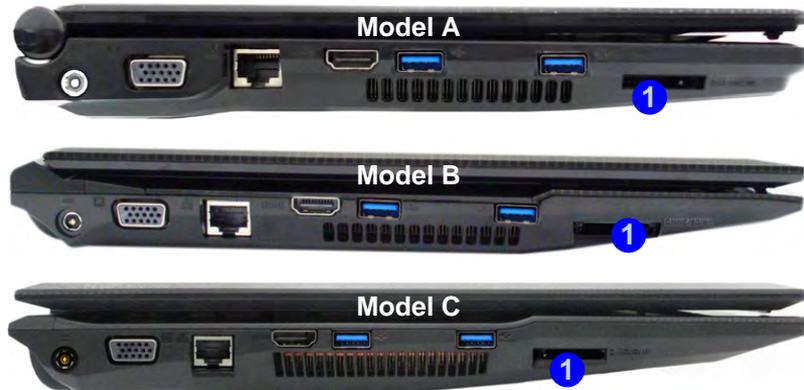
The card reader allows you to use some of the latest digital storage cards. Push the card into the slot and it will appear as a removable device, and can be accessed in the same way as your hard disk (s). Make sure you install the card reader driver (see *“CardReader” on page 4 - 6.*

- MMC (MultiMedia Card) / RS MMC
- SD (Secure Digital) / Mini SD / SDHC / SDXC
- MS (Memory Stick) / MS Pro / MS Duo

Note: Some of these cards require PC adapters that are usually supplied with the cards.

Figure 2 - 4
Left View

1. Card Reader



TouchPad and Buttons/Mouse

The TouchPad is an alternative to the mouse; however, you can also add a mouse to your computer through one of the USB ports. The TouchPad buttons function in much the same way as a two-button mouse.



Mouse Driver

If you are using an external mouse your operating system may be able to auto-configure your mouse during its installation or only enable its basic functions. Be sure to check the device's user documentation for details.

Features & Components

2



TouchPad Scrolling

This computer model series may feature different TouchPad versions.

These TouchPads may differ in their vertical scrolling function in most scrollable windows.

Some TouchPads require sliding the finger up and down on the right of the TouchPad to scroll the window. Other versions require tapping/holding down the finger at the top right or bottom right of the TouchPad to scroll the window.

Once you have installed the TouchPad driver (see *“Touchpad” on page 4 - 6*) you can configure the functions from the Mouse control panel in *Windows*, or by double-clicking the TouchPad driver icon  in the notification area. You may then configure the TouchPad tapping, buttons, scrolling, pointer motion and sensitivity options to your preferences. You will find further information at www.synaptics.com.

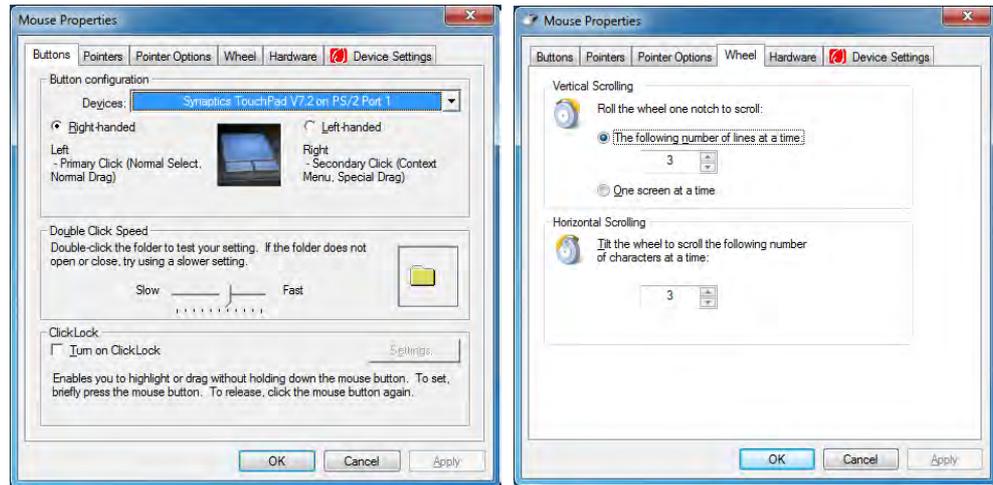


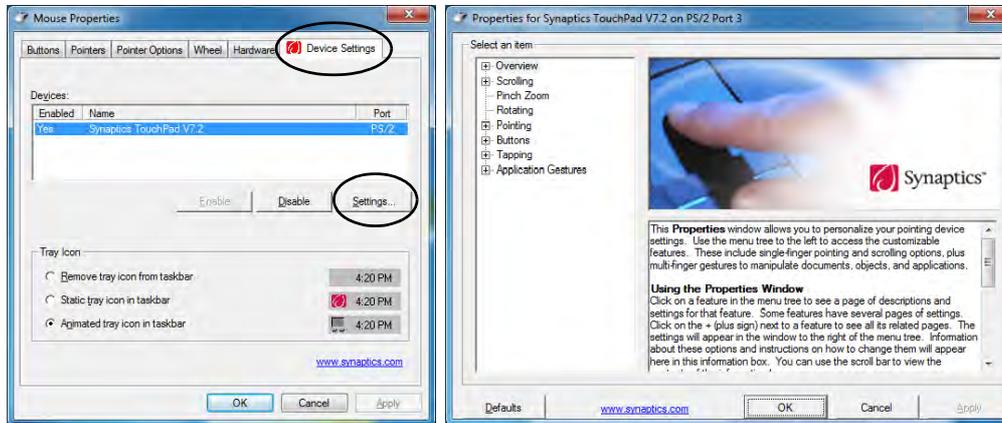
Figure 2 - 5
Mouse Properties

Gestures and Device Settings

The Synaptics Gestures Suite application allows you to use a specific gesture (action) on the surface of the TouchPad to perform specific actions to manipulate documents, objects and applications.

You can configure the settings from the Device Settings tab in **Mouse Properties**:

1. Click **Start**, and click **Control Panel** (or point to **Settings** and click **Control Panel**).
2. Click **Mouse (Hardware and Sound)**.
3. Click **Device Settings** (tab) and click **Settings**.
4. Use the menu tree on the left to access the user configurable settings.



Show Video

You can get a clearer view of the gestures involved by clicking the **Show Video** option for each gesture item.

Select the gesture (**Pinch Zoom, Rotating, Three Fingers Down and Three Finger Flick**) in the **Device Settings > Settings** left tree menu and click the **Show Video** button to see the demonstration video.

For more details on any of the gestures see the **help** in the lower part of the right menu window.

Figure 2 - 6
Mouse Properties - Device Settings

Scrolling

The Two-Finger scrolling feature works in most scrollable windows and allows you to scroll horizontally and vertically. Place two fingers, slightly separated, on the TouchPad surface and slide both fingers in the direction required (in a straight continuous motion).

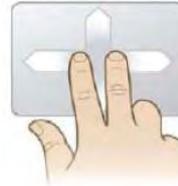


Figure 2 - 7
Scrolling Gesture

Zooming

The Pinch Zoom gesture can be used to perform the same function as a scroll wheel in *Windows* applications that support CTRL + scroll wheel zoom functionality. Place two fingers on the TouchPad (for best results use the tips of the fingers) and slide them apart to zoom in, or closer together to zoom out.

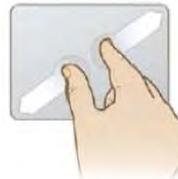


Figure 2 - 8
Zooming Gesture

Rotating

Use the Pivot Rotate gesture to rotate objects (e.g. photos) in 90 degree increments. Place a finger down on the left “target” zone and keep it stationary. Place another finger near the middle of the TouchPad and slide it in a circular motion around the stationary finger (clockwise or counterclockwise) to rotate the object.



Figure 2 - 9
Rotating Gesture

Three Finger-Flick/Three Fingers Down (Press)

The Three Finger-Flick gesture may be used to enhance navigation with a variety of applications such as browsing the Internet or scrolling through a photo viewer. The Three Fingers Down gesture may be used to launch user-selectable applications.

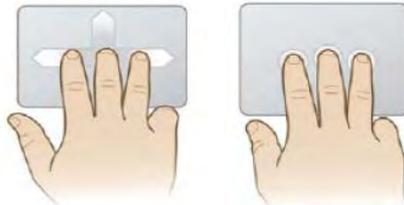


Figure 2 - 10
Flick/Press
Gesture

Sound Volume Adjustment

The sound volume level is set using the volume control within **Windows** (and the volume function keys on the computer). Click the volume icon in the taskbar to check the setting.

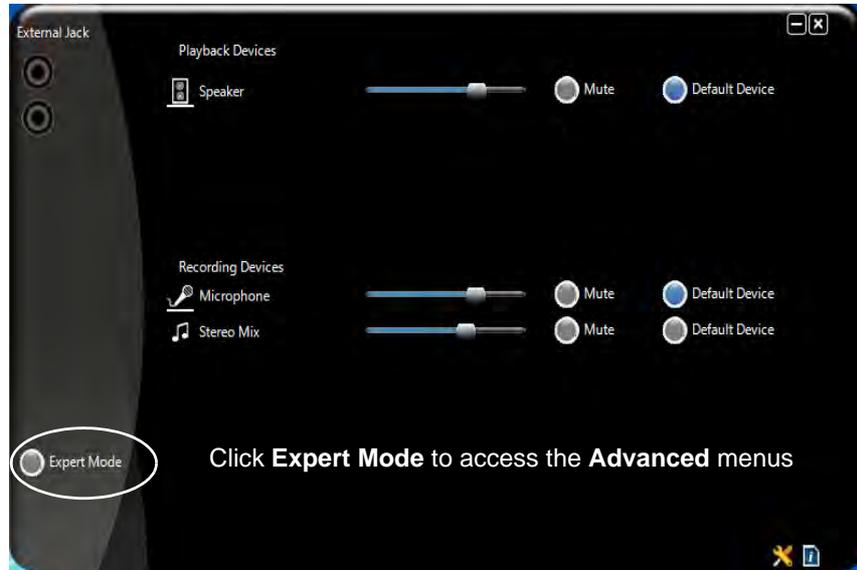


Figure 2 - 11
VIA HD Audio Deck

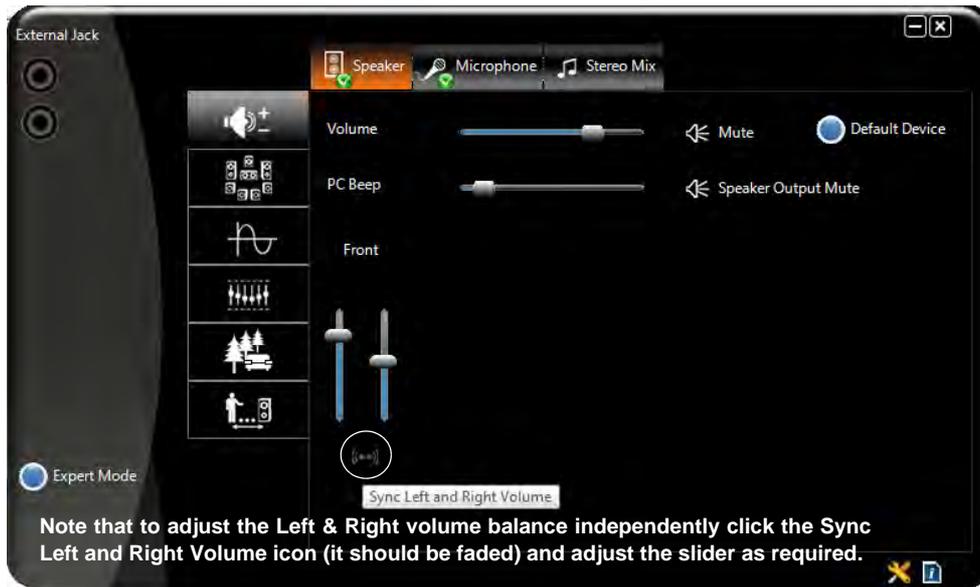
Audio Features

You can configure the audio options on your computer from the **Sound** control panel in **Windows**, from the **HD VDeck** icon on the desktop or **VIA HD Audio Deck** control panel  [VIA HD Audio Deck](#) .

The volume may also be adjusted by means of the **Fn + F5/F6** key combination.



Expert Mode will allow you to access more advanced configuration menus for **Speaker**, **Microphone** and **Stereo Mix**.



Syncing Left & Right Volume Balance

If you wish to adjust the left and right channel volume levels separately, you will need to adjust this from the **VIA HD Audio Deck in Expert Mode**.

Click **Speaker** in **VIA HD Audio Deck** (in Expert Mode) and click the **Sync Left and Right** volume button (see left). You can then adjust the volume sliders independently (this setting also controls the **Balance** setting in the Windows Sound control panel).

Figure 2 - 12
VIA HD Audio Deck
(Expert Mode)

Chapter 3: Power Management

Overview

To conserve power, especially when using the battery, your computer power management conserves power by controlling individual components of the computer (the LCD and hard disk drive) or the whole system. This chapter covers:

- The Power Sources
- Turning On the Computer
- Power Plans
- Power-Saving States
- Configuring the Power Buttons
- Power Conservation Modes
- Battery Information

The computer uses enhanced power saving techniques to give the operating system (OS) direct control over the power and thermal states of devices and processors. For example, this enables the OS to set devices into low-power states based on user settings and information from applications.

For information on the *Windows 8* operating system see [Appendix E](#).



OS Note

Power management functions will vary slightly depending on your operating system. For more information it is best to refer to the user's manual of your operating system.

(**Note:** All pictures used on the following pages are from the *Windows 7* OS.)



Silent Mode (For Some Model A Designs Only)

Use the  key to toggle **Silent Mode** to reduce fan noise and save power consumption. Note this may reduce computer performance.

The Power Sources

The computer can be powered by either an AC/DC adapter or a battery pack.

AC/DC Adapter

Use only the AC/DC adapter that comes with your computer. The wrong type of AC/DC adapter will damage the computer and its components.

1. Attach the AC/DC adapter to the DC-in jack on the left of the computer.
2. Plug the AC power cord into an outlet, and then connect the AC power cord to the AC/DC adapter.
3. Raise the lid/LCD to a comfortable viewing angle.
4. Press the power button to turn “On”.

Battery

The battery allows you to use your computer while you are on the road or when an electrical outlet is unavailable. Battery life varies depending on the applications and the configuration you're using. **To increase battery life, let the battery discharge completely before recharging** (see *“How do I completely discharge the battery?” on page 3 - 15*).

We recommend that you do not remove the battery. For more information on the battery, please refer to *“Battery Information” on page 3 - 11*.

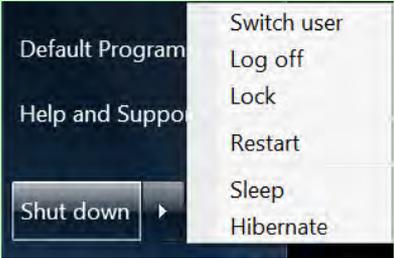
Turning On the Computer

Now you are ready to begin using your computer. To turn it on simply press the power button on the front panel.

When the computer is on, you can use the power button as a Stand by/Hibernate/Shutdown hot-key button when it is pressed for less than **4 seconds** (pressing and holding the power button for longer than this will shut the computer down). Use **Power Options** in the *Windows* control panel to configure this feature.


Shut Down

Note that you should always shut your computer down by choosing the **Shut Down** command from the bottom right of the **Start** menu in *Windows*. This will help prevent hard disk or system problems.




Forced Off

If the system “hangs”, and the **Ctrl + Alt + Del** key combination doesn’t work, press the power button for **4 seconds**, or longer, to force the system to turn itself off.

Power Button as Stand by or Hibernate Button

You can use the OS’s **Power Options** control panel to set the power button to send the system into Stand by or Hibernate mode (see your OS’s documentation, or *“Configuring the Power Buttons” on page 3 - 8* for details).



Resuming Operation

See [Table 3 - 1](#), on [page 3 - 9](#) for information on how to resume from a power-saving state.

Password

It is recommended that you enable a password on system resume in order to protect your data.

Power Plans

The computer can be configured to conserve power by means of **power plans**. You can use (or modify) an existing **power plan**, or create a new one.

The settings may be adjusted to set the **display** to turn off after a specified time, and to send the computer into **Sleep** after a period of inactivity.

Click *Change plan settings* and then click *Change advanced power settings* to access further configuration options in **Advanced Settings**.

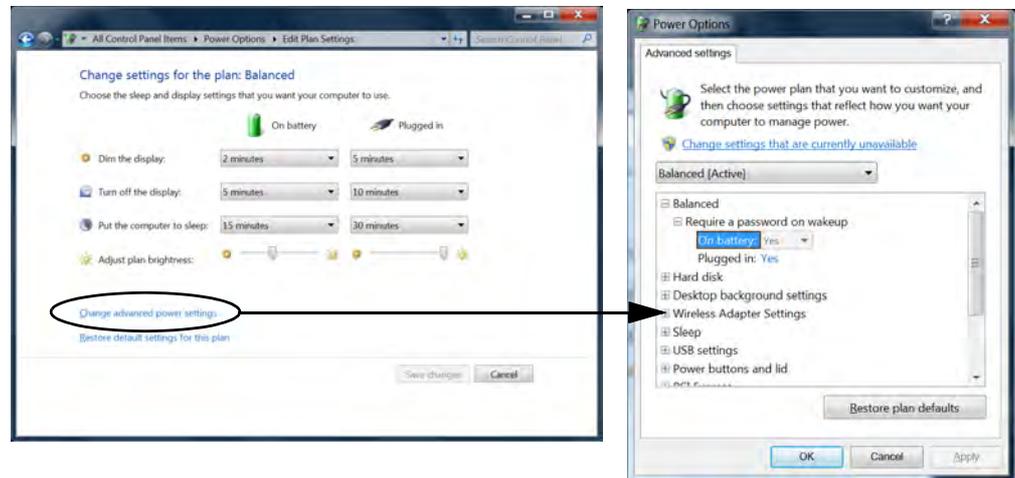


Figure 3 - 1
**Power Plan
Advanced Settings
(Win 7)**

Each **Windows power plan** will also adjust the processor performance of your machine in order to save power. This is worth bearing in mind if you are experiencing any reduced performance (especially under DC/battery power).

Choose **High performance** (you may need to click **Show additional plans** to view the High performance plan) for maximum performance when the computer is powered from an AC power source. Choose the **Power saver** (bear in mind that this scheme may slow down the overall performance of the computer in order to save power) for maximum power saving when the computer is battery (DC power) powered. The recommended **Balanced** power plan will balance power saving and performance.

Click to Show/Hide additional power plans

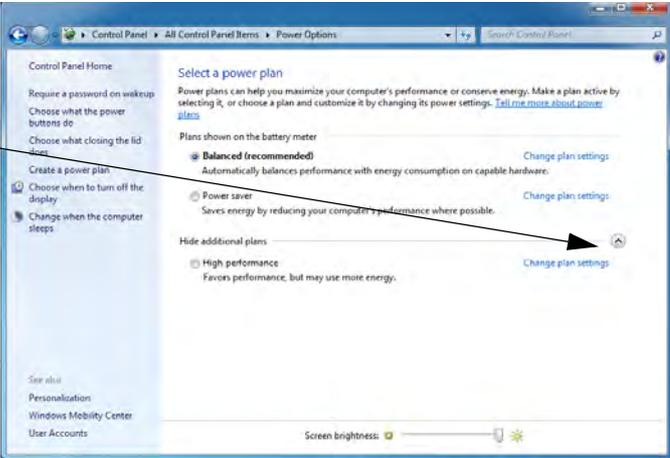


Figure 3 - 2
Power Plans

Power-Saving States

You can use power-saving states to stop the computer's operation and restart where you left off. *Win 7* uses the **Sleep**, **Hibernate** and **Shut Down** power-saving states.

Sleep

In **Sleep** all of your work, settings and preferences are saved to memory before the system sleeps. When you are not using your computer for a certain length of time, which you specify in the operating system, it will enter **Sleep** to save power.

The PC wakes from **Sleep within seconds** and will return you to where you last left off (what was on your desktop) without reopening the application(s) and file(s) you last used.

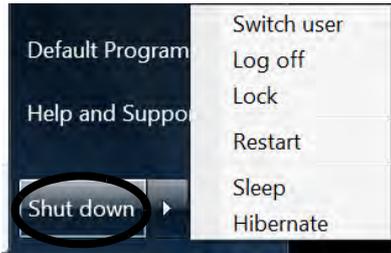
If your mobile PC in **Sleep** is running on battery power the system will use only a minimum amount of power. After an extended period the system will save all the information to the hard disk and shut the computer down before the battery becomes depleted.

Hibernate

Hibernate uses the least amount of power of all the power-saving states and saves all of your information on a part of the hard disk before it turns the system off. If a power failure occurs the system can restore your work from the hard disk; if a power failure occurs when work is saved only to memory, then the work will be lost. **Hibernate** will also return you to where you last left off within seconds. You should put your mobile PC into **Hibernate** if you will not use the computer for a period of time, and will not have the chance to charge the battery.

Shut down

You should **Shut down** the computer if you plan to install new hardware (don't forget to remove the battery and follow all the safety instructions in **Chapter 6**), plan to be away from the computer for several days, or you do not need it to wake up and run a scheduled task. Returning to full operation from **Shut down** takes longer than from **Sleep** or **Hibernate**.





**Silent Mode
(For Some Model A
Designs Only)**

You can use **Silent Mode** to reduce power consumption and fan noise.

Use the **Silent Mode** hot key  to toggle this mode on/off.

On screen visual indicators will display the **Silent Mode** status (see [Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15](#)).

Note **Silent Mode** may reduce computer performance.

Figure 3 - 3
Lock Button menu

Password Protection

It is recommended that you enable a password on wake up in order to protect your data.

However you can disable this setting from the **Power Options** menu by clicking **Require a password on wakeup** in the left menu, and selecting the options (click **Change settings that are currently unavailable**).

Figure 3 - 4
Power Options
Define Power
Buttons

Configuring the Power Buttons

The power/sleep button (**Fn + F4** key combo) and closed lid may be set to send the computer in to a power-saving state. Click **Choose what the power buttons do** on the left menu in **Power Options** to bring up the menu.



Resuming Operation

You can resume operation from power-saving states by pressing the power button, or in some cases pressing the sleep button (**Fn + F4** key combo).



Closing the Lid

If you have chosen to send the computer to **Sleep** when the lid is closed, raising the lid will wake the system up.

Power Status	Icon  Color	To Resume
Power Off	Off	Press the Power Button
Sleep	Blinking Green	Press the Power Button Press the Sleep Button (Fn + F4 Key Combo)
Hibernate	Off (battery) Orange (AC/DC adapter)	Press the Power Button
Display Turned Off	Green	Press a Key or Move the Mouse/Touchpad

Table 3 - 1 Resuming Operation



Power Button

When the computer is on, you can use the power button as a Sleep/Hibernate/Shut Down hot key button when it is pressed for less than **4 seconds** (pressing and holding the power button for longer than this will force the computer to shut down).



Power Conservation Modes

The **Energy Star** setting will result in maximum power saving, but with the possible loss of some performance.

Setting the mode to **Bal-ance** will give power saving matched with performance.

Performance will give optimum computer performance but with less power conservation.

Power Conservation Modes

This system supports **Energy Star** power management features that place computers (CPU, hard drive, etc.) into a low-power sleep modes after a designated period of inactivity. Adjust **Power Conservation Modes** from the **Control Center**:

1. Press the **Fn + Esc** key combination to toggle the **Control Center** on/off.
2. Click either the **Performance**, **Balanced** or **Energy Star** button.
3. Click in a blank area of the icon or press a key on the keyboard to exit **Power Conservation Mode** without making any changes.



Figure 3 - 5
Control Center

Battery Information

Follow these simple guidelines to get the best use out of your battery.

Battery Power

Your computer's battery power is dependent upon many factors, including the programs you are running, and peripheral devices attached. You can set actions to be taken (e.g. Shut down, Hibernate etc.), and set critical and low battery levels from power plan **Change plan settings > Change advanced power settings** (see *Figure 3 - 1 on page 3 - 4*).

Click the battery icon  in the taskbar to see the current battery level and charge status.



Low Battery Warning

When the battery is critically low, immediately connect the AC/DC adapter to the computer or save your work, otherwise, the unsaved data will be lost when the power is depleted.

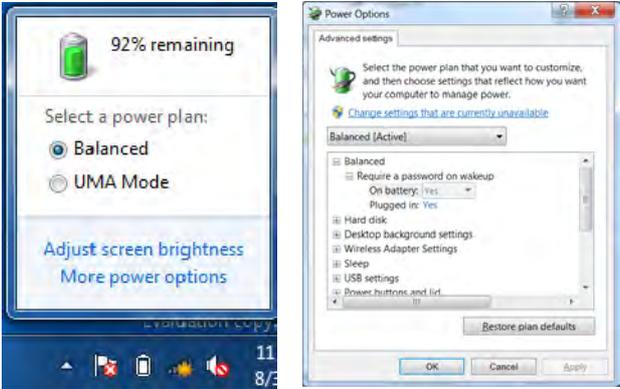


Figure 3 - 6
Battery Icon (Taskbar) & Battery Advanced Settings



Windows Mobility Center

The **Windows Mobility Center** control panel provides an easy point of access for information on battery status, power plans used and wireless device status etc.

Conserving Battery Power

- Use a **power plan** that conserves power (e.g **Power saver**), however note that this may have an affect on computer performance.
- Lower the brightness level of the LCD display. The system will decrease LCD brightness slightly to save power when it is not powered by the AC/DC adapter.
- Reduce the amount of time before the display is turned off.
- Close wireless, Bluetooth, modem or communication applications when they are not being used.
- Disconnect/remove any unnecessary external devices e.g. USB devices, ExpressCards etc.



Figure 3 - 7
Windows Mobility Center

Battery Life

Battery life may be shortened through improper maintenance. **To optimize the life and improve its performance, fully discharge and recharge the battery at least once every 30 days.**

We recommend that you do not remove the battery yourself. If you do need to remove the battery for any reason (e.g. long term storage) see *“Removing the Battery” on page 6 - 4.*

New Battery

Always completely discharge, then fully charge, a new battery (see *“Battery FAQ” on page 3 - 15* for instructions on how to do this).

Recharging the Battery with the AC/DC Adapter

The battery pack automatically recharges when the AC/DC adapter is attached and plugged into an electrical outlet. If the computer is powered on, and in use, it will take several hours to fully recharge the battery. When the computer is turned off but plugged into an electrical outlet, battery charge time is less. (Refer to *“LED Indicators” on page 1 - 11* for information on the battery charge status, and to *“Battery Information” on page 3 - 11* for more information on how to maintain and properly recharge the battery pack.)



Caution

Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced.

Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Discard used battery according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Proper handling of the Battery Pack

- DO NOT disassemble the battery pack under any circumstances
- DO NOT expose the battery to fire or high temperatures, it may explode
- DO NOT connect the metal terminals (+, -) to each other



Damaged Battery Warning

Should you notice any physical defects (e.g. the battery is bent out of shape after being dropped), or any unusual smells emanating from the notebook battery, shut your computer down immediately and contact your distributor/supplier. If the battery has been dropped we do not recommend using it any further, as even if the computer continues to work with a damaged battery in place, it may cause circuit damage, which may possibly result in fire. It is recommended that you replace your computer battery every two years.

Battery FAQ

How do I completely discharge the battery?

Use the computer with battery power until it shuts down due to a low battery. Don't turn off the computer even if a message indicates the battery is critically low, just let the computer use up all of the battery power and shut down on its own.

1. Save and close all files and applications.
2. **Create a power plan** for discharging the battery and set all the options to **Never**.

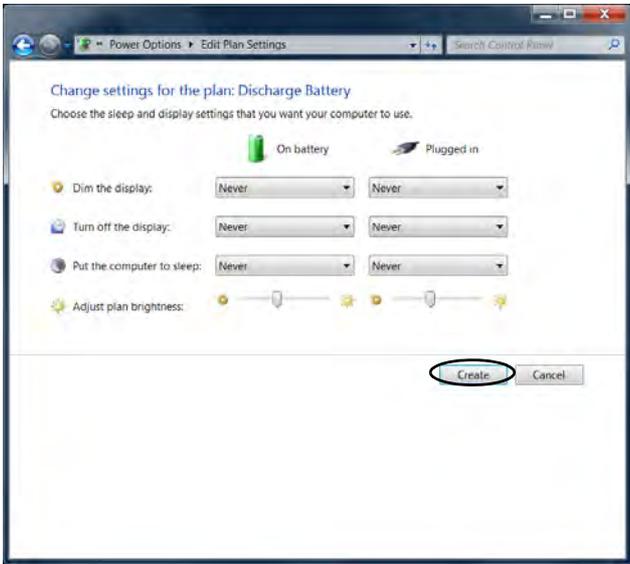
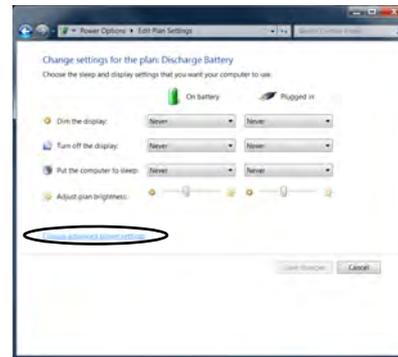
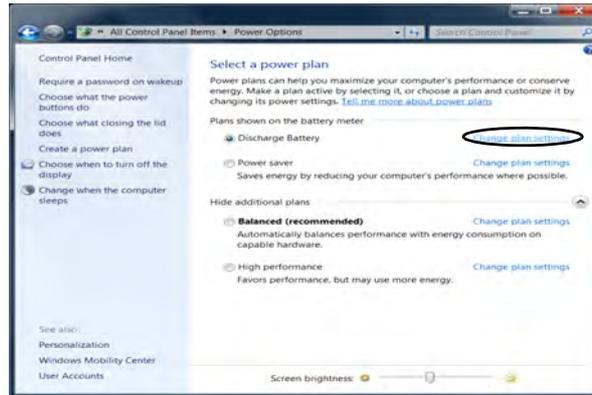


Figure 3 - 8
Power Plan Create

Power Management

3. Click **Change plan settings** (after creating it) and click **Change plan settings > Change advanced power settings**.

Figure 3 - 9
Change Plan Settings / Change Advanced Power Settings



- 4. Scroll down to **Battery** and click **+** to expand the battery options.
- 5. Choose the options below (click **Yes** if a warning appears):

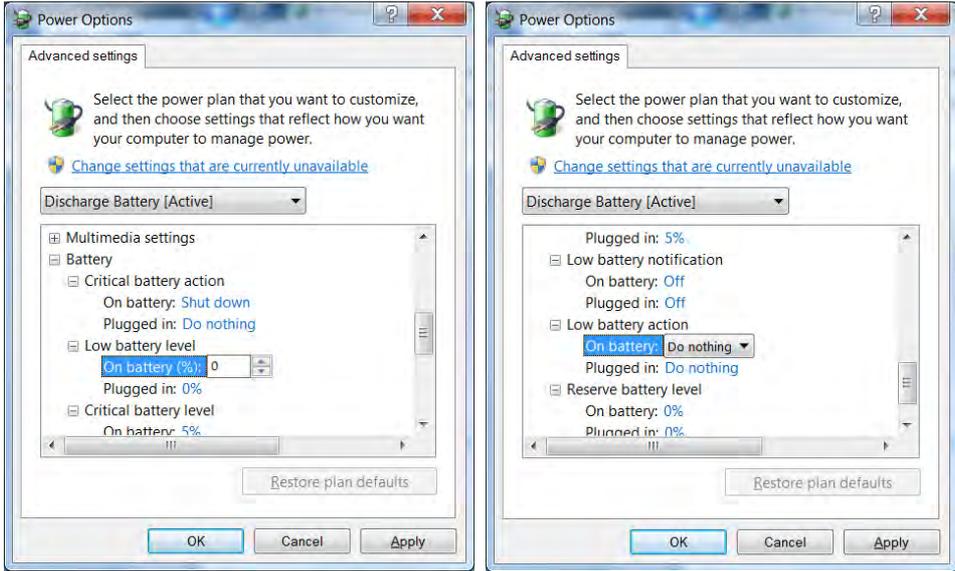


Figure 3 - 10
Power Options
Advanced Settings -
Battery

- Low battery levels = 0%
- Critical battery Levels = 1%
- Low battery action = Do Nothing
- Critical battery action (On battery) = Shut Down
- Critical battery action (Plugged in) = Do Nothing

How do I fully charge the battery?

When charging the battery, don't stop until the LED charging indicator light changes from orange to green.

How do I maintain the battery?

Completely discharge and charge the battery at least once every 30 days or after about 20 partial discharges.

Chapter 4: Drivers & Utilities

This chapter deals with installing the drivers and utilities essential to the operation or improvement of some of the computer's subsystems. The system takes advantage of some newer hardware components for which the latest versions of most available operating systems haven't built in drivers and utilities. Thus, some of the system components won't be auto-configured with an appropriate driver or utility during operating system installation. Instead, you need to manually install some system-required drivers and utilities.

See [Appendix E](#) for specific information on the **Windows 8** operating system.

What to Install

The *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc contains the drivers and utilities necessary for the proper operation of the computer. [Table 4 - 1, on page 4 - 3](#) lists what you need to install and **it is very important that the drivers are installed in the order indicated.**

Module Driver Installation

The procedures for installing drivers for the **PC Camera, Wireless LAN, Bluetooth & WLAN Combo** and **3.75G** modules are provided in *"Modules & Options"* on [page 7 - 1](#).



Driver Installation & Power

When installing drivers make sure your computer is powered by the AC/DC adapter connected to a working power source. Some drivers draw a significant amount of power during the installation procedure, and if the remaining battery capacity is not adequate this may cause the system to shut down and cause system problems (note that there is no safety issue involved here, and the battery will be rechargeable within 1 minute).

Driver Installation

Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc and click **Install Drivers** (button), or **Option Drivers** (button) to access the **Optional** driver menu.

4



Figure 4 - 1 - Drivers Installer Screen 1

1. Check the driver installation order from [Table 4 - 1, on page 4 - 3](#) (the drivers must be installed in this order) which is the same as that listed in the **Drivers Installer** menu below.
2. Click to select the driver you wish to install, (you should note down the drivers as you install them).
3. Follow the instructions for each individual driver installation procedure as listed on the following pages.



Figure 4 - 2 - Install Drivers

Win 7 SP1/Win 8 Driver	Page #	Win 7 SP1/Win 8 Driver	Page #
<i>Chipset</i>	<i>Page 4 - 6</i>	<i>PC Camera Module (Only 14.0" / 35.56cm Model A computers require a camera driver for Windows 8)</i>	<i>Page 7 - 2</i>
<i>Video (VGA)</i>	<i>Page 4 - 6</i>	<i>Wireless LAN Module</i>	<i>Page 7 - 10</i>
<i>LAN</i>	<i>Page 4 - 6</i>	<i>Bluetooth & WLAN Combo Module</i>	<i>Page 7 - 31</i>
<i>CardReader</i>	<i>Page 4 - 6</i>	<i>3G Module</i> (for Models A & B only) No driver is required for Windows 8	<i>Page 7 - 39</i>
<i>Touchpad</i>	<i>Page 4 - 6</i>	<i>Trusted Platform Module</i>	<i>Page 7 - 64</i>
<i>Hot Key</i>	<i>Page 4 - 7</i>	<i>Intel Rapid Storage Technology</i> (required for hard disks in AHCI mode)	<i>Page 7 - 78</i>
<i>USB 3.0 (Win 7 Only) (Not required for Windows 8)</i>	<i>Page 4 - 7</i>	<i>All drivers provided are for Windows 7 with Service Pack 1 or Windows 8 (see Appendix E for Win 8 information).</i>	
<i>MEI Driver</i>	<i>Page 4 - 7</i>		
<i>Audio</i>	<i>Page 4 - 7</i>		

Table 4 - 1 - Driver Installation

Note that you need to install both the WLAN & Bluetooth drivers the for WLAN and Bluetooth combo modules.

Manual Driver Installation

Click **Browse CD/DVD** (button) in the *Drivers Installer* application and browse to the executable file in the appropriate driver folder.

4

Windows Update

After installing all the drivers make sure you enable **Windows Update** in order to get all the latest security updates etc. (all updates will include the latest **hotfixes** from Microsoft). See [“Windows Update” on page 4 - 8](#) for instructions.

Updating/Reinstalling Individual Drivers

If you wish to update/reinstall individual drivers it may be necessary to uninstall the original driver. To do this go to the **Control Panel** in the *Windows OS* and double-click the **Programs and Features** icon (**Programs > Uninstall a program**). Click to select the driver (if it is not listed see below) and click **Uninstall**, and then follow the on screen prompts (it may be necessary to restart the computer). Reinstall the driver as outlined in this chapter.

If the driver is not listed in the **Programs and Features** menu:

1. Click **Start**, and click **Control Panel** (or point to **Settings** and click **Control Panel**).
2. Double-click **Device Manager (Hardware and Sound > Device Manager)**.
3. Double-click the **device** you wish to update/reinstall the driver for (you may need to click “+” to expand the selection).
4. Click **Driver** (tab) and click the **Update Driver** or **Uninstall** button and follow the on screen prompts.

User Account Control

If a **User Account Control** prompt appears as part of the driver installation procedure, click **Continue** or **Allow**, and follow the installation procedure as directed.

Windows Security Message

If you receive a *Windows* security message as part of the driver installation process. Just click *“Install this driver software anyway”* or *“Install”* to continue the installation procedure.

You will receive this message in cases where the driver has been released after the version of *Windows* you are currently using. All the drivers provided will have already received certification for *Windows*.

New Hardware Found

If you see the message **“New Hardware Found”** during the installation procedure (**other than when outlined in the driver install procedure**), click **Cancel** to close the window, and follow the installation procedure.



Driver Installation General Guidelines

The driver installation procedure outlined in this Chapter (and in **Chapter 7 Options & Modules**), are accurate at the time of going to press.

Drivers are always subject to upgrade and revision so the exact procedure for certain drivers may differ slightly. As a general guide follow the default on screen instructions for each driver (e.g. **Next > Next > Finish**) unless you are an advanced user. In many cases a restart is required to install the driver.

Make sure any modules (e.g. PC Camera, WLAN or 3G) are **ON** before installing the appropriate driver.

Driver Installation Procedure

Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual disc* and click **Install Drivers** (button).

Chipset

1. Click **1.Install Chipset Driver > Yes**.
2. Click **Next > Yes > Next > Next**.
3. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.

Video (VGA)

1. Click **2.Install VGA Driver > Yes**.
2. Click **Next > Yes > Next > Next**.
3. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.

Note: After installing the video driver go to the **Display/Display Settings** control panel to adjust the video settings to the highest resolution.

LAN

1. Click **3.Install LAN Driver > Yes**.
2. Click **Next > Install**.
3. Click **Finish**.

CardReader

1. Click **4.Install Cardreader Driver > Yes**.
2. Click **Finish**.

Touchpad

1. Click **5.Install Touchpad Driver > Yes**.
2. Click **Next**.
3. Click the button to accept the license agreement and click **Next**.
4. Click **Finish > Restart Now** to restart the computer.

Hot Key

1. Click **6.Install Hotkey AP > Yes**.
2. Click **Next > Next**.
3. Click **Finish > Finish** to restart the computer.

USB 3.0 (Win 7 Only)

1. Click **7.Install USB 3.0 Driver > Yes**.
2. Click **Next > Yes > Next > Next**.
3. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.

MEI Driver

1. Click **8.Install MEI Driver > Yes**.
2. Click **Next > Yes > Next**.
3. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.

Audio

1. Click **9.Install Audio Driver > Yes**.
2. Click **Next**.
3. Click the button to agree to the license and click **Next**.
4. Click **Next > Next > Next**.
5. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.

Note that after installing the audio driver the system will not return to the *Drivers Installer* screen. To install any of the optional drivers listed overleaf, eject the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc and then reinsert it (or double-click the disc icon in **My Computer**), and click *Option Drivers* (button) to access the optional driver menu.

It is recommended you now also install the **Intel Rapid Storage Technology** driver (see "*IRST Driver Installation*" on page 7 - 78 - required for AHCI mode hard disks).

(see over)



Windows Update

After installing all the drivers make sure you enable **Windows Update** in order to get all the latest security updates etc. (all updates will include the latest **hotfixes** from Microsoft).

To enable **Windows Update** make sure you are **connected to the internet**:

1. Click **Start**, and click **Control Panel** (or point to **Settings** and click **Control Panel**).
2. Click **Windows Update** (System and Security/ Security).
3. Click **Check for updates** (button).
4. The computer will now check for updates (you need to be connected to the internet).
5. Click **Install now** (button) to begin checking for the updates.
6. Click **Install updates** (button) to install the updates.

Windows Experience Index

After the drivers are installed follow this procedure to ensure an accurate rating from the *Windows Experience Index* (make sure the AC/DC adapter is plugged in):

1. Click **Start**, and click **Control Panel**.
2. Click **Performance Information and Tools** (**System and Security > System > Check the Windows Experience Index**).
3. Click “**Rate this computer/Refresh Now/Rerun the assessment**”.
4. The computer will take a few minutes to assess the system performance.
5. Close the control panel.

Optional Drivers

See the pages indicated in *Table 4 - 1, on page 4 - 3* for the driver installation procedures for any modules included in your purchase option.



Figure 4 - 3 - Option Drivers

Chapter 5: BIOS Utilities

Overview

This chapter gives a brief introduction to the computer's built-in software:

If your computer has never been set up, or you are making important changes to the system (e.g. hard disk setup), then you should review this chapter first and note the original settings found in *Setup*. Even if you are a beginner, keep a record of the settings you find and any changes you make. This information could be useful if your system ever needs servicing.

There is one general rule: *Don't make any changes unless you are sure of what you are doing*. Many of the settings are required by the system, and changing them could cause it to become unstable or worse. If you have any doubts, consult your service representative.



BIOS Screens

Note that the BIOS screens pictured on these pages are intended for guidance in setting up your system's BIOS.

BIOS versions are subject to constant change and revision, therefore your computer's actual screens may appear slightly different from those pictured on these pages.



BIOS Settings Warning

Incorrect settings can cause your system to malfunction. To correct mistakes, return to *Setup* and restore the *Previous Values* with <F2>, or *Optimized Defaults* with <F3>.

UEFI Boot & POST

When UEFI Boot is enabled, then the prompts to press **F2** or **F7** will **not appear**. However you can still press **F2** to enter the setup, or **F7** to choose the preferred boot device, if you press the key immediately the system boots up.

The Setup Utility

Each time you turn on the computer the system takes a few seconds to conduct a **POST**, including a quick test of the on-board RAM (memory).

As the **POST** proceeds, the computer will tell you if there is anything wrong. If there is a problem that prevents the system from booting, it will display a system summary and prompt you to run *Setup*.

If there are no problems, the *Setup* prompt will disappear and the system will load the operating system. Once that starts, you can't get into *Setup* without rebooting.

The **Aptio Setup Utility** tells the system how to configure itself and manage basic features and subsystems (e.g. port configuration).

To enter *Setup*, turn on the computer and press **F2** (give the system a few seconds to enter *Setup*). If the **Boot Logo** is enabled the **F2** on screen will be **highlighted** to illustrate that the system is processing the request during the **POST** (or press **F7** for boot options). If you get a "Keyboard Error", (usually because you pressed **F2** too quickly) just press **F2** again.

If the computer is already on, reboot using the **Ctrl + Alt + Delete** combination and then hold down **F2** when prompted. The *Setup* main menu will appear.

To see the boot options press **F7** and choose your preferred boot device.

Failing the POST

Errors can be detected during the **POST**. There are two categories, “fatal” and “non-fatal”.

Fatal Errors

These stop the boot process and usually indicate there is something seriously wrong with your system. Take the computer to your service representative or authorized service center as soon as possible.

Non-Fatal Errors

This kind of error still allows you to boot. You will get a message identifying the problem (make a note of this message!) and you can then press **F7** (the **F7** on screen will be **highlighted** to illustrate that the system is processing the request) for boot options.

Press **F2** (give the system a few seconds to enter *Setup*; the **F2** on screen will be highlighted to illustrate that the system is processing the request) to run the **Setup** program and try to correct the problem. If you still get an error message after you change the setting, or if the “cure” seems even worse, call for help.



Setup Menu

The **Setup** menus shown in this section are for **reference** only. Your computer's menus will indicate the configuration appropriate for your model and options.

Figure 5 - 1
Navigation Menu

Setup Screens

The following pages contain additional advice on portions of the *Setup*. Along the top of the screen is a menu bar with menu headings. When you select a heading, a new screen appears. Scroll through the features listed on each screen to make changes to *Setup*.

Instructions on how to navigate each screen are in the box at the bottom right side of the screen.

```
→←: Select Screen  
↑↓: Select Item  
Enter: Select  
+/-: Change Opt.  
F1: General Help  
F3: Optimized Defaults  
F4: Save Changes & Exit  
ESC: Exit
```

If these tools are confusing, press **F1** to call up a **General Help** screen, and then use the arrow keys to scroll up or down the page.

The **Item Specific Help** on the upper right side of each screen explains the highlighted item and has useful messages about its options.

If you see an arrow ► next to an item, press **Enter** to go to a sub-menu on that subject. The sub-menu screen that appears has a similar layout, but the **Enter** key may execute a command.

Main Menu

```

Aptio Setup Utility - Copyright (C) 2012 American Megatrends Inc.
Main  Advanced  Security  Boot  Exit

System Date          [Fri 09/07/2012]
System Time          [09:56:26]
Set the Date. Use Tab to
switch between Date elements.

▶ SATA Port 0 TOSHIBA MK3259 (320.0GB)
▶ SATA Port 2 MATSHITADVD-R AATAPI
▶ SATA Port 4 Not Present

System Memory:      640 KB
Extended Memory:   2048 MB (DDR3)

MB Series:          *****
BIOS Revision:     *****
KBC/EC firmware Revision: *****

->←: Select Screen
↑↓: Select Item
Enter: Select
+/-: Change Opt.
F1: General Help
F3: Optimized Defaults
F4: Save Changes & Exit
ESC: Exit

Version ***** Copyright (C) 2012 American Megatrends, Inc.

```

Figure 5 - 2
Main Menu

System Time & Date (Main Menu)

The hour setting uses the 24-hour system (i.e., 00 = midnight; 13 = 1 pm). If you can change the date and time settings in your operating system, you will also change these settings. Some applications may also alter data files to reflect these changes.

SATA Port # (Main Menu)

Pressing **Enter** opens the sub-menu to show the configuration of a optical Device/HDD on the computer's SATA Ports.

System/Extended Memory: (Main Menu)

This item contains information on the system memory, and is not user configurable. The system will auto detect the amount of memory installed.

MB Series / BIOS Revision / KBC/EC firmware Revision

This item contains information on the BIOS version etc., and is not user configurable.

Advanced Menu

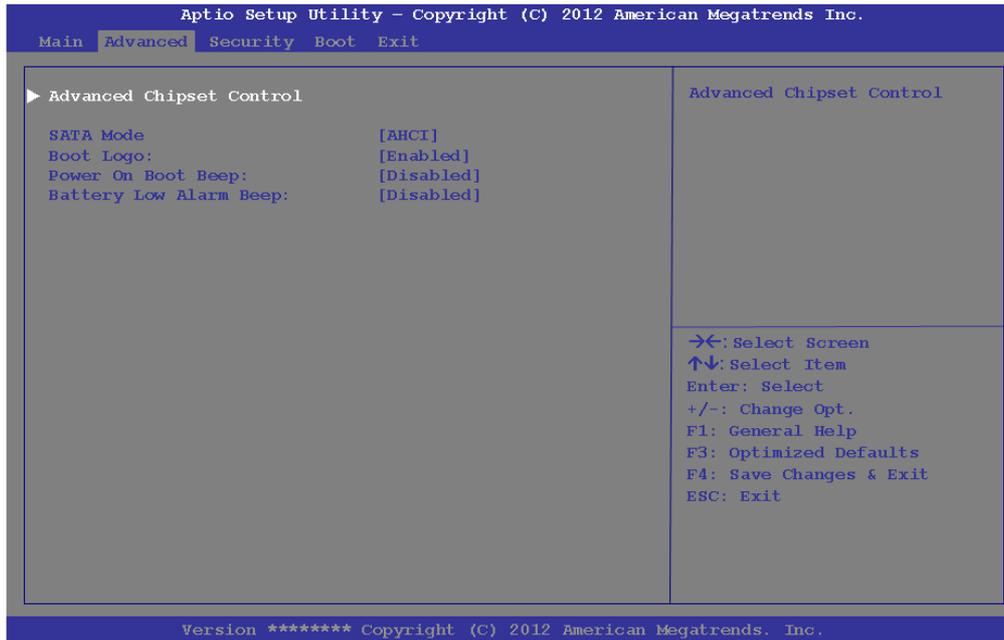


Figure 5 - 3
Advanced Menu

Advanced Chipset Control (Advanced Menu)

The sub-menu here allows you to adjust the **Bluetooth Power Setting**.



SATA Mode Selection

If you have installed the **Windows** operating system with either **IDE** or **AHCI** mode enabled, **DO NOT** disable the set mode (if you wish to disable the set mode you will need to reinstall the **Windows** OS).

Bluetooth Power Setting (Advanced Menu > Advanced Chipset Control)

You can adjust the Bluetooth module power setting to your preference. The default setting (**Disabled**) will see the Bluetooth module powered off when the system is started up or restarted. Enabling the power setting will have the module retain the last power status (on or off) before any restart or shut down.

SATA Mode Selection (Advanced Menu)

You can configure SATA (Serial ATA) control to operate in **IDE** (native/compatible), **AHCI** (Advanced Host Controller Interface) modes from this menu. The **SATA Mode** should be set **BEFORE installing an operating system**, and after you have backed up all necessary files and data (see sidebar).

Boot Logo (Advanced Menu)

Use this menu item to enable/disable the **Boot Logo** screen at system startup. If you disable the **Boot Logo** you will not see the **F2 Enter Setup** or **F7 Boot Options** prompts on the screen, however you can still press these keys, while the boot screen is displayed, to perform the Enter Setup or Boot Option functions.

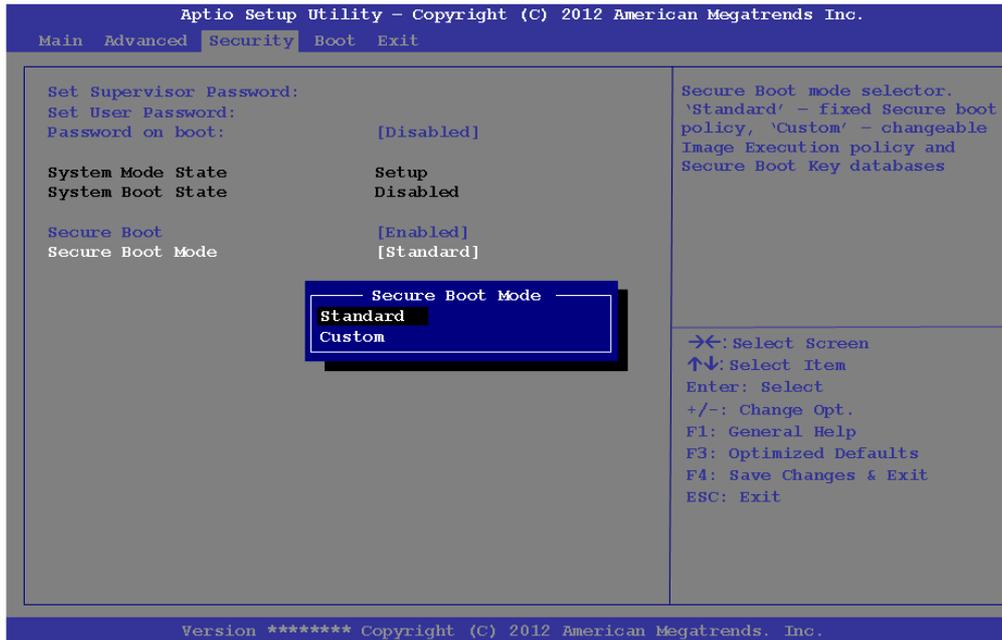
Power On Boot Beep (Advanced Menu)

Use this menu item to enable/disable the beep as the computer starts up.

Battery Low Alarm Beep: (Advanced Menu)

Use this menu item to enable/disable the battery low alarm beep.

Security Menu



Set Supervisor Password (Security Menu)

You can set a password for access to the **Aptio Setup Utility**. This will not affect access to the computer OS (only the **Aptio Setup Utility**).



Security Menu

The changes you make here affect the access to the **Setup** utility itself, and also access to your machine as it boots up after you turn it on. These settings do not affect your machine or network passwords which will be set in your software OS.

Figure 5 - 4
Security Menu



Password Warning

If you set a boot password (Password on boot is “Enabled”), **NEVER** forget your password.

The consequences of this could be serious. If you cannot remember your boot password you must contact your vendor and you may lose all of the information on your hard disk.

Note: To clear existing passwords press **Enter** and type the existing password, then press **Enter** for the new password (without typing any password entry) and **Enter** again to confirm the password clearance.

Set User Password (Security Menu)

You can set a password for user mode access to the **Aptio Setup Utility**. This will not affect access to the computer OS, (only the *Setup* utility) unless you choose to set a **Password on Boot** (see below). Many menu items in the **Aptio Setup Utility** cannot be modified in user mode.

Note: *You can only set the user password after you have set the supervisor password.*

Password on boot: (Security Menu)

Specify whether or not a password should be entered to boot the computer (**you may only set a password on boot if a supervisor password is enabled**). If “*Enabled*” is selected, only users who enter a correct password can boot the system (see the **warning in the sidebar**). The default setting is “*Disabled*”.

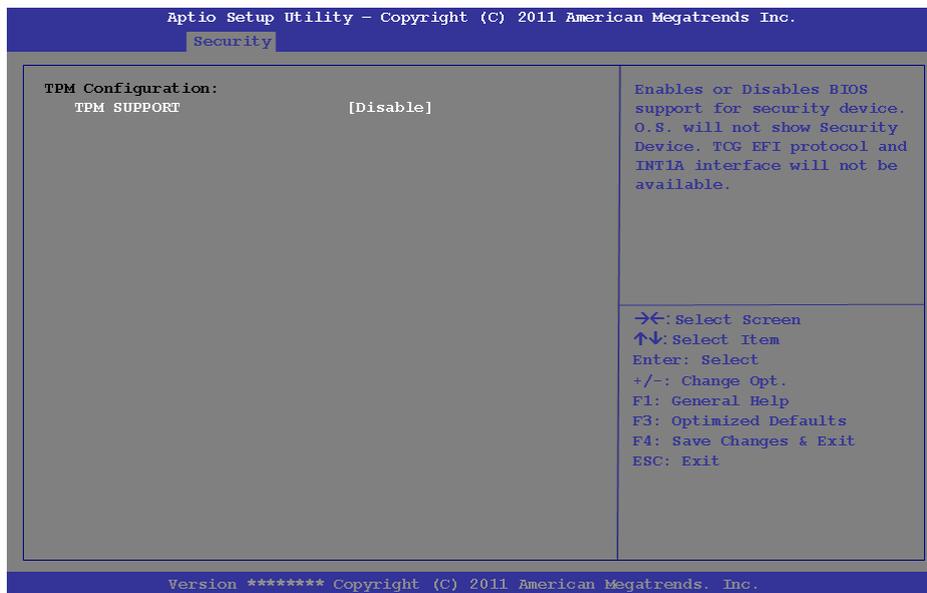
Secure Boot (Security Menu)

Secure Boot prevents unauthorized operating systems and software from loading during the startup process. **Secure Boot** is available as a menu option if you have **Windows 8** set as your operating system, and have **enabled UEFI Boot** (see *“**Boot Menu**” on page 5 - 15*). Enabling Secure Boot will bring up the **Secure Boot Mode** menu to enable you to configure Secure Boot as **Standard** (with a fixed secure boot policy), or **Custom** (which enables you to make changes to the **Image Execution Policy** and **Key Management** database).

TPM Configuration (Security Menu)

This sub-menu will allow you to enable/disable Trusted Platform Module (TPM) support, and to configure the TPM State. Select **TPM Configuration** and press Enter to access the sub-menu. Press Enter to access the **TPM Support** menu and select **Enable** to display the full TPM configuration menu (see *“Trusted Platform Module” on page 7 - 64* for details).

Figure 5 - 5
TPM Support



TPM State (Security Menu > TPM Support Enabled)

Select **TPM State**, press Enter and select **Enable** to change the TPM state to enabled. You will then need to press **F4** to save the changes and restart the computer.

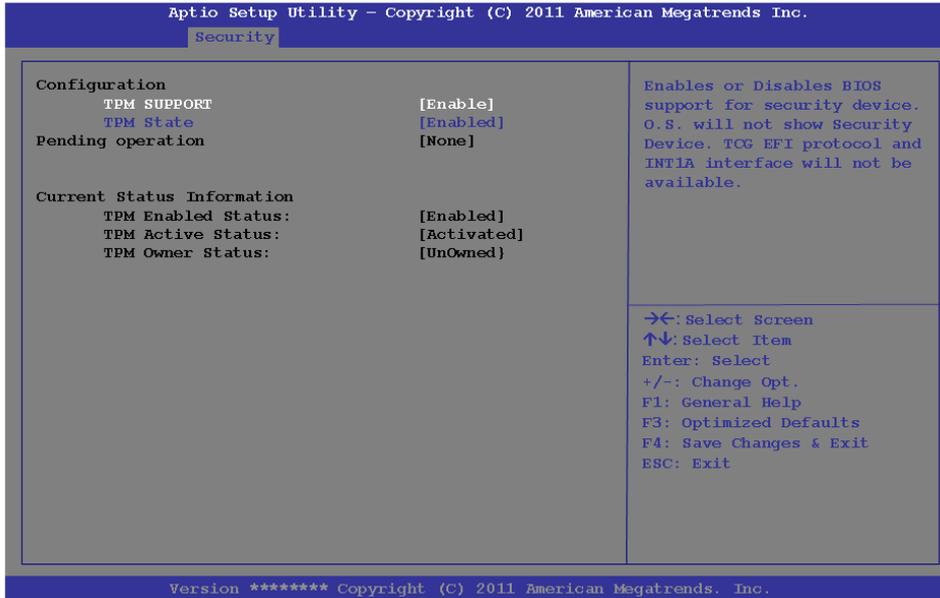
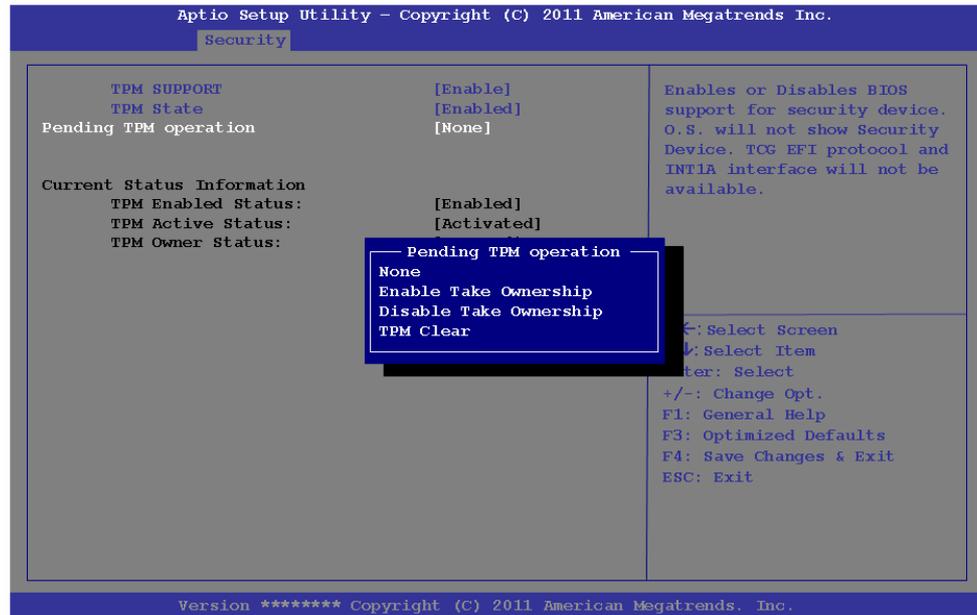


Figure 5 - 6
TPM State (Enabled)

As the computer restarts press **F2** to enter the BIOS again and go to the **TPM Configuration** menu.

Pending TPM operation (Security Menu > TPM Support & TPM State Enabled)
 Select **Pending TPM operation**, press Enter and select the option you require (if you are initializing TPM you should select **Enable Take Ownership**). You will then need to press **F4** to save the changes and restart the computer. You can now install the TPM driver (see *“Trusted Platform Module (TPM) Driver Installation” on page 7 - 67*) and then initialize the TPM.

Figure 5 - 7
Pending TPM operation (Enable Take Ownership)



Boot Menu

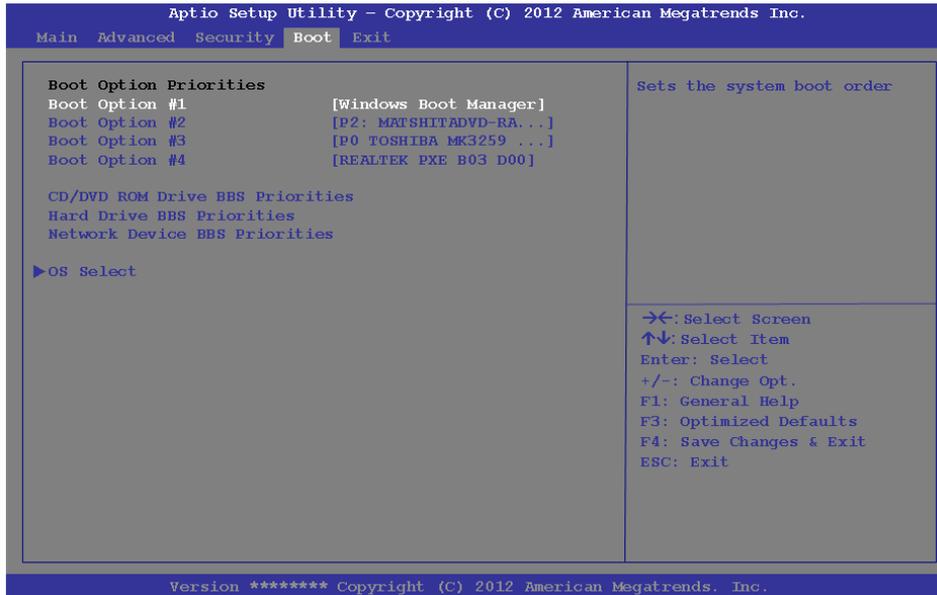


Figure 5 - 8
Boot Menu

5



BIOS Screens

Note that the BIOS screens pictured on these pages are intended for guidance in setting up your system's BIOS.

BIOS versions are subject to constant change and revision, therefore your computer's actual screens may appear slightly different from those pictured on these pages.

When you turn the computer on it will look for an operating system (e.g. **Windows 7**) from the devices listed in this menu, and **in this priority order**. If it cannot find the operating system on that device, it will try to load it from the next device in the order specified in the **Boot Option Priorities**. Item specific help on the right is available to help you move devices up and down the order.

Boot Option Priorities (Boot Menu)

(If UEFI Boot is disabled)

Press Enter to select the Boot Option # and use the **+** and **-** keys to move any device's boot priority up and down the list (the selected device will be highlighted in white).

OS Select (Boot Menu)

This item tells allows you to set the operating system you intend to use. This item should be set before you install an operating system.

UEFI Boot (Boot Menu > OS Select)

Enable/disable UEFI Boot from this menu. The Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) specification provides a clean interface between operating systems and platform firmware at boot time. In contrast to BIOS, UEFI defines a set of standard boot and runtime services.

Exit Menu

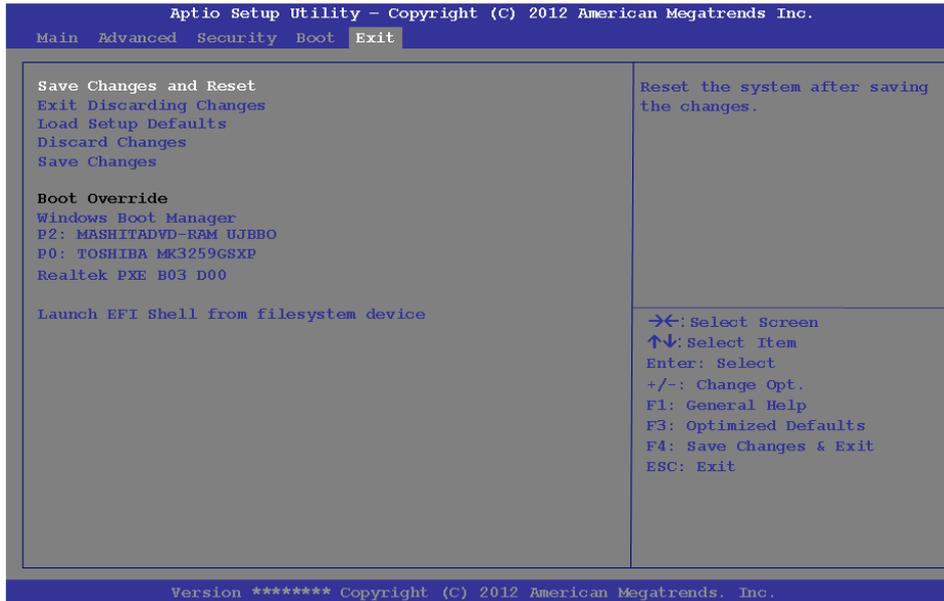


Figure 5 - 9
Exit Menu

Click *Save Changes and Reset* to save all changes made. Choosing to *Discard Changes*, or *Exit Discarding Changes*, will wipe out any changes you have made to the *Setup*. You can also choose to restore the original *Setup* defaults that will return the *Setup* to its original state, and erase any previous changes you have made in a previous session.

Chapter 6: Upgrading The Computer

Overview

This chapter contains information on upgrading the computer. Follow the steps outlined to make the desired upgrades. If you have any trouble or problems you can contact your service representative for further help. Before you begin you will need:

- A small crosshead or Phillips screwdriver
- A small regular slotted (flathead) screwdriver
- An antistatic wrist strap

Before working with the internal components you will need to wear an antistatic wrist strap to ground yourself because static electricity may damage the components.

The chapter includes:

- Removing the Battery
- Upgrading the Hard Disk Drive
- Upgrading the Optical (CD/DVD) Device
- Upgrading the System Memory (RAM)

Please make sure that you review each procedure before you perform it.



Warranty Warning

Please check with your service representative before undertaking any upgrade procedures to find out if this will VOID your warranty.



Power Safety Warning

Before you undertake any upgrade procedures, make sure that you have turned off the power, and disconnected all peripherals and cables (including telephone lines and power cord).

You must also remove your battery in order to prevent accidentally turning the machine on.

Before removing the battery disconnect the AC/DC adapter from the computer.

When Not to Upgrade

These procedures involve opening the system's case, adding and sometimes replacing parts.

You should **not** perform any of these upgrades if:

- Your system is still under warranty or a service contract
- You don't have all the necessary equipment
- You're not in the correct environment
- You doubt your abilities

Under any of these conditions, contact your service representative to purchase or replace the component(s).



Removal Warning

When removing any cover(s) and screw(s) for the purposes of device upgrade, remember to replace the cover(s) and screw(s) before restoring power to the system.

Also note the following when the cover is removed:

- Hazardous moving parts.
- Keep away from moving fan blades.

Upgrading the Processor

If you want to upgrade your computer by replacing the existing processor with a faster/new one you will need to contact your customer service representative. We recommend that you do not do this yourself, since if it is done incorrectly you may damage the processor or mainboard.



Warranty Warning

Please check with your service representative before undertaking any upgrade procedures to find out if this will VOID your warranty.

Removing the Battery

If you are confident in undertaking upgrade procedures yourself, for safety reasons it is best to remove the battery.

1. Turn the computer **off**, and turn it over.
2. Slide the latch **1** in the direction of the arrow.
3. Slide the latch **2** in the direction of the arrow, and hold it in place.
4. Slide the battery out in the direction of the arrow **3**.

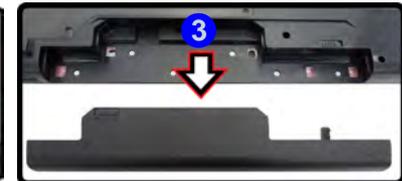
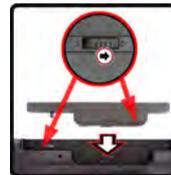
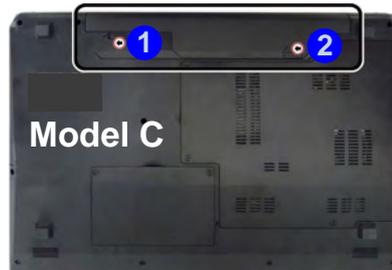
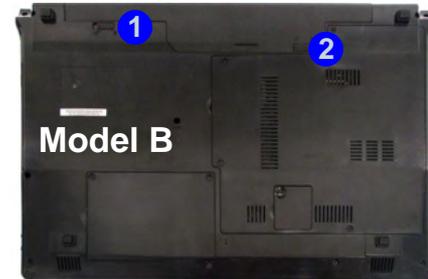
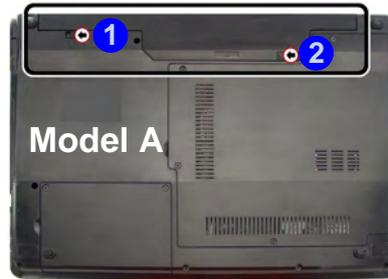


Figure 6 - 1
Battery Removal

Upgrading the Hard Disk Drive

The hard disk drive can be taken out to accommodate other 2.5" serial (SATA) hard disk drives with a height of 9.5mm (h) (see *“Storage” on page D - 3*). Follow your operating system’s installation instructions, and install all necessary drivers and utilities (see *“Driver Installation” on page 4 - 2*), when setting up a new hard disk.



HDD System Warning

New HDD's are blank. Before you begin make sure:
You have backed up any data you want to keep from your old HDD.
You have all the discs required to install your operating system and programs.
If you have access to the internet, download the latest application and hardware driver updates for the operating system you plan to install. Copy these to a removable medium.

Upgrading The Computer

1. Turn **off** the computer, and turn it over and remove the battery.
2. Locate the hard disk bay cover and remove screws **1** & **2**.
3. Remove the hard disk bay cover **3**.

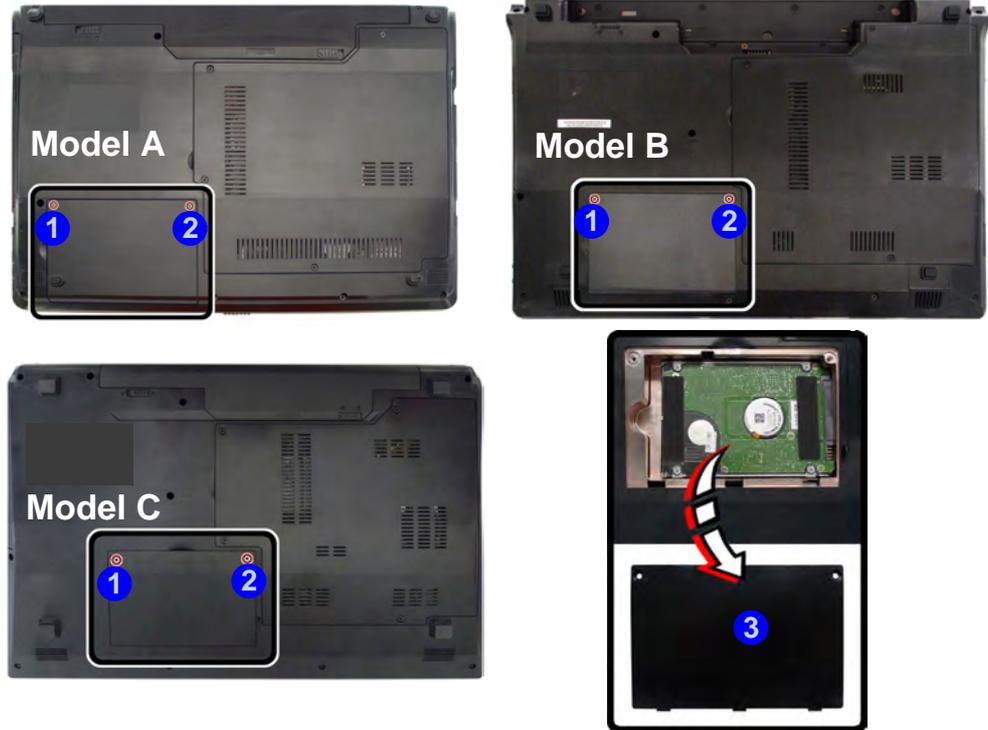
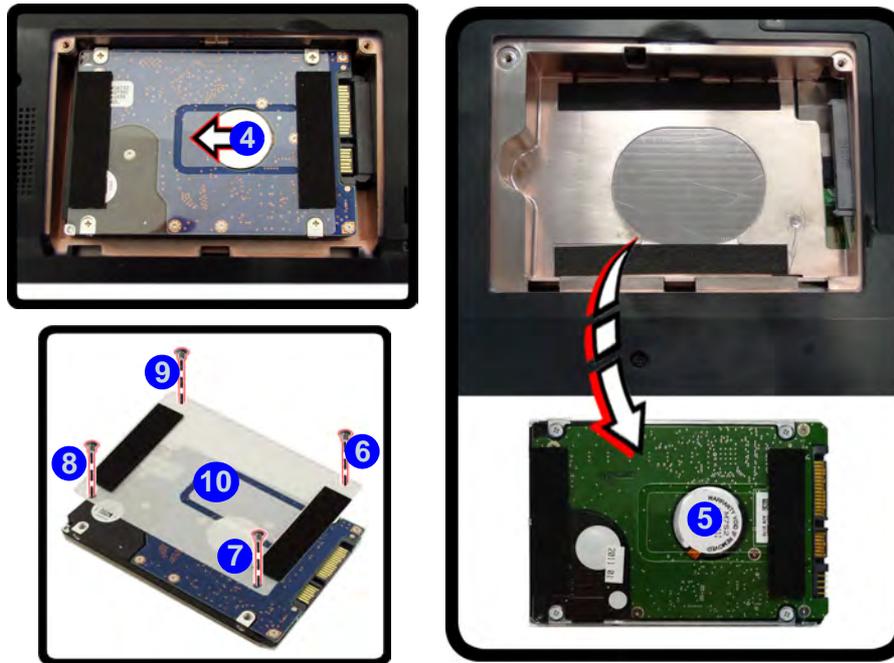


Figure 6 - 2
Hard Disk Bay
Cover Removal

- Slide the hard disk in the direction of arrow 4.
- Lift the hard disk out of the bay 5.
- Remove the screw(s) 6 - 9 and the adhesive cover 10.
- Reverse the process to install a new hard disk drive (do not forget to replace all the screws and covers).



Hard Disk Screws & Cover

The hard disks and covers pictured here may appear slightly different from your model design (these designs are subject to change and upgrade without notice). Pay careful attention to the screws (if included) and cover orientation.

6

Figure 6 - 3
Hard Disk Removal

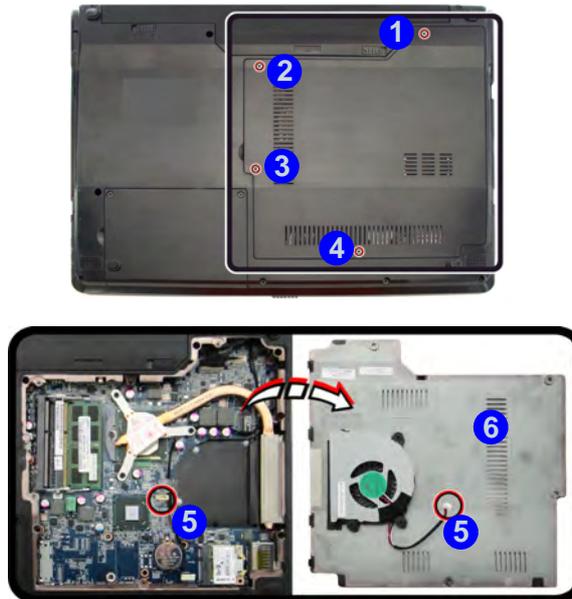
Upgrading the Optical (CD/DVD) Device

The procedure for removing the optical device will depend upon your particular computer model:

- See *“Removing the Optical Device for Model A Computers” on page 6 - 9.*
- See *“Removing the Optical Device for Model B & C Computers” on page 6 - 11.*

Removing the Optical Device for Model A Computers

1. Turn **off** the computer, and turn it over and remove the battery.
2. Locate the component bay cover and remove screws **1** - **4**.
3. Carefully (**a fan and cable are attached to the under side of the cover**) lift up the bay cover.
4. Carefully disconnect the fan cable **5**, and remove the cover **6**.



Fan Cable & Cover

Make sure you reconnect the fan cable **5** before screwing down the bay cover. Note the information on replacing the RAM & CPU bay cover in *“Cover Pins”* on page 6 - 15.

6

Figure 6 - 4
Removing the
Component Bay
Cover
(Model A
Computers)

Upgrading The Computer

5. Remove the screw at point **7**, and use a screwdriver to carefully push out the optical device at point **8**.
6. Reverse the process to install the new device.

Figure 6 - 5
**Removing the
Optical Device
(Model A
Computers)**



Removing the Optical Device for Model B & C Computers

1. Turn **off** the computer, and turn it over and remove the battery.
2. Remove the hard disk (see page 6 - 5)
3. Remove the screw at point ①, and use a screwdriver to carefully push out the optical device at point ②.
4. Reverse the process to install the new device.
5. Replace the hard disk bay cover.

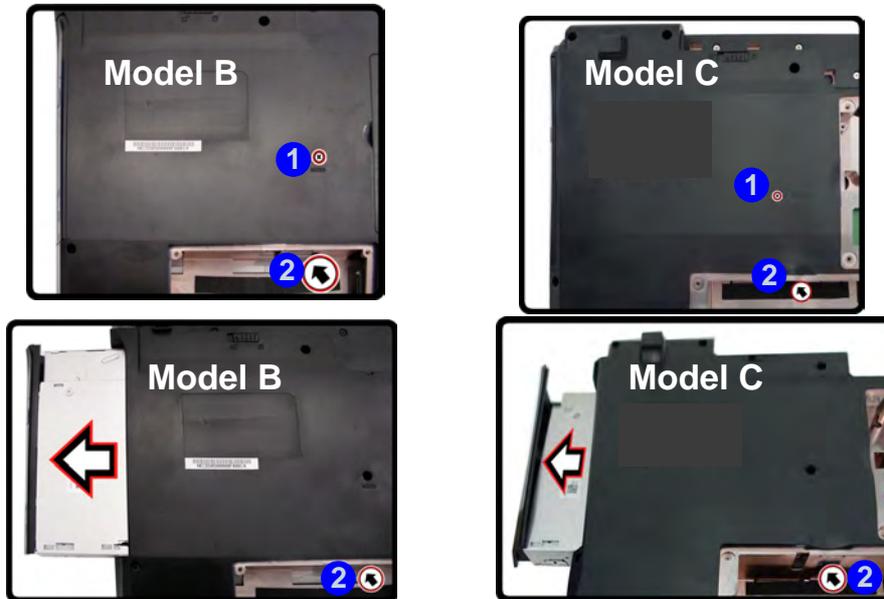


Figure 6 - 6
Removing the
Optical Device
(Model B & C
Computers)

Upgrading the System Memory (RAM)

The computer has **two** memory sockets for 204 pin Small Outline Dual In-line (SO-DIMM) **DDRIII (DDR3)** type memory modules (see *“Memory” on page D - 2* for details of supported module types).

1. Turn **off** the computer, and turn it over and remove the battery.
2. Locate the component bay cover and remove screws **1** - **4**.

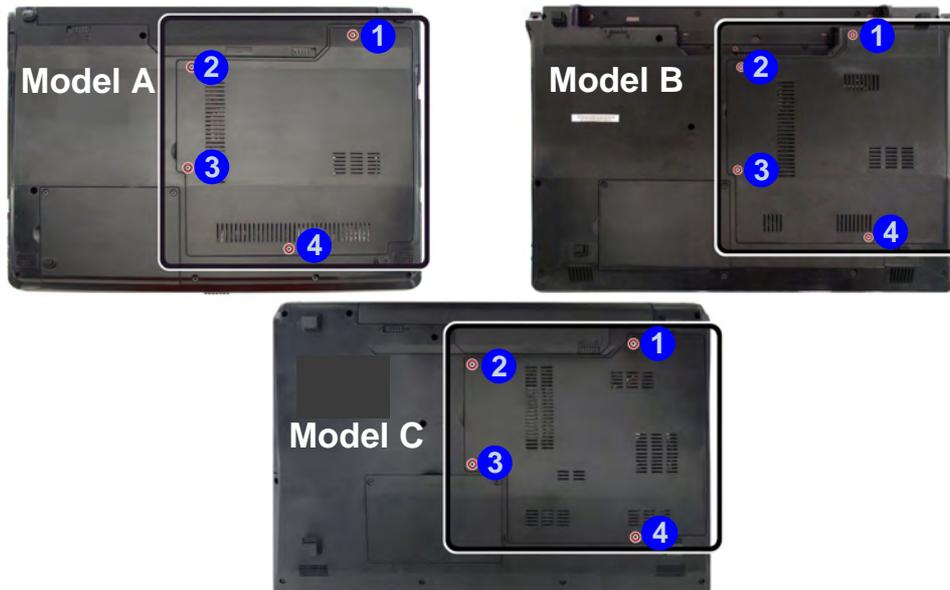
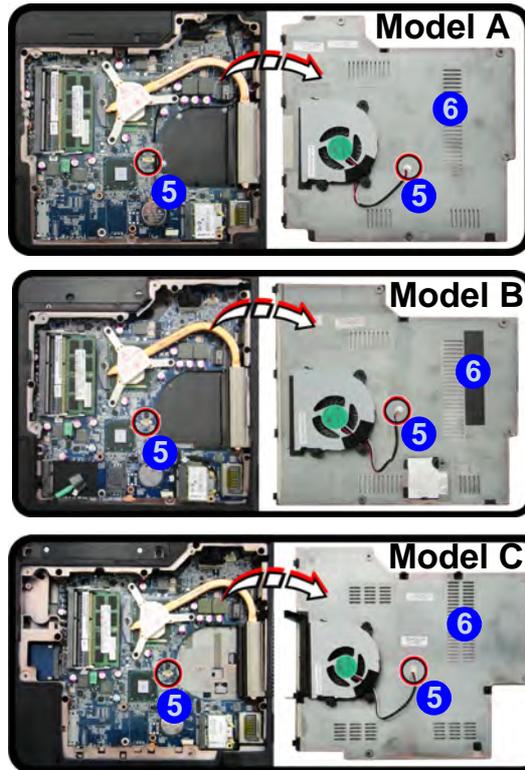


Figure 6 - 7
**Component Bay
Cover Screws**

3. Raise the bottom cover up and carefully (a fan and cable 5 are attached to the under side of the cover) lift up the bay cover 6.



Fan Cable

Make sure you reconnect the fan cable 5 before screwing down the bay cover.

Figure 6 - 8
Component Bay
Cover Removal

Upgrading The Computer

- Gently pull the two release latches on the sides of the memory socket in the direction indicated by the arrows (7 & 8) in *Figure 6 - 9*.

Figure 6 - 9
**RAM Module
Release Latches**



- The RAM module will 9 pop-up, and you can remove it.



Contact Warning

Be careful not to touch the metal pins on the module's connecting edge. Even the cleanest hands have oils which can attract particles, and degrade the module's performance.

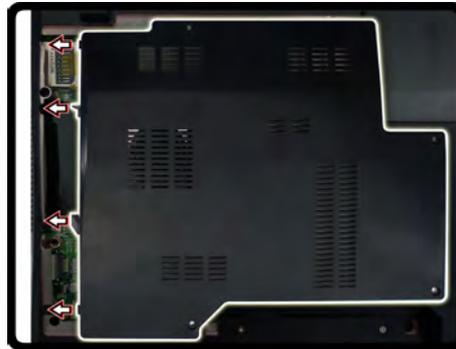
Figure 6 - 10
**RAM Module
Removal**

Single Memory Module Installation

If your computer has a single memory module, then insert the module into the **Channel 0 (JDIMM1)** socket. In this case this is the **lower memory socket** (the socket closest to the mainboard).



- Pull the latches to release the second module if necessary.
- Insert a new module holding it at about a 30° angle and fit the connectors firmly into the memory slot.
- The module's pin alignment will allow it to only fit one way. Make sure the module is seated as far into the slot as it will go. **DO NOT FORCE** the module; it should fit without much pressure.
- Press the module in and down towards the mainboard until the slot levers click into place to secure the module.
- Replace the bay cover by inserting it at an angle and aligning the cover pins (see sidebar).
- Make sure you reconnect the fan cable before replacing all the screws and screwing down the bay cover.**



- Restart the computer to allow the BIOS to register the new memory configuration as it starts up.



Cover Pins

Note that the computer has **four** cover pins. These pins need to be aligned with slots in the case to insure a proper cover fit, before screwing down the bay cover.

Figure 6 - 11
**Cover Pin
Alignment
(One Model
Pictured)**

Chapter 7: Modules & Options

Overview

This chapter contains information on the following modules, which may come with your computer, depending on the configuration purchased. If you are unsure please contact your service representative.

- PC Camera Module
- Wireless LAN Module
- Bluetooth & WLAN Combo Module
- 3G Module
- Trusted Platform Module
- Intel Rapid Storage Technology

For information on the *Windows 8* operating system see [Appendix E](#).



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are **OFF** if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.



Driver Installation & Module Power

Make sure any modules (e.g. WLAN, PC Camera & Bluetooth modules) are **ON** before installing the appropriate driver.



Important Notice

If your purchase option includes both Wireless LAN and 3G modules, then the appropriate antennas will be installed. Note that In order to comply with FCC RF exposure compliance requirements, the antenna must not be co-located or operate in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Important Notice - 3G & Bluetooth/Wireless LAN Modules

In order to comply with FCC regulations you should NOT operate the 3G module and the Bluetooth/Wireless LAN modules at the same time as this may disrupt radio frequency, and cause interference. When the 3G module is powered on, make sure that the Bluetooth/Wireless LAN modules are powered off.

PC Camera Module

Before installing the **PC Camera** driver, make sure that the optional PC Camera is on. Use the **Fn + F10** key combination (see *“Function/Hot Key Indicators” on page 1 - 15*) or **Control Center** button to toggle power to the PC Camera module. Make sure you install the drivers in the order indicated in *Table 4 - 1, on page 4 - 3*. See *“PC Camera (Windows 8)” on page E - 25* for *Windows 8* configuration information.

Note that only 14.0" / 35.56cm Model A computers require a camera driver for Windows 8. When the 14"/35.56cm screen Model A PC Camera is in use the power LED indicator will blink orange (see Table 1 - 2, on page 1 - 11).

When the **Model B/C** PC Camera is in use the LED indicator to the left of the camera will be illuminated in **red** (see **2** *Figure 1 - 4 on page 1 - 9/Figure 1 - 5 on page 1 - 10*).

There are a number of different camera modules available with this computer model series. You will have the appropriate application installed for your camera. **Make sure you access the application via the desktop shortcut.**



PC Camera Application and Power-Saving States

If the computer enters **Sleep** or **Hibernate** mode while running the camera application, the program will stop running, and will need to be restarted when the system resumes from the power-saving state.



Latest PC Camera Driver Information

Check the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual disc*, and any accompanying insert pages, for the latest updated information on the PC Camera driver, which may override the information provided here.

PC Camera Driver Uninstallation

If you need to uninstall the driver, then uninstall the **WebCam Installer** item from the *Programs and Features* control panel in *Windows*.



PC Camera Screen Refresh

The PC Camera module supports a frame rate of 12 fps. If you find that the screen refresh rate is subject to lag or stuttering, then **reduce the window size**, or adjust the **Output Size** and/or **Color Space Compression**.

To reduce **Output Size** and/or **Color Space Compression** run the camera application, click **Options** and select **Video Capture Pin**. Adjust the settings from the appropriate pull-down menu.

PC Camera Driver Installation

1. Make sure the module is powered on, and then insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc into the DVD drive.
2. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
3. Click **1.Install Webcam Driver > Yes**.
4. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.
OR
4. Click **Next > Finish**.
5. Run the camera application program from the desktop shortcut (if the hardware is turned off use the **Fn + F10** key combination to turn it on again). See "*PC Camera (Windows 8)*" on page *E - 25* for information on the camera application used in *Windows 8*.

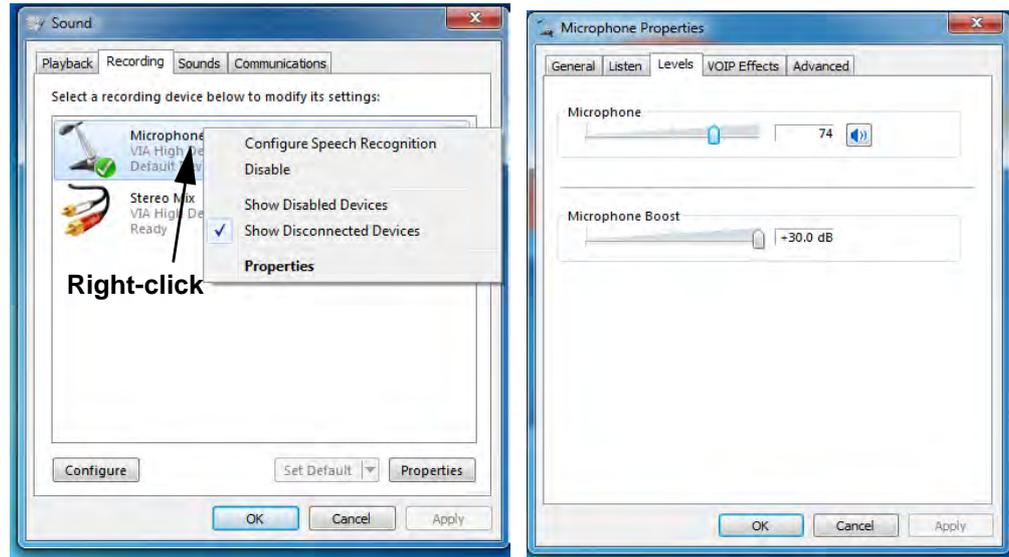
PC Camera Audio Setup

If you wish to capture video & **audio** with your camera, it is necessary to setup the audio recording options in *Windows*.

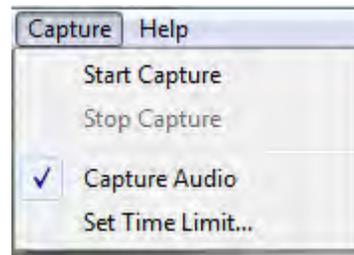
1. Click **Start**, and click **Control Panel** (or point to **Settings** and click **Control Panel**).
2. Click **Sound**  (**Hardware and Sound**).
3. Click **Recording** (tab).
4. Right-click **Microphone** (VIA High Definition Audio) and make sure the item is not disabled.
5. Double-click **Microphone** (or select **Properties** from the right-click menu).
6. Click **Levels** (tab), and adjust the **Microphone** and **Microphone Boost** sliders to the level required.
7. Click **OK** and close the control panels.
8. Run the camera application program from the desktop shortcut.
9. Go to the **Devices** menu heading and select **Microphone (VIA....)** (it should have a tick alongside it).
10. Go to the **Capture** menu heading and select **Capture Audio** (it should have a tick alongside it).

Modules & Options

Figure 7 - 1
Audio Setup for PC
Camera



7



Camera Application

The camera application is a video viewer for general purpose video viewing and testing, and for capturing video files to .avi format.

1. Run the camera application from the desktop shortcut (it is recommended that you **set the capture file** before the capture process - **see Set Capture File below**).
2. Go to the **Capture** menu heading (if you wish to capture audio check **“PC Camera Audio Setup” on page 7 - 5**) and select **Start Capture**.
3. Click **OK** (the file location will be displayed in the pop-up box) to start capturing the video, and press **Esc** to stop the capture (you can view the file using the **Windows Media Player**).

Set Capture File

Prior to capturing video files you may select the **Set Capture File...** option in the **File** menu, and set the file name and location before capture (this will help avoid accidentally overwriting files). Set the name and location then click **Open**, then set the **“Capture file size:”** and click **OK**. You can then start the capture process as above.

Note the important information in **“Reducing Video File Size” on page 7 - 8** in order to save file space, and help prevent system problems.

Reducing Video File Size

Note that capturing high resolution video files requires a substantial amount of disk space for each file. After recording video, check the video file size (right-click the file and select **Properties**) and the remaining free space on your hard disk (go to **My Computer**, right-click the hard disk, and select **Properties**). If necessary you can remove the recorded video file to a removable medium e.g. CD, DVD or USB Flash drive.

Note that the *Windows* system requires a minimum of **15GB** of free space on the **C: drive** system partition. In order to prevent system problems it is recommended that you save the captured video file to a location other than the **C: drive** (see “*Set Capture File*” on page 7 - 7), limit the file size of the captured video or reduce video resolution (see below).

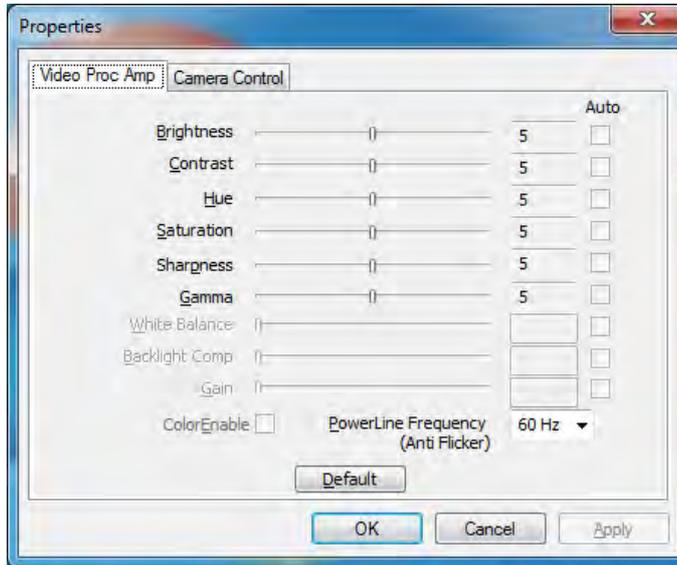
To Reduce Video Resolution Output Size:

1. Run the camera application program from the desktop shortcut.
2. Go to **Options** and scroll down to select **Video Capture Pin...**
3. Click the **Output Size** drop box and select a lower resolution size in order to reduce the captured file size.
4. Click **OK**.

Eliminating Screen Flicker

If you find that the video screen in the camera program is flickering, you can try to adjust the setting in the **Video Capture Filter** options.

1. Run the camera application from the desktop shortcut.
2. Go to **Options** and scroll down to select **Video Capture Filter....**
3. Click either **50Hz** or **60Hz** under **PowerLine Frequency**.





Camera Options

The video capture filter figure pictured here may appear slightly different for some camera modules. To adjust the anti flicker properties look under the headings **Anti Flicker/Frequency/PowerLine Frequency**.



Latest PC Camera Driver Information

Check the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual disc*, and any accompanying insert pages, for the latest updated information on the PC Camera driver, which may override the information provided here, including the figures pictured.

Figure 7 - 2
Video Capture Filter



Snapshot Folder

The Snapshot folder's default location is on the desktop. Do not move this folder or an error may appear when you try to take a still picture.

If you accidentally delete or move the folder, you can create a new Snapshot folder on the desktop in order to capture the files.

Taking Still Pictures

The camera application allows you to take still pictures.

1. Run the camera application from the desktop shortcut.
2. Go to **Options** and select **Take Picture**.
3. The picture (in JPEG format) will be placed in the **Snapshot** folder on the desktop.



on the desktop.

Wireless LAN Module

If you have included an **Intel® or 3rd Party** Wireless LAN (or WLAN & Bluetooth combo) module in your purchase option, make sure that the WLAN module is on before installing the driver. See *“Wireless LAN Settings (Windows 8)” on page E - 30* for *Windows 8* configuration information.

Use the **Fn + F11 key combination** (see *“Function/Hot Key Indicators” on page 1 - 15*) or **Control Center button** to toggle power to the Wireless LAN module. Make sure you install the drivers in the order indicated in *Table 4 - 1, on page 4 - 3*.

Note that you need to install both the WLAN & Bluetooth drivers for the Combo WLAN and Bluetooth modules.



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the **Fn + F11 key combination** or hot key button to toggle power to the WLAN module, and check the indicator to see if the module is powered on or not (see *Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15* / *Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11*).

3rd Party 802.11b/g/n Driver Installation (for WLAN Module)

See over for information on installing the drivers for the 3rd party WLAN & Bluetooth combo module.

If you see the message “**Found New Hardware**” click **Cancel** to close the window.

1. **Make sure the module is powered on**, and then insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User’s Manual* disc into an attached DVD drive.
2. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
3. Click **2.Install WLAN Driver > Yes**.
4. Choose the language you prefer and click **Next**.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.

Note: The operating system is the default setting for Wireless LAN control in *Windows* (see page [7 - 17](#)). See “*Wireless LAN Settings (Windows 8)*” on page [E - 30](#) for *Windows 8* configuration information.

3rd Party 802.11b/g/n Driver Installation (for Combo Modules)

If you see the message “**Found New Hardware**” click **Cancel** to close the window.

1. **Make sure the module is powered on**, and then insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User’s Manual* disc into an attached DVD drive.
2. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
3. Click **2.Install WLAN Driver > Yes**.
4. Click **Next** (if a prompt appears to ask you to turn the Bluetooth power on, press the **Fn + F12** key combination to do so, otherwise the driver will not be installed).
5. Click **Finish** to restart the computer (see sidebar for important information).

Note: The operating system is the default setting for Wireless LAN control in *Windows* (see page 7 - 17). See “*Wireless LAN Settings (Windows 8)*” on page E - 30 for *Windows 8* configuration information.

Intel® WLAN Driver Installation

For a standard Intel® WLAN driver installation and configuration choose the **Typical Installation** below and use the *Windows OS* for Wireless LAN control (see **overleaf**). If you want to use **Intel® PROSet/Wireless WiFi Connection Utility** as your WLAN interface, and/or add **Intel® MyWifi Technology** (Personal Area Network) see **overleaf**.

Typical Installation:

1. If you see the message “**Found New Hardware**” click **Cancel** to close the window.
2. **Make sure the module is powered on**, and then insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User’s Manual* disc into the CD/DVD drive.
3. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
4. Click **2.Install WLAN Driver > Yes**.
5. Click **Next > Next**.
6. Click the button to accept the license and click **Next**.
7. Click **Typical > Install**.
8. Click **Finish**.

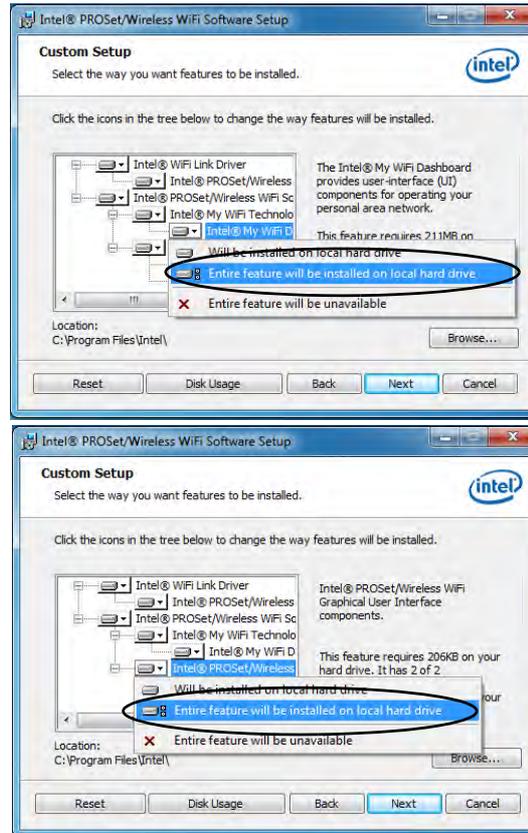
Note: The operating system is the default setting for Wireless LAN control in *Windows* (see “*Connecting to a Wireless Network in Windows 7*” on page 7 - 17). See “*Wireless LAN Settings (Windows 8)*” on page E - 30 for *Windows 8* configuration information.

Custom Installation (for Intel® ProSet and/or Intel® MyWiFi Technology):

Note that if you wish to install Intel® MyWiFi you will need to **install Microsoft.net Framework 4.0 (or later version) before installing the driver** as per the procedure below. To get the **Microsoft.net Framework** file go to the *Microsoft* website, search for the file, Download it and then install it.

1. If you see the message “**Found New Hardware**” click Cancel to close the window.
2. **Make sure the module is powered on**, and then insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User’s Manual* disc into the CD/DVD drive.
3. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
4. Click **2.Install WLAN Driver > Yes**.
5. Click **Next > Next**.
6. Click the button to accept the license and click **Next > Custom**.
7. To install **Intel® MyWiFi Technology** click the icon  alongside **Intel® MyWiFi Dashboard** and select “**Entire feature will be installed on local hard drive**” (see *Figure 7 - 3 on page 7 - 16*).
8. To install **Intel® PROSet/Wireless WiFi Connection Utility** click the icon  alongside it and select “**Entire feature will be installed on local hard drive**” (see *Figure 7 - 3 on page 7 - 16*).
9. Click **Next > Install > Finish**.
10. See “*(For Intel® WLAN Modules Only)*” on page 7 - 20 or “*Intel® My WiFi Configuration*” on page 7 - 22 for further information.

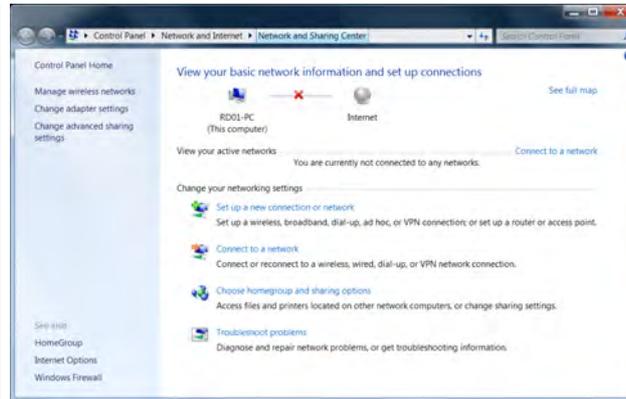
Figure 7 - 3
**Install Intel® MyWiFi
Technology & Intel®
PROSet/Wireless
WiFi Connection
Utility**



Connecting to a Wireless Network in Windows 7

Make sure the Wireless LAN module is turned on.

1. **Click** the taskbar wireless icon , and then double-click an access point to connect to or click to **Open Network and Sharing Center** if you do not see a network you want to connect to in the taskbar menu (a list of options will appear allowing setting changes, and creating a new network).





Network and Sharing Center

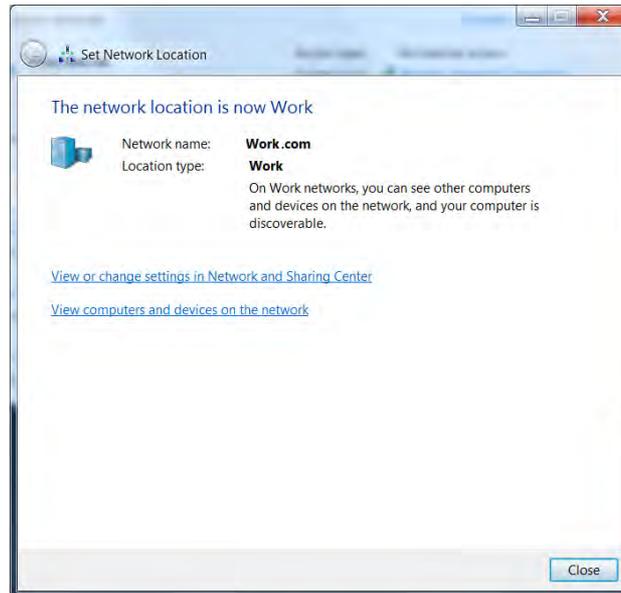
You can also use the **Network and Sharing Center** control panel in Windows (**Network and Internet**) to connect to any available wireless networks.

Figure 7 - 4
Click Taskbar Icon Menu & Network and Sharing Center

Modules & Options

2. You may need to enter a security key for any access point to which you are trying to connect.
3. Click to select a network location (e.g. **Home, Work or Public**).
4. Click “**View or change settings in Network and Sharing Center**” to access further options for the connection.

Figure 7 - 5
Network Location Set



5. Click the taskbar icon  to see any currently connected networks.
6. To disconnect from the wireless network you can click the taskbar wireless icon , click the active connection and then click **Disconnect** (button).



Security Enabled Networks

You should try to make sure that any network you are connecting to is a secure network.

Connecting to unsecure networks may allow unauthorized access to your computer, documents, websites and files etc.

Figure 7 - 6
**Click Taskbar Icon
Menu - Disconnect**

Connecting to a Wireless Network Using Intel® PROSet Wireless (For Intel® WLAN Modules Only)

1. Make sure the Wireless LAN module is on.
2. Access the **Intel® WiFi Connection Utility** from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Intel PROSet Wireless > WiFi Connection Utility**).
3. Click to select a network from the found list WiFi network access points, or click **Refresh** to update the list.

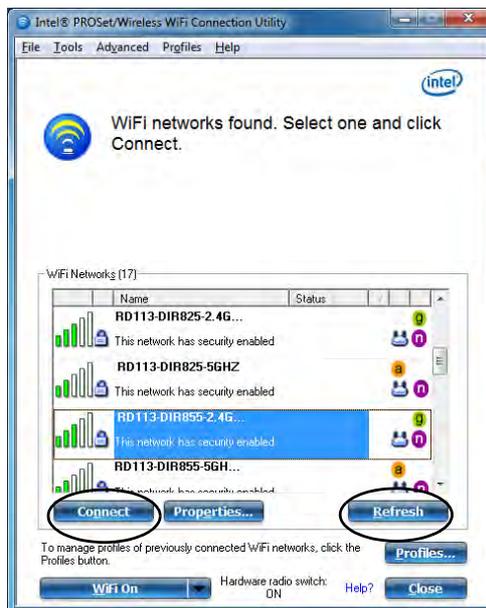


Figure 7 - 7
**Intel® PROSet/
Wireless WiFi
Connection Utility
(Connect)**

- Click **Connect** to connect to the select WiFi network access point.
- If the access point is encrypted then you will need to enter the password and click **OK**.

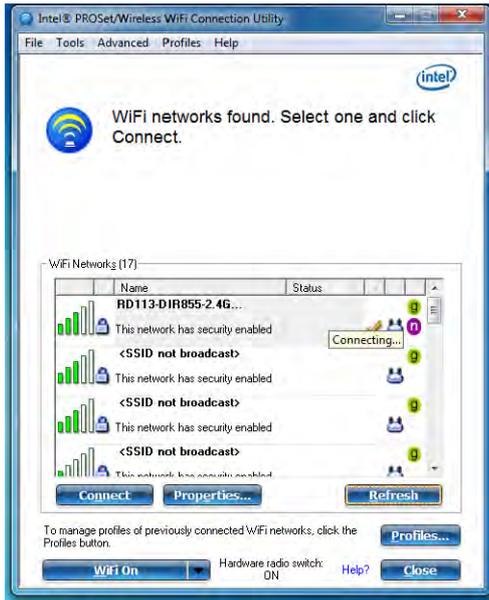


Figure 7 - 8
**Intel® PROSet/
 Wireless WiFi
 Connection Utility
 (Connecting &
 Connected)**

- You can turn **WiFi On/WiFi Off** from the button at the bottom of the Utility.
- To disconnect, select the connected access point and click **Disconnect**.
- Select **Help** from the menu at the top of the utility (or at the bottom right) to bring up the **Help** menu.



Intel® My WiFi Help

To get help on **Intel® My WiFi** configuration and settings, access the **Intel® My WiFi Dashboard** from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Intel PROSet Wireless > Intel(R) My WiFi Dashboard**), or by clicking the taskbar icon . click the **Help** icon  in the dashboard and select a help topic from the **Contents** menu.

Intel® My WiFi Configuration

(For Intel® WLAN Modules Only)

Intel® My WiFi Technology (Intel® MWT) uses your WLAN to transform your system into a Wi-Fi Personal Area Network, and enables you wirelessly share your videos, photos, music with other WiFi enabled devices, while still connecting to the Internet through your WiFi wireless connection.

Intel® MWT also features a chat function, and offers you the option of being able to create a WiFi hotspot from your computer. Intel® MWT offers greater range and speed than other personal area networks, and does not require an access point.

Intel® My WiFi Configuration

You can configure the My WiFi settings as follows.

1. Make sure the Wireless LAN module is on.
2. Access the **Intel® WiFi Connection Utility** from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Intel PROSet Wireless > Intel(R) My WiFi Dashboard**), or click the icon  in the notification area of the taskbar (or right-click and select Open Dashboard).
3. An initial welcome message will appear on the first run of the program (click **“Don’t show this message again”** to turn this off in future).

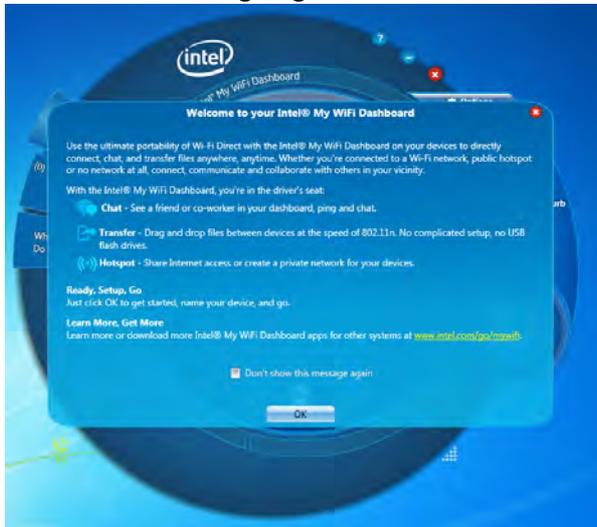
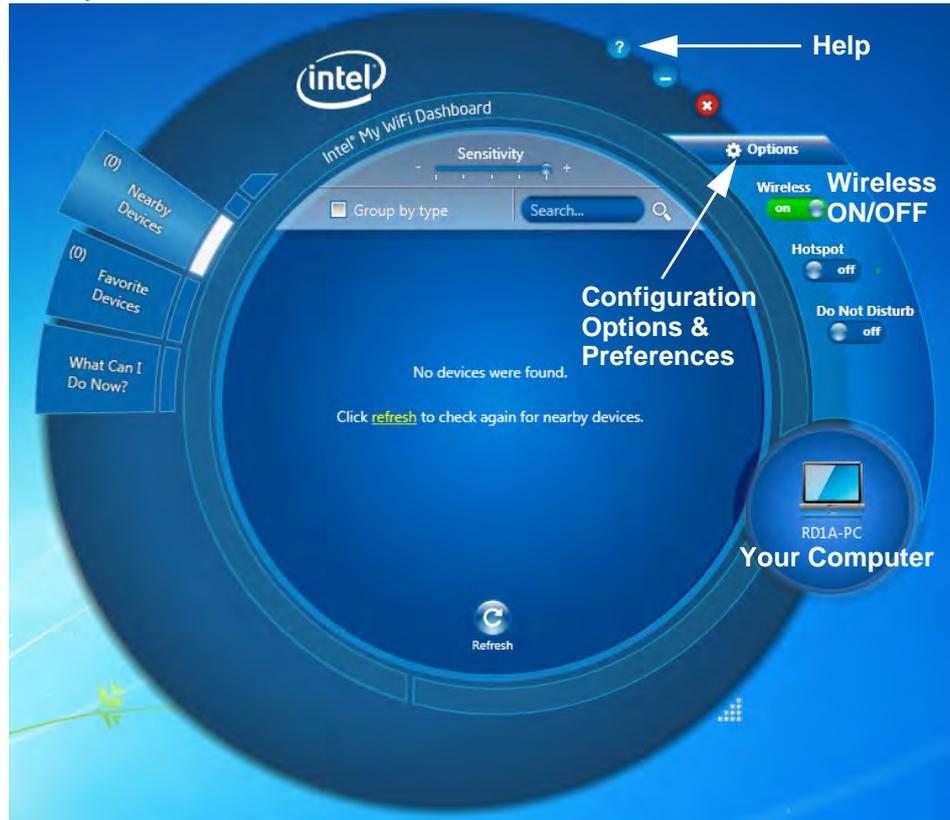


Figure 7 - 9
Intel® My WiFi
Utility - Welcome

Intel® My WiFi Interface



7

Figure 7 - 10
Intel® My WiFi
Utility - Interface

Intel® My WiFi Help

Click the **Help** icon  in the dashboard to bring up the Help menu and select and item from the **Contents** menu to obtain the help information.

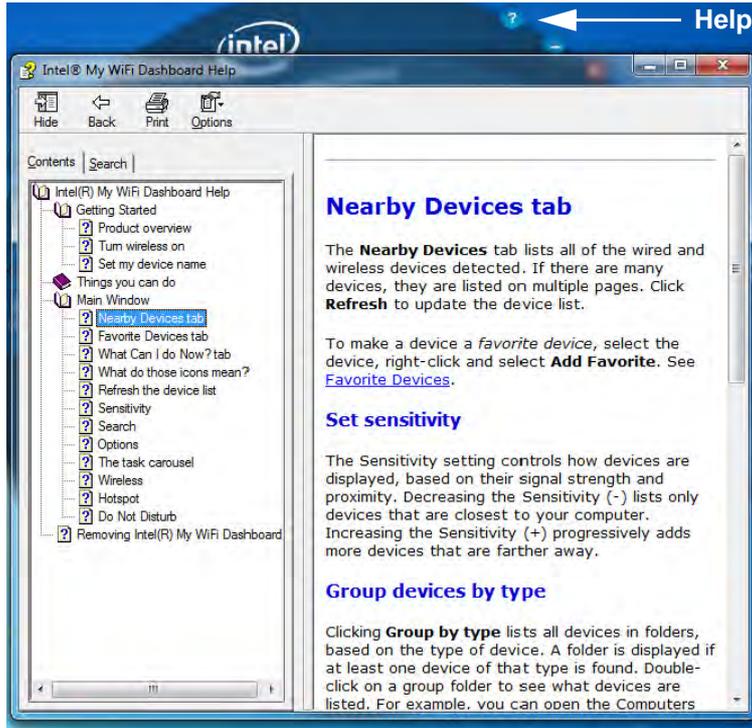
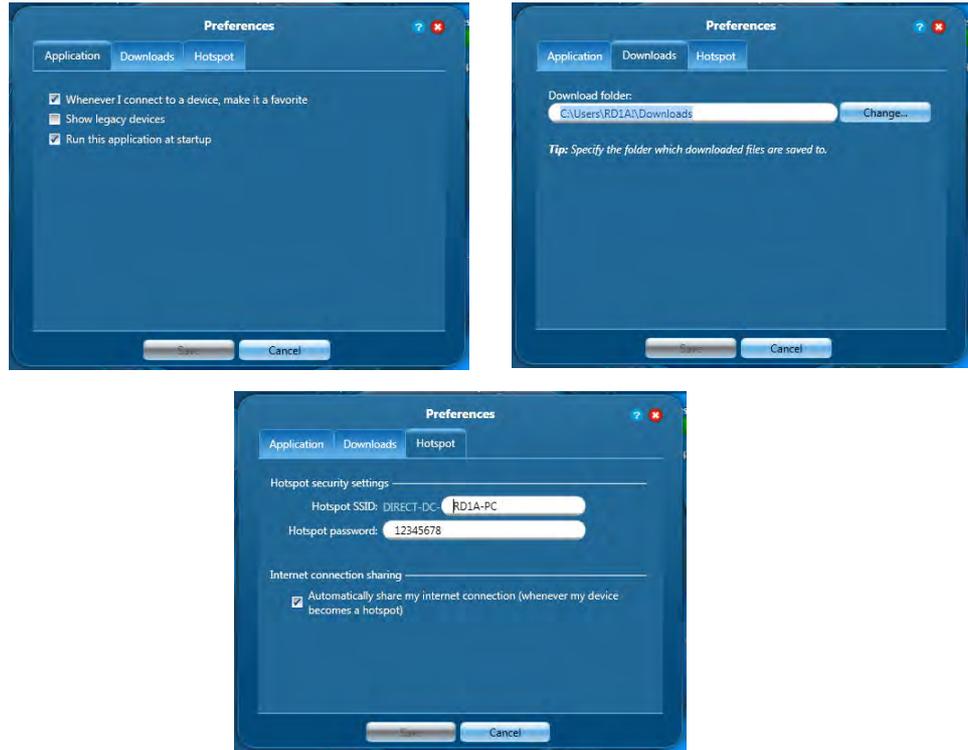


Figure 7 - 11
Intel® My WiFi
Utility - Help

Preferences

Click the **Options** icon  and select **Preferences** to configure the options.



7

Figure 7 - 12
Intel® My WiFi
Utility - Preferences

Hotspot

You can turn the computer into a hotspot to allow other devices to connect to it (and any locally connected devices), and also (if available) the internet.

1. Click the **Hotspot** icon  to turn the **Hotspot** on.
2. The **Hotspot** settings tab shows the SSID and password (you will need to enter this information when accessing the hotspot from the client computer/device).
3. Click **OK** to close the **Hotspot** settings.

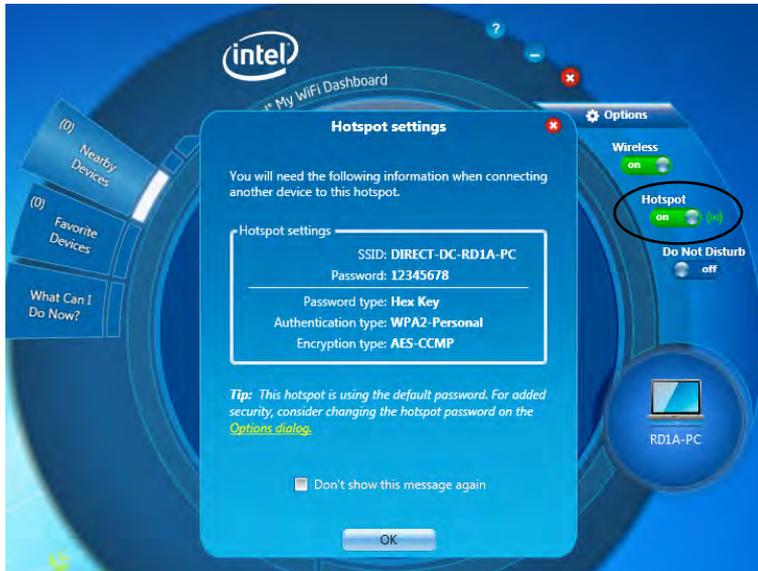


Figure 7 - 13
Intel® My WiFi
Utility - Hotspot

Finding Devices

You can find any **Nearby Devices** by clicking the **Refresh** button  in the main window. Click again at any time to update the list. If a lot of devices are found they will be listed on multiple pages and you can use the left  or right  buttons to turn the pages.

Sensitivity

The **Sensitivity** controls displays available devices based on their signal strength and proximity e.g decreasing (-) the sensitivity lists only devices closest to the computer's location.

Group Devices by Type

If you click **Group by type** it will list all devices according to their type in a folder group. Double-click on any group folder to see the devices of that type listed. There are 12 possible device types available.

Search

If you want to search for a particular device by name then enter the device name in the Search field to return results for devices matching the name of the device.

Favorite Devices

The **Favorite Devices** tab is where you keep devices to which you connect most often, and this is particularly useful in environments where many devices are listed nearby. A favorite device will display the icon .

To make any device a favorite just click to select it and select **Add Favorite**.



Figure 7 - 14
Intel® My WiFi
Utility - Interface

Connect to a Device

1. Click the device you want to connect to, and click the connect icon .
2. An invitation will be sent to the target device.
3. The user must then accept the invitation.
4. After the invitation is accepted the connection will be made.
5. Use the **Windows Network and Sharing Center** to set permissions for viewing and sharing the resources on your computer with another connected computer.

Further Information

For information on how to **block/unblock** devices, setting **Do Not Disturb**, **sharing an internet connection** and **chat** options see *“Intel® My WiFi Help” on page 7 - 25* .

Windows Mobility Center

The **Windows Mobility Center** control panel provides an easy point of access for information on battery status, power plans used and wireless device status etc.

To access the Windows Mobility Center:

1. Click **Start**, and click **Control Panel** (or point to **Settings** and click **Control Panel**).
2. Double-click **Windows Mobility Center (Mobile PC)**.
3. Click the button to **Turn wireless off/on**, or click the icon  to access the network menu.



Figure 7 - 15
Windows Mobility Center



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the **Fn + F12** key combination to toggle power to the Bluetooth module, and check the LED indicator to see if the module is powered on or not (see [Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15](#) / [Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11](#)).

Bluetooth & WLAN Combo Module

If your purchase option includes the **Combination Wireless LAN & Bluetooth module** (either **Intel®** or **3rd Party**) then install the driver as instructed (see *“Bluetooth Settings (Windows 8)” on page E - 37* for instructions on Bluetooth settings for *Windows 8*).

Use the Fn + F12 key combination or Control Center button to toggle power to the Bluetooth module.



Bluetooth Data Transfer

Note that the transfer of data between the computer and a Bluetooth enabled device is supported in **one direction only (simultaneous data transfer is not supported)**. Therefore if you are copying a file from your computer to a Bluetooth enabled device, you will not be able to copy a file from the Bluetooth enabled device to your computer until the file transfer process from the computer has been completed.

- **3rd party WLAN & Bluetooth (V4.0) combo modules** - see *“3rd Party Bluetooth (V4.0) Combo Driver Installation” on page 7 - 33* and *“Standard Bluetooth Configuration in Windows 7” on page 7 - 35*.
- **Intel Bluetooth combo modules** - see *“Intel Bluetooth Combo Driver Installation” on page 7 - 34* and *“Standard Bluetooth Configuration in Windows 7” on page 7 - 35*.

3rd Party Bluetooth (V4.0) Combo Driver Installation

Note this driver is required for the 3rd Party combo Bluetooth and WLAN module (Bluetooth V4.0) only.

1. **Before installing the driver make sure the Bluetooth module is powered on** (use **Fn + F12** key combination), then insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc into the CD/DVD drive. If a *Found New Hardware* window appears, click **Cancel** in all windows that appear, and then proceed to install the driver as below.
2. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
3. Click **3.Install Combo BT Driver > Yes**.
4. Click **Next** (if a prompt appears to ask you to turn the Bluetooth power on, press the **Fn + F12** key combination to do so, otherwise the driver will not be installed).
5. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.
6. See *“Standard Bluetooth Configuration in Windows 7” on page 7 - 35* for configuration instructions. See *“Bluetooth Settings (Windows 8)” on page E - 37* for instructions on Bluetooth settings for *Windows 8*.



High Speed Bluetooth Data Transfer

The **Combination Wireless LAN & Bluetooth module** supports high speed data transfer. However to achieve such transfer speeds, **both devices must support high speed data transfer.**

To obtain high speed data transfer make sure that both the **WLAN and Bluetooth modules are powered on.**

Check your Bluetooth compatible device's documentation to confirm it supports high speed data transfer.

Intel Bluetooth Combo Driver Installation

Note this driver is required only for the Intel combo Bluetooth and WLAN module only.

1. **Before installing the driver make sure the Bluetooth module is powered on** (use **Fn + F12** key combination), then insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc into the DVD drive. If a *Found New Hardware* window appears, click **Cancel** in all windows that appear, and then proceed to install the driver as below.
2. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
3. Click **3.Install Combo BT Driver > Yes.**
4. Click **Next > Next.**
5. Click the button to accept the license and click **Next.**
6. Click **Next > Finish.**
7. See over for configuration instructions. See *“Bluetooth Settings (Windows 8)” on page E - 37* for instructions on Bluetooth settings for *Windows 8.*

Note that, at the time of going to press, **Intel® Centrino® Wireless-N 135 & Intel® Centrino® Wireless-N 2230 WLAN & Bluetooth** combo modules use the standard Bluetooth configuration in *Windows 7* (see over for configuration instructions).

Standard Bluetooth Configuration in Windows 7

Setup your Bluetooth Device so the Computer Can Find it

1. Turn your Bluetooth device (e.g. PDA, mobile phone etc.) on.
2. Make the device discoverable (to do this check your device documentation).

To Turn the Bluetooth Module On

1. Press the **Fn + F12** key combination to power on the Bluetooth module.
2. A Bluetooth icon  will appear in the taskbar notification area.
3. You can then do any of the following to access the **Bluetooth Devices** control panel.
 - **Double-click** the taskbar icon  to access the **Bluetooth Devices** control panel.
 - **Click/Right-click** the taskbar icon  and choose an option from the menu.





Add a Device

Click **Start**, and click **Control Panel** and then click **Devices and Printers (Hardware and Sound)**. Click **Add a device** to search for any available Bluetooth devices.

Bluetooth Module & Resuming From Sleep Mode

The Bluetooth module's default state will be off after resuming from the **Sleep** power-saving state. Use the key combination (**Fn + F12**) to power on the Bluetooth module after the computer resumes from Sleep.

Figure 7 - 16
Bluetooth Devices & Click Icon Menu



Pairing Options

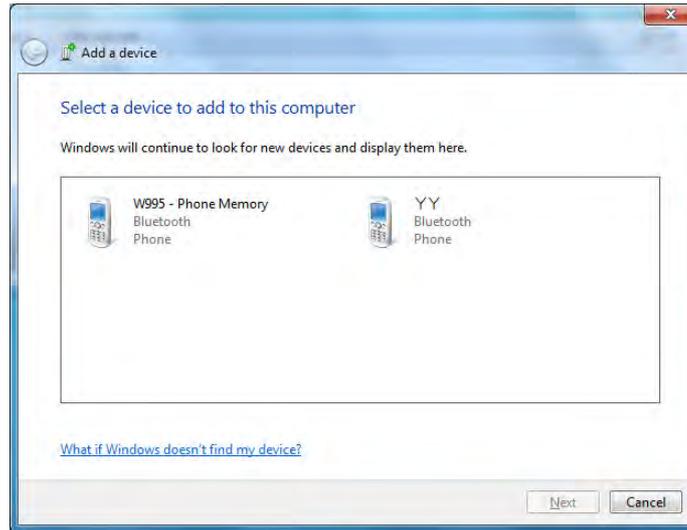
If a device has been previously connected then the pairing option menu will appear when you attempt subsequent connections. You can choose to have the computer create a pairing code for you, use the device's existing pairing code or you can pair certain devices without using a code.

7

Figure 7 - 17
Add a Device

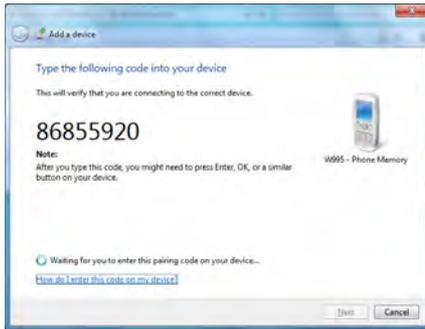
To Add a Bluetooth Device

1. Access the **Bluetooth Devices** control panel and click **Add a device**.
2. Double-click the device you want to pair with the computer.



3. On first connection the computer will provide you with a pairing code to be entered onto the device.

4. Enter the code into your Bluetooth enabled device and follow any on-screen instructions to complete the pairing.





Pairing Codes

The example outlined here shows a connection to a mobile device. Other devices e.g. computers, may have a slightly different connection procedure, and may require you to confirm a pairing code is correct on both devices. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the pairing.

Figure 7 - 18
Pairing Code Example

5. **Windows** will check to see if any drivers are required to complete the pairing.
6. Follow any on-screen instructions on the computer if device drivers are required to be installed.
7. Click **Close**.

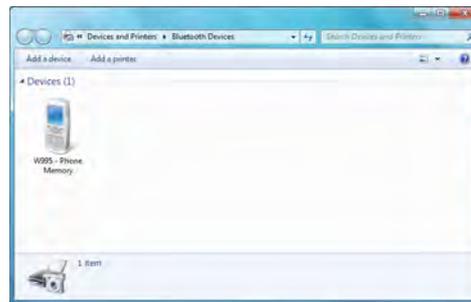


Figure 7 - 19
Pairing Complete & Bluetooth Device Enabled



Bluetooth Help

To get help on Bluetooth configuration and settings, select **Help and Support** from the **Start** menu. Type Bluetooth in the **Search Help** box, and select an item from the returned search results to get more information.

To Change Settings for the Bluetooth Device

1. Click the taskbar icon and select **Show Bluetooth Devices**.
2. Right-click on the device you want to change and click **Properties** to:
 - Change the **name** of the device (click **Bluetooth**, type a new name and click **OK**).
 - Enable/Disable a **service** (click **Services**, clear/tick the check box next to the service and click **OK**).

To Make your Computer Discoverable to Bluetooth Devices

1. Click the taskbar icon and select **Open Settings**.
2. Click **Options**, and make sure that **Allow Bluetooth devices to find this computer** check box (**Discovery**) has a tick inside it.
3. Make sure that the **Alert me when a new Bluetooth device wants to connect** check box (**Connections**) has a tick inside it, if you want to be notified when a Bluetooth device wants to connect.

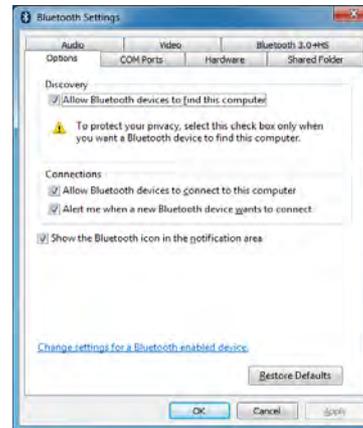


Figure 7 - 20
**Bluetooth Settings -
Options**

3G Module

(For **Models A & B** Only)

If you have included an **optional UMTS/HSPDA OR UMTS/HSPDA+** based 3G Module (Universal Mobile Telecommunications System or High Speed Packet Access) module (see “*Communication*” on page **D - 3** for specification details) in your purchase option, you will have the appropriate application (**Wireless Manager, AirCard Watcher or Mobile Partner**) provided for **Windows 7** (see “*3G Settings (Windows 8)*” on page **E - 42** for information on **Windows 8** as no driver/application installation is required). Follow the instructions on page **7 - 40** to install the USIM card (which will be provided by your service provider), and then install the application.



Important Notice - 3G & Bluetooth/Wireless LAN Modules

In order to comply with FCC regulations you should NOT operate the 3G module and the Bluetooth/Wireless LAN modules at the same time as this may disrupt radio frequency, and cause interference. When the 3G module is powered on, make sure that the Bluetooth/Wireless LAN modules are powered off.



3G Module Options

There are **two optional** 3.G modules available for this series of computer models. Each module is supplied with the appropriate application software.

The module type supplied may depend upon the computer model purchased. Check with your distributor/supplier for details.

Install the driver from the Drivers Installer menu and check the instructions for the appropriate application on the following pages.

Modules & Options

Figure 7 - 21
USIM Card Cover
Removal



Power Safety Warning

Before you undertake any installation procedures, make sure that you have turned off the power, and disconnected all peripherals and cables (including telephone lines). It is advisable to also remove your battery in order to prevent accidentally turning the machine on.

1. Turn **off** the computer, and turn it over and **remove the battery** (see page 6 - 4).
2. Locate the 3G USIM card cover and loosen screw **1**, and then remove the USIM card cover **2**.



3. Insert the USIM card as you would into your mobile phone.
4. Slide the SIMLOCK towards the hinge in order to release the lock and lift it up.
5. Insert the USIM card as illustrated in (*Figure 7 - 22*) and close the SIMLOCK.



Figure 7 - 22
Insert the USIM Card

- Lock the SIMLOCK by pushing it in the direction of the arrow in *Figure 7 - 23* until it clicks into the lock position.



Figure 7 - 23
SIMLOCK Lock



3G Modules & System Wake Up

Note that the 3.75G modules **DO NOT** support system wake up on 3G modem activity.

Before installing the application, make sure that the 3G module is ON (installing the driver with the module off will not allow the software to detect the module hardware correctly). Use the **Fn +  key combination** (see [Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15](#)) **or Control Center button to toggle power to the 3G module**. Make sure you install the drivers in the order indicated in [Table 4 - 1, on page 4 - 3](#). **Note that exiting the application does NOT turn off the 3G module.**

- **Wireless Manager** - See [“Wireless Manager Installation” on page 7 - 43](#) for driver installation information and [“Wireless Manager Application” on page 7 - 44](#) for instructions on using **Wireless Manager**.
- **AirCard Watcher** - See [“Sierra Wireless AirCard Watcher Installation” on page 7 - 65](#) for driver installation information and [“AirCard Watcher Application” on page 7 - 66](#) for instructions on using **AirCard Watcher**.
- **Mobile Partner** - See [“Mobile Partner Application Installation” on page 7 - 79](#) for driver installation information and [“Mobile Partner Application” on page 7 - 80](#) for instructions on using **Mobile Partner**.
- See [“3G Settings \(Windows 8\)” on page E - 42](#) for **Windows 8** configuration information.

Wireless Manager

With the **3G** module and USIM card (supplied by your service provider) installed you may then install the **Wireless Manager** application. The **Wireless Manager** application allows you to directly access your internet service from the computer.

Wireless Manager Installation

1. Enable power to the module by pressing the **Fn** +  key combination or Control Center button (give the module about 10 seconds to power on).
2. If a *Found New Hardware* window appears, click **Cancel** (click **Cancel** for all *Found New Hardware* windows that appear).
3. Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual disc* into your DVD drive.
4. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
5. Click **4.Install 3G Driver > Yes**.
6. Click **Next > Next > Install**.
7. Click **Finish**.
8. Access the **Wireless Manager** application from the **Start** menu or the desktop shortcut .



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the **Fn** +  key combination to toggle power to the 3G module, and check the indicator to see if the module is powered on or not (see [Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11](#)/[Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11](#)).



PIN Number

The PIN number for your USIM card will be supplied by your service provider. You usually have a limited number of attempts to enter the correct PIN number.

If you fail to enter the PIN number correctly you will be blocked from accessing the USIM card and you will need a **PUK** (Personal Un-blocking Key), supplied by your service provider, to unlock it.

Wireless Manager Application

The connection information is stored on the USIM card supplied by the service provider (where this is not the case you may need to create a profile - see *“Creating a Profile” on page 7 - 50*).

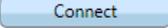
1. Power on the 3G module using the **Fn +**  key combination.
2. Access the **Wireless Manager** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Wireless Manager > Wireless Manager**) or the desktop shortcut .
3. You may be required to enter your **PIN** number and click **OK**.
4. Click the **Connect**  button (a **Profile** needs to be selected, and in most cases this will be pre-configured).



Figure 7 - 24
Wireless Manager
(Not connected)

5. The system will connect to your network.
6. **Connected** will appear above the timer icon (the timer will indicate your connected time for the current session) **Connected** 00:00:33
7. You can then access the internet, download e-mail etc. as per any internet connection.



Wireless Manager Help

To get help on **Wireless Manager** configuration and settings, click the **Help** icon or press **F1**.



Figure 7 - 25
Wireless Manager
(Connected)

Modules & Options

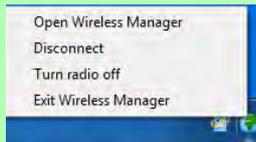
- Click the Wireless Manager notification area icon  to view the connection status, or wireless icon  to view the Mobile Broadband Connection status.

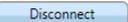
Figure 7 - 26
Notification Area
Icons (Connected)



Notification Area Icon

Right-click the notification area icon to bring up the menu to **Open/Exit Wireless Manager, Disconnect** or **Turn radio off**.



- The indicator  will display the signal strength and radio access technology.
- To disconnect from the service provider, click the **Disconnect**  button (note that if you click the close icon at the top right of the screen the application will minimize to the system tray, however the application will still be running; to exit the application right-click the notification area icon and click **Disconnect** or **Exit Wireless Manager**).
- The program will disconnect from the service provider.
- The module will still be on, and you will need to press the **Fn + ** key combination to turn it off.
- If you are unsuccessful in connecting this way you may need to add a profile with information provided by your service provider (see the following pages).

Profiles

1. Access the **Wireless Manager** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Wireless Manager > Wireless Manager**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Click the **Settings > Advanced**.
3. Click the **Profiles** (tab).

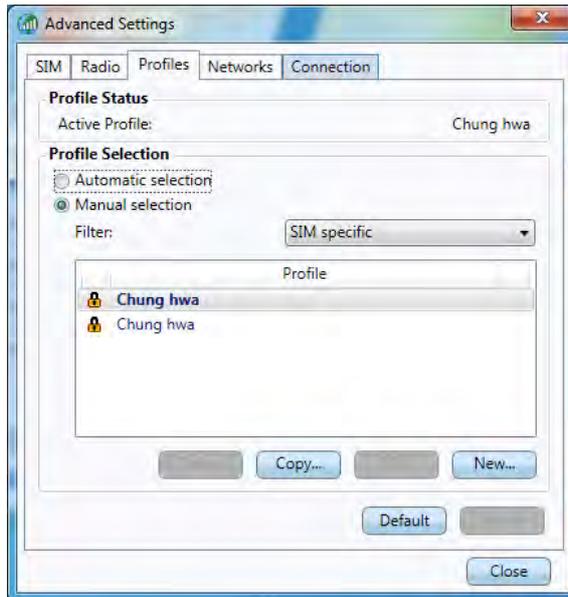
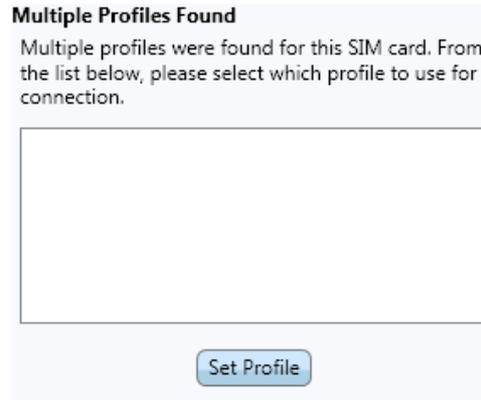


Figure 7 - 27
Advanced Settings - Profiles

- Multiple profiles may be available from the USIM card and the first time the application starts it may require you to select a profile (**Set Profile**) to use for your connection.

Figure 7 - 28
Multiple Profiles Found



Automatic Profile Selection

If **Automatic selection** is chosen, then the application will search the operator profile database for a profile that matches the details on your USIM card. If a correct profile is found it will be automatically selected as your profile.

Manual Profile Selection

If Manual selection is chosen, then you can select a profile from the applications' operator profile database, or you can create a new profile.

Selecting a Profile

1. Click **Manual selection** (button).
2. Click the **Filter** to view the drop-down list.
3. Select the Profile you wish to use and click **Apply** to confirm the selection.

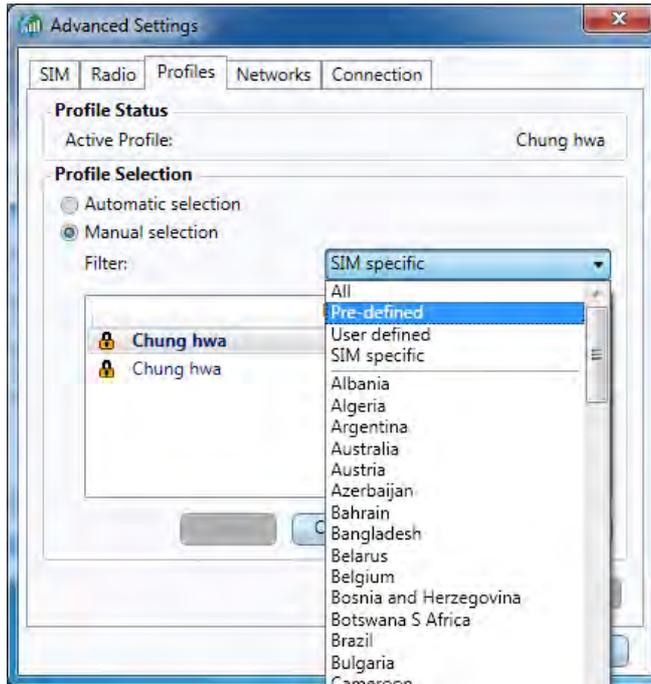


Figure 7 - 29
Profile - Manual Selection (Filter)



Deleting a Profile

To delete a profile click to select **Manual selection** and select the profile and click **Delete**.

Modifying a Profile

To modify a profile click to select **Manual selection** and select the profile and click **Edit**. Change the settings as required and then click **Save** (note that only **user defined** profiles may be edited).

Creating a Profile

1. Click **Manual selection** (button).
2. Click the **New**.
3. Enter a name you prefer for the profile.
4. Enter the **Access Point Name (APN)**.
5. Enter the **User Name** and **Password** if required (some service providers may not require this information and the fields may then be left blank).
6. If your service provider requires **IP address**, **DNS** and **Protocols** to be entered, click the appropriate tab and enter the supplied information (otherwise leave blank).
7. Click **Save** to save the profile information.
8. The profile will be stored under **User defined** in the **Filter** drop-down list.

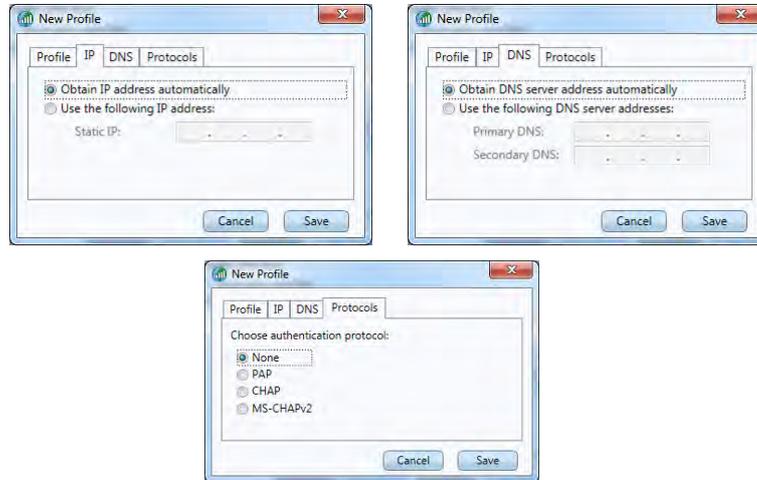


Figure 7 - 30
**New Profile IP, DNS
& Protocols**

Settings

The **Settings** tab allows you to adjust the application features. Click to put a tick in **Launch Wireless Manager at Windows startup** to launch the application at *Windows* Startup.



Figure 7 - 31
Settings

The **Advanced** settings allows more detailed configuration. To access the **Advanced** settings:

1. Access the **Wireless Manager** program from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Wireless Manager > Wireless Manager**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Click the **Settings > Advanced**.
3. Click the tab to edit any particular setting.



PIN Notes

You will have to enter your current PIN to change the PIN settings.

Request PIN at startup will apply only after you have shut the computer down and restarted it (not just restarted).

Radio & Power Saving States

You can choose to have the radio turned on or off during **Hibernate** or **Sleep** power saving states.

SIM

Most USIM cards are protected by a Personal Identity Number (PIN). You may turn on or off the **Request PIN at startup** (click **Apply** to save any changes). You can also **Change PIN** (you will need to enter the new PIN in the two fields provided and click **Apply** to save any changes).

Radio

Radio needs to be turned on before you can make any connection (note this is not the same as powering the module off/on using the **Fn** +  key combination), but you may turn it off when required. **Automatic** mode is the recommended setting for most 3G networks as it will use 3G where available. All **Frequency bands** are selected as default (click **Apply** to save any changes).

7



Figure 7 - 32
**Advanced Settings
SIM & Radio**

Networks

The mobile network list lists available networks at your location, and allows you to select a network which to connect. You must disconnect before being able to select a network.

Connection

You can set the **Wireless Manager** to automatically connect at *Windows* startup (however the module must be powered on, and radio must be turned on). You can also automatically connect when resuming from a power-saving state (click **Apply** to save any changes). Click **Default** to return to the original default settings.


Warning

Note that some applications automatically transmit data when connected, and you may be charged for the data transfer. Some auto connection/connection settings may lead to expensive roaming charges.

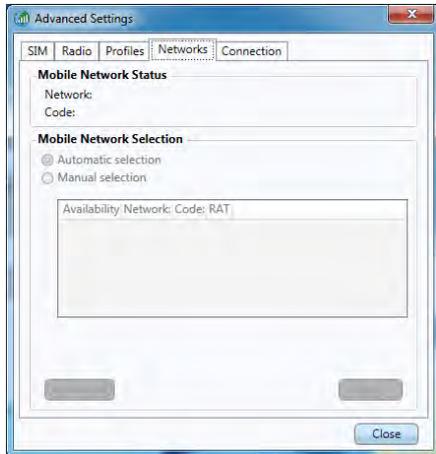


Figure 7 - 33
**Advanced Settings
Networks &
Connection**

Text Messaging Service (SMS)

In addition to standard internet services you may also send and receive SMS text messages using the **Wireless Manager**, if your service supports SMS.

SMS Utility

1. Access the **Wireless Manager** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Wireless Manager > Wireless Manager**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Click **SMS** and the **SMS Utility** will then start.
3. The indicator in the upper right corner will display if radio is currently on or off (radio must be on in order to send/receive messages).

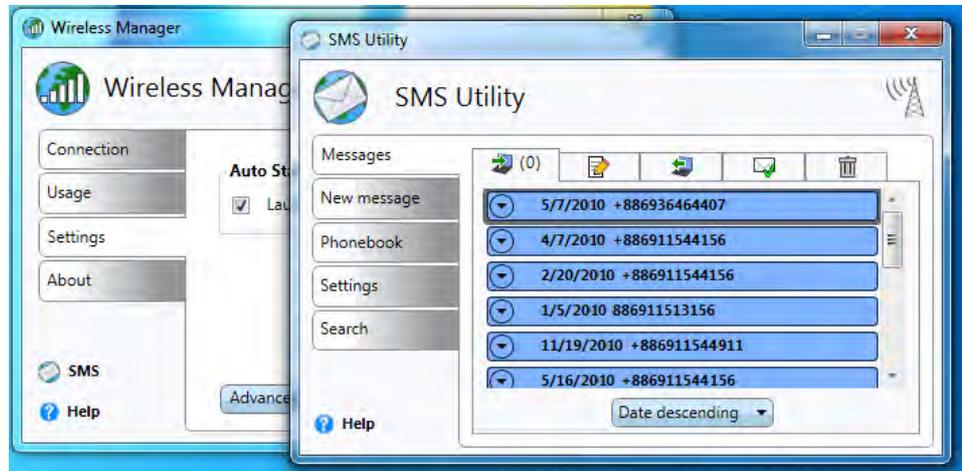


Figure 7 - 34
SMS Utility Open

Messages

Click the **Messages** tab to access the tabs displaying text messages. The tabs at the top of the menu display the **Inbox**, **Drafts**, **Outbox**, **Sent** and **Trash** menus.

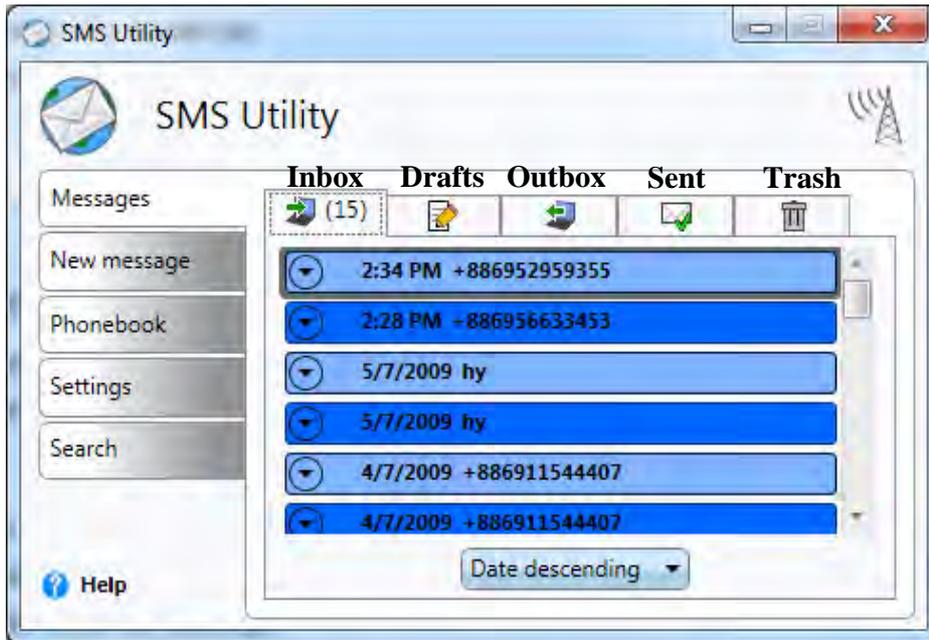
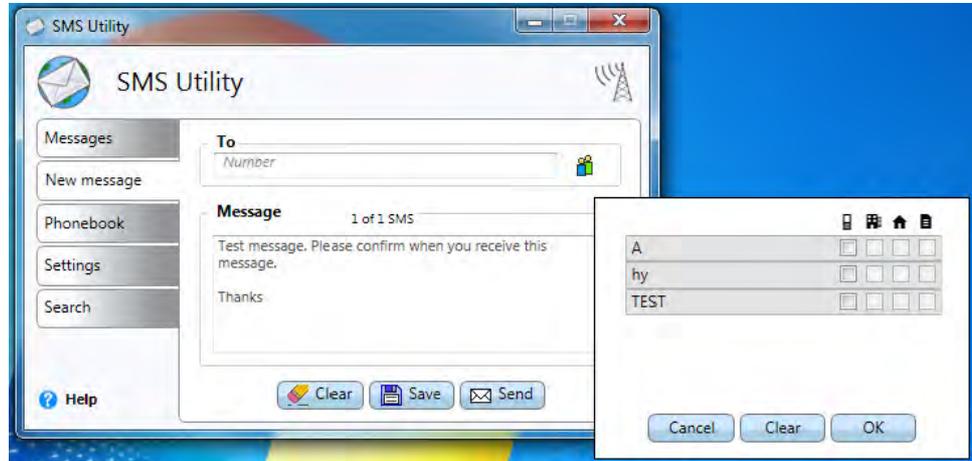


Figure 7 - 35
SMS Utility
Messages

Text messages are automatically saved to your computer and may be sorted in ascending or descending order by name or date.

Sending a Text Message

1. Access the **Wireless Manager** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Wireless Manager > Wireless Manager**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Click **SMS** and the **SMS Utility** will then start.
3. Click the **New Message** tab.
4. Enter the phone number in the **To** field (multiple numbers may be entered separated by a semicolon (;), or click the phonebook icon  to select a name from the phonebook.
5. Select any contact's phone number and click **OK** (you can click a check box to select multiple contacts or more than one phone number for each contact).
6. Type the message body in the **Message** field (to a **maximum of 160 characters**).



7
Figure 7 - 36
SMS Utility - New Message

7. Click **Send**  to send the message or **Save**  to save the message in the **Drafts** folder.
8. Clicking the **Clear** icon  clears both the **Message** and **To** fields.
9. If **radio is on** then the message will be sent, however if the radio is off the message will be stored in the **Outbox**.

Note that you do not have to connect to the network to Send/Receive SMS messages.

Inbox

Any received text messages will be displayed in the **Inbox**. The number of unread messages will be displayed in parenthesis in the inbox tab. Unread messages will be displayed in a darker color than the read messages, and incoming messages will be displayed briefly in the Notification Area.

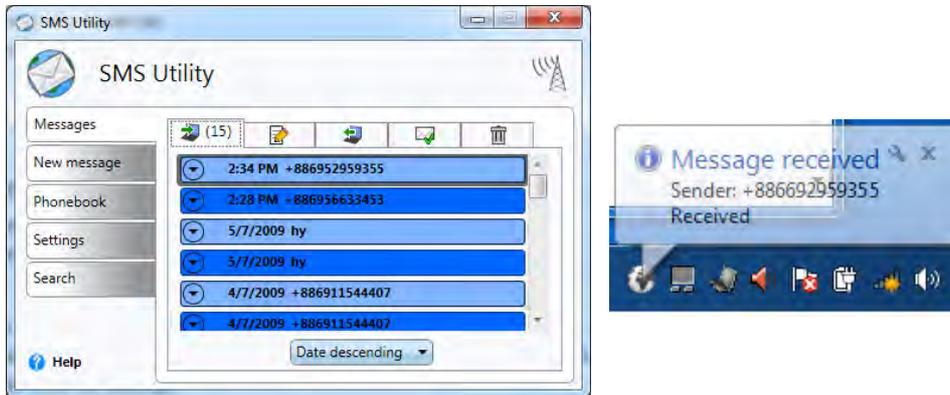


Figure 7 - 37
**SMS Utility - Inbox &
 New Message
 Received
 Notification**

Messages

- **Opening a text message:** Double-click the message and the message will open in a new window (to close it click the close icon in the top right of the message).

Figure 7 - 38
Close Message



- **Previewing a text message:** Click the preview icon  and the message preview will open. Click the icon again to close the preview.
- **Replying to a text message:** Double-click the message and click **Reply**. Type the reply in the message field and click **Send** to send the message (or **Save** to save it in **Drafts**).
- **Forwarding a text message:** Double-click the message and click **Forward**. Type the recipients name in the **To** field or click the icon  to select recipients from the **phonebook**.
- **Deleting a text message:** Right-click the message select **Delete selected**. To delete all messages in the folder right-click any message and select **Delete All**. Holding down the **Ctrl** key and selecting messages allows you to multiple select messages for deletion (choose **Delete selected**). Deleted message will be sent to the Trash folder. To permanently delete messages right-click and select **Delete selected** or **Delete All** (or you may choose to **Recover/Recover All**) and click **Yes** to confirm.

Phonebook

The **Phonebook** allows you to view and edit all your frequently used contacts, and is divided into **Contacts**  and **Groups** . To access the **Phonebook**:

1. Access the **Wireless Manager** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Wireless Manager > Wireless Manager**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Click **SMS** and the **SMS Utility** will then start.
3. Click the **Phonebook** tab.

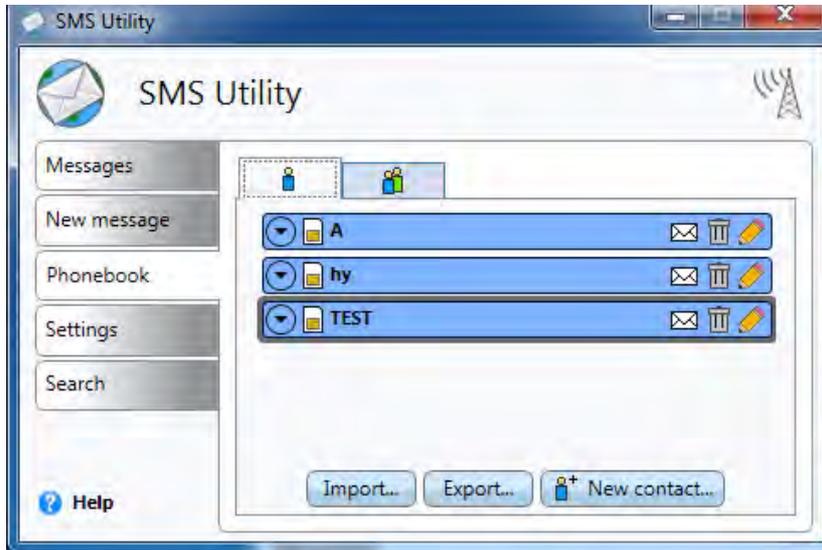


Figure 7 - 39
SMS Utility -
Phonebook
(Contacts)



Import/Export Contacts

Import/Export Contacts: Click the **Import/Export** buttons to import or export the list of contacts.

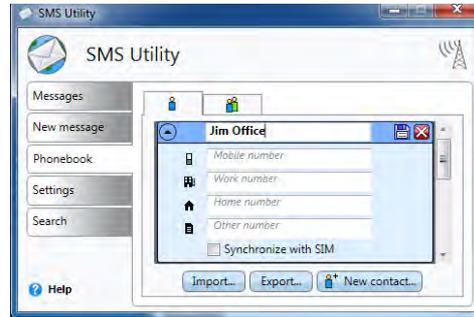


7

Figure 7 - 40
SMS Utility
New Contact

Contacts

- **New Contact:** Click the **New contact** button  **New contact...** to create a contact. Add the name and at least one phone number (**Mobile, Work, Home** and **Other** fields are available) for the contact. Click the  icon to expand the number details. Select **Synchronize with SIM** to synchronize the contact information with your USIM card. Click the **Save** icon  to save the information.



- **Edit Contact:** Click the edit icon  to make changes to a contact detail, and click save  to confirm the changes.
- **Delete Contact:** Click the delete icon  to delete a contact from the phonebook.
- **Send a message to a Contact:** Click the message icon  to send a text message to any contact.

Groups

You can organize existing contacts into groups from the **Groups** tab.

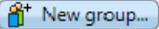
- **New Group:** Click the **New group** button  to create a group. Click the  icon to expand the group details, and click a check box to add at least one phone number from the contacts for the group. Click the **Save** icon  to save the information.



Figure 7 - 41
SMS Utility
Groups

- **Edit Group:** Click the edit icon  to make changes to a contact detail, and click save  to confirm the changes, or close  to exit without making changes.
- **Delete Group:** Click the delete icon  to delete a group from the phonebook.
- **Send a message to a Group:** Click the message icon  to send a text message to any group.

SMS Settings

The SMS Utility **Settings** tab allows you to adjust the SMS features.

Figure 7 - 42
SMS Utility Settings

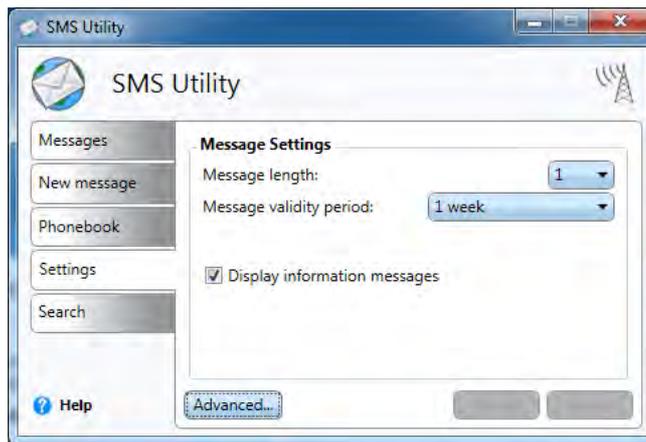


SMS Settings

Message Length: You can set the number of blocks that can be sent (up to a length of 10 blocks).

Message validity period: This sets the period after which the message will be deleted from the SMS center and therefore not forwarded to the recipient(s) when they come online.

Display information messages: You can choose whether to allow information messages to automatically appear on screen or not.



The **Advanced** settings allow more detailed configuration. To access the **Advanced** settings:

1. Access the **Wireless Manager** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Wireless Manager > Wireless Manager**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Click **SMS** and the **SMS Utility** will then start.
3. Click the **Settings > Advanced**.
4. Click the tab to edit any particular setting.

Send

Click **Delivery Report** to automatically request a reply from a recipient. If you click to **Send messages in Outbox automatically upon connection** then messages written when the radio is off, will then be sent automatically the next time radio is turned on. You can also choose to **Include original message in reply**.

Notification

This menu allows you to enable/disable **Show animation on new message** to get an animated notification of newly received messages. Enabling **Play sound on new message** will play an audio notification upon receipt of new messages.

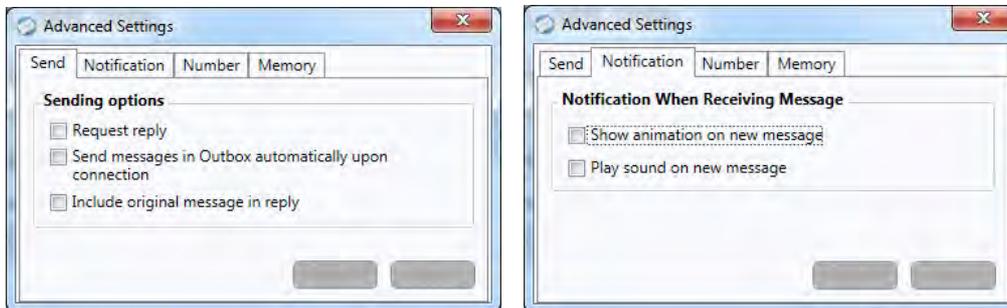


Figure 7 - 43
SMS Utility -
Advanced Settings
Send & Notification

Number

You can choose to **Use default service center number** or you can uncheck the box and add your number manually if your service provider supplies a different number (click **Apply** to save the change or **Default** to return to the default number).

Memory

Phonebook memory status displays the number of contacts displayed on the USIM card.

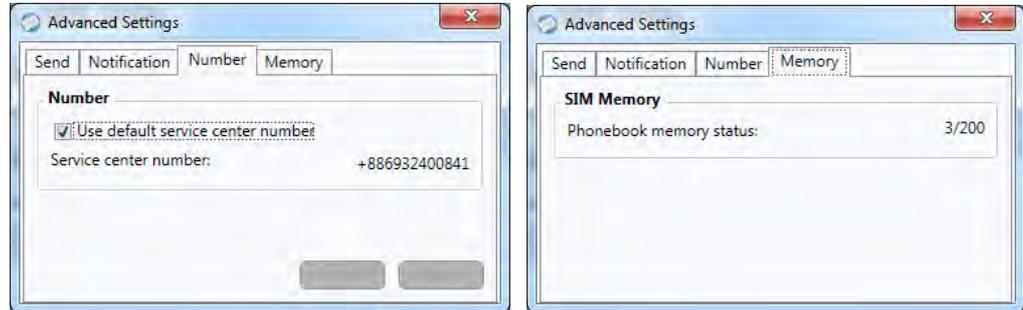


Figure 7 - 44
**SMS Utility -
Advanced Settings
Number & Memory**

Sierra Wireless AirCard Watcher

With the **3G** module and USIM card (supplied by your service provider) installed you may then install the **Sierra Wireless AirCard Watcher** application. **AirCard Watcher** allows you to directly access your internet service from the computer.

Sierra Wireless AirCard Watcher Installation

1. Enable power to the module by pressing the **Fn** +  key combination or Control Center button (give the module about 10 seconds to power on).
2. If a *Found New Hardware* window appears, click **Cancel** (click **Cancel** for all *Found New Hardware* windows that appear).
3. Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual disc* into your DVD drive.
4. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
5. Click **5.Install 3G Driver > Yes**.
6. Click **Next > Install > Finish > Next > Finish**.
7. The hardware driver installation is now complete so select “**No, I will restart my computer later**” and click **Finish** (do not restart the computer).
8. Another window will now pop up to install the **AirCard Watcher** application.
9. Click **Next**, click the button to accept the license agreement and click **Next**.
10. Click **Finish**.
11. The **Air Card Watcher** application will now run, or you can click the desktop shortcut  or run it from the **Sierra Wireless** item in the **Start** menu.



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the **Fn** +  key combination to toggle power to the 3G module, and check the indicator to see if the module is powered on or not (see [Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11](#)/[Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11](#)).



PIN Number

The PIN number for your USIM card will be supplied by your service provider. You usually have a limited number of attempts to enter the correct PIN number.

If you fail to enter the PIN number correctly you will be blocked from accessing the USIM card and you will need a **PUK** (Personal Unblocking Key), supplied by your service provider, to unlock it.

AirCard Watcher Application

The connection information is stored on the USIM card supplied by the service provider (where this is not the case you may need to create a profile - see *“Profiles” on page 7 - 72*).

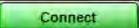
1. Power on the 3G module using the **Fn +**  key combination.
2. Access the **AirCard Watcher** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Sierra Wireless > AirCard Watcher**) or the desktop shortcut .
3. If you need to set up a network operator (see page **7 - 71**).
4. Click the **Connect**  button (a **Profile** needs to be selected, and in most cases this will be pre-configured).



Figure 7 - 45
AirCard Watcher
(Not connected)

- 5. The system will connect to your network.
- 6. **The icon**  will turn green  (and the upload/download speeds will be indicated).
- 7. You can then access the internet, download e-mail etc. as per any internet connection.





AirCard Watcher Help Topics

To get help on **AirCard Watcher** configuration and settings, click the **Menu** icon and select **Help Topics**.



Always (

Help Topics

Figure 7 - 46
AirCard Watcher
(Connected)

Modules & Options



Roaming Notification

AirCard Watcher will provide notification when you connect to a network other than your service provider. This can be turned on/off from **User Options > General > Warning Messages**.

- When connected the uplink/downlink speeds will be indicated.
- You can also click the **Speed Graph** icon  to get a visual display of the uplink/downlink speeds.
- While connected you can also click the icon  in the notification area of the taskbar to display the **Windows 7 Mobile Broadband** connection status.

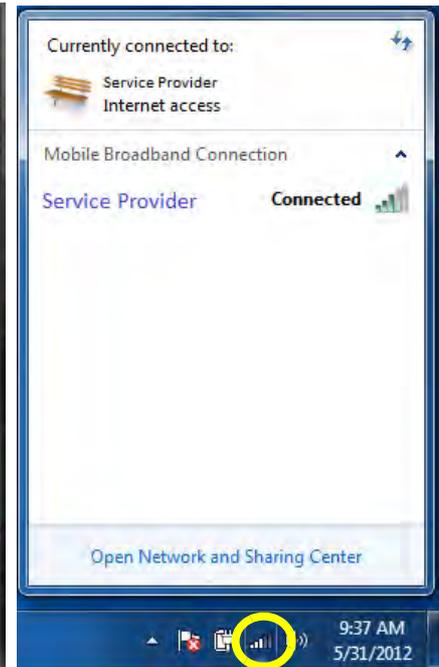
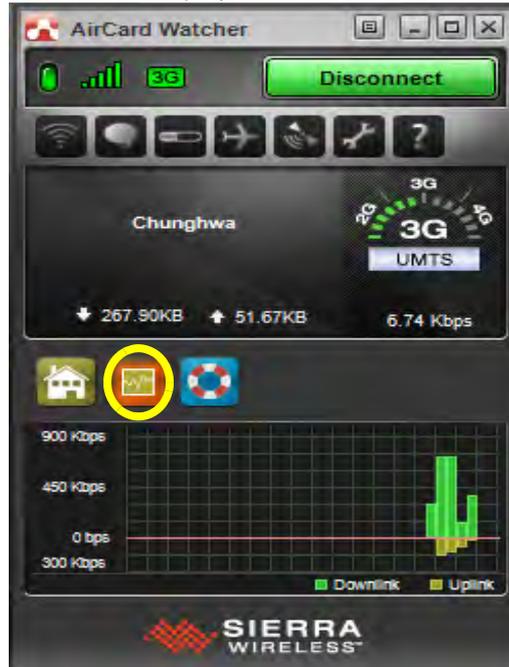
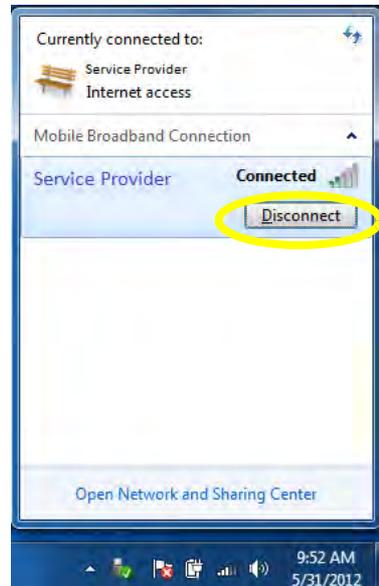
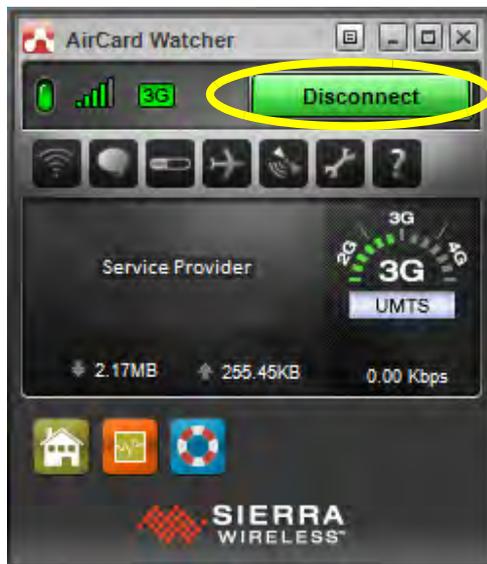


Figure 7 - 47
AirCard Watcher with Speed Graph (Connected) & Taskbar Menu

11. To disconnect from the service provider, click the **Disconnect**  button (note that if you click the close  icon at the top right of the screen the application will close however the connection will still be maintained).
12. You can also click the icon  in the notification area of the taskbar to display the connection status, click **Connected**, and then click the **Disconnect** button.
13. The program will disconnect from the service provider.
14. The module will still be on, and you will need to press the **Fn + ** key combination to turn it off.



Online Help

Click the **Online Help**  icon to access the Sierra Wireless website for further help if required.

Figure 7 - 48
AirCard Watcher
Disconnect
&
Taskbar Menu
Disconnect



Airplane Mode

Click on the **Airplane Mode** icon to turn the radio power off (e.g. if you are aboard an aircraft). You can turn the radio on again by clicking the **Turn Radio On** button.

Air Card Watcher Menu

Right-click the **menu**  button at the top of the **AirCard Watcher** screen to bring up the **menu**, and click to select any item required.

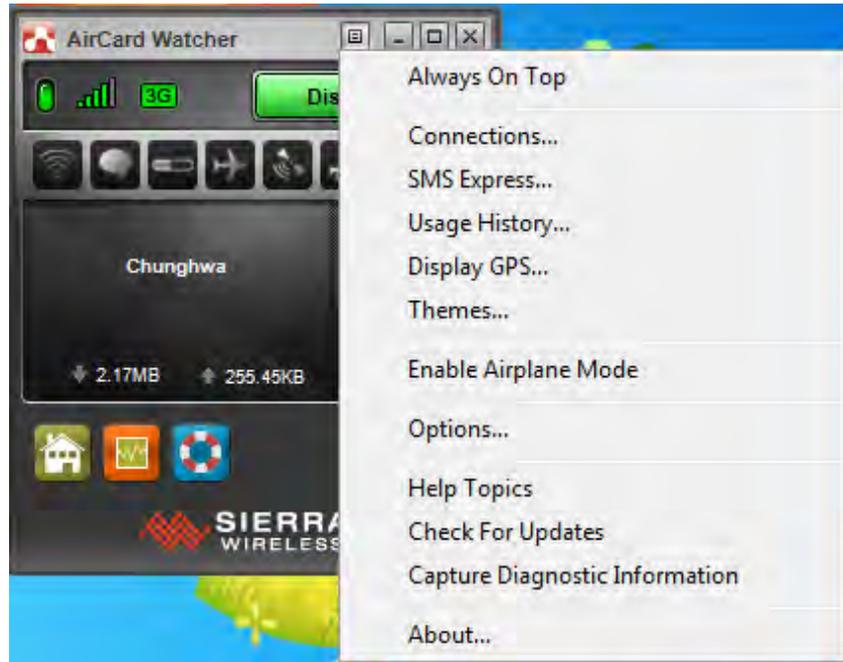


Figure 7 - 49
AirCard Watcher
Menu

Selecting a Network Operator/Service Provider

In most cases all your network operator/service provider details will be stored on your USIM card, and will not need to be edited/modified. If you do need to set up a network operator/service provider follow these instructions.

1. Access the **AirCard Watcher** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Sierra Wireless > AirCard Watcher**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Either click the **menu**  button and select **Options**, or click the **Options** button  from the main program window.
3. Click **Firmware**.
4. Click to select a **Network Operator** from the dropdown menu.
5. Click **OK**.



Network Operator

If the network operator is not listed then choose **Generic UMTS**.

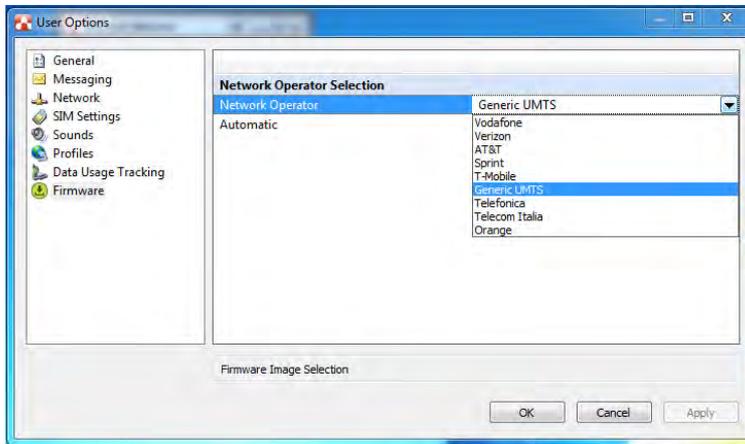


Figure 7 - 50
Options - Firmware
(Network Operator)

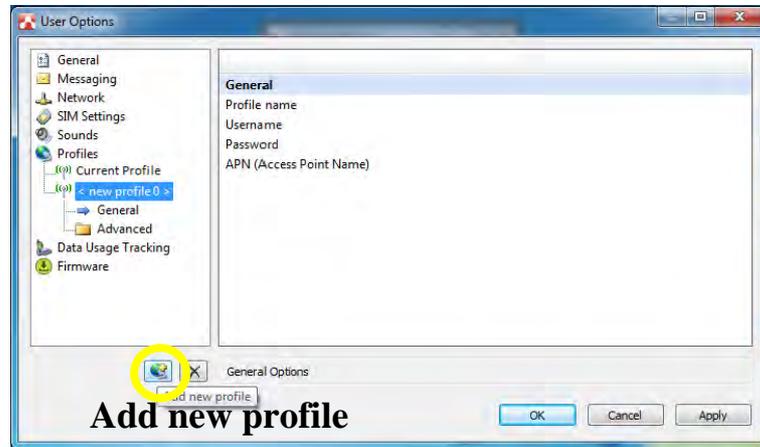
Profiles

A profile contains information used to establish a data connection, and this information is usually stored on the USIM card supplied by your service provider. However you can create, edit or delete profiles if required.

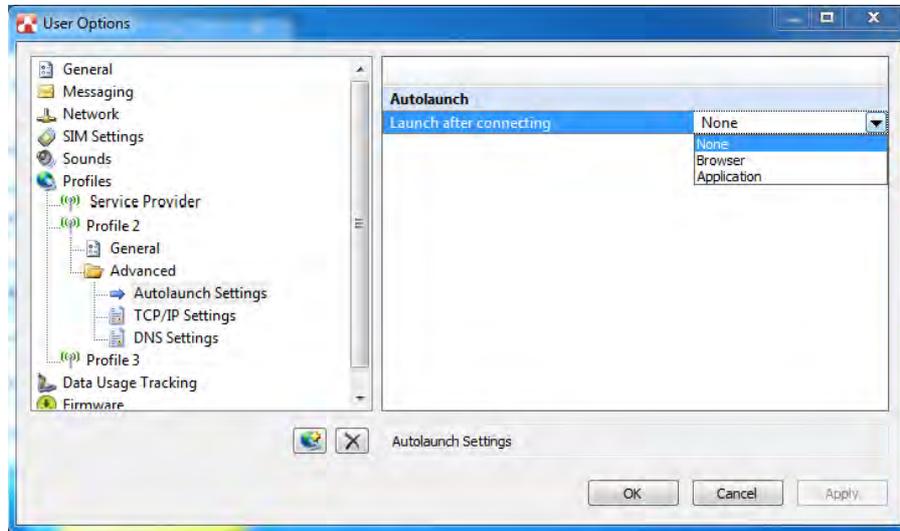
Creating a Profile

1. Access the **AirCard Watcher** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Sierra Wireless > AirCard Watcher**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Make sure you are not connected to a network.
3. Either click the **menu**  button and select **Connections**, or click the **Connections button**  from the main program window.
4. Click **Profiles** and click the **Add new profile** button and select **Custom**.

7
Figure 7 - 51
Options - Profile



5. You will need to complete the fields for **Profile name**, **Username**, **Password** and **Access Point Name** (you will need to get the username and password details from your service provider).
6. Once you have added the details above you can click the **Profiles** heading menu and click to select the profile from the **Selected Profile** dropdown menu and then click **OK** to set the profile as the default connection.
7. Select the profile and click **Advanced** to set the **Autolaunch**, **TCP/IP** and **DNS** settings (check with your service provider for any specific requirements in these fields).



Edit or Delete Profiles

Select any existing profiles to edit or delete it, and then click **OK** to confirm any changes made.

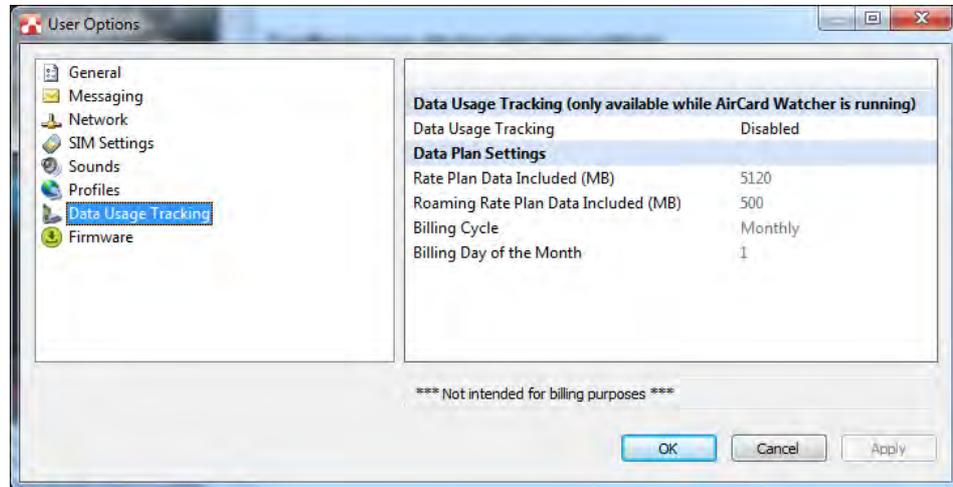
You can also change the default profile from the dropdown menu and then click **OK** to confirm the changes.

Figure 7 - 52
Profile - Advanced

User Options

You can configure **User Options** as follows.

1. Access the **AirCard Watcher** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Sierra Wireless > AirCard Watcher**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Either click the **menu**  button and select **Options**, or click the **Options** button  from the main program window.
3. Click on any of the menu headings on the left to access the options that may be configured (note that not all options will be available to be configured as they may depend on your USIM card settings).



7
Figure 7 - 53
User Options

- **General** - This item allows you to set options for **Startup/Shutdown, Warning Messages, Display** and **Windows** support.
- **Messaging** - Set options here for SMS settings.
- **Network** - Configure the network settings from this menu though your frequency band information is usually stored on the USIM card.
- **SIM Settings** - You can set your SIM Security and PIN # options here.
- **Sounds** - This allows you to set sounds applicable to certain application actions e.g. when a new SMS arrives.
- **Profiles** - Create, edit, delete and set the default profile from the items here.
- **Data Usage Tracking** - You can enable/disable data tracking e.g. for billing purposes.
- **Firmware** - If you need to change network operator/service provider you can do so here.

Text Messaging Service (SMS)

In addition to standard internet services you may also send and receive SMS text messages using **AirCard Watcher**, if your service supports SMS.

SMS Express

1. Access the **AirCard Watcher** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Sierra Wireless > AirCard Watcher**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Either click the **menu**  button and select **SMS Express**, or click the **SMS Express** button  from the main program window.

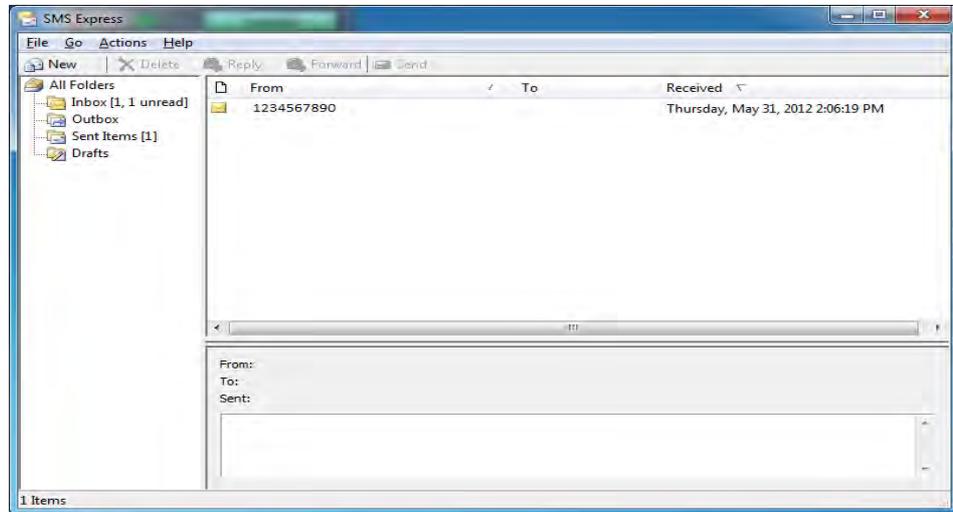
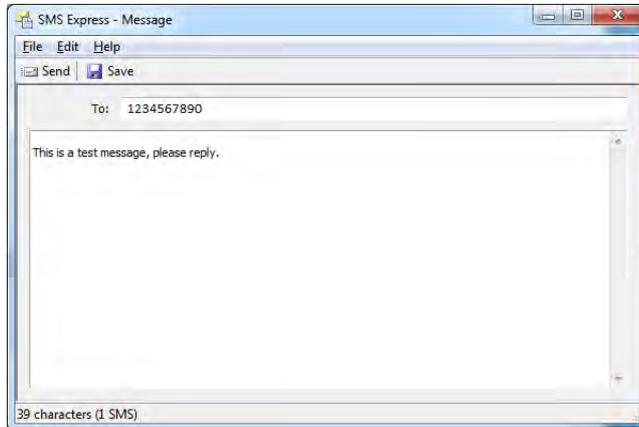


Figure 7 - 54
SMS Utility Open

Sending a Text Message

1. Access the **AirCard Watcher** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Sierra Wireless > AirCard Watcher**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Either click the **menu**  button and select **SMS Express**, or click the **SMS Express** button  from the main program window.
3. Select **File > New Message** or click the **New** button in the toolbar.
4. Type the recipients phone number in the “**To:**” field (to send to multiple recipients separate the numbers using a semi-colon or space).
5. Type the message (160 characters max) in the bottom part of the Message window.
6. Click the **Send** button or **Save** the message to send/edit later.



Note that you do not have to connect to the network to Send/Receive SMS messages as long as the module is on.



Sent Messages

Sent messages will be automatically saved to the **Sent Items** folder.

Figure 7 - 55
Profile - Advanced

Inbox

Any received text messages will be displayed in the **Inbox**. The number of total messages and unread messages will be displayed in the inbox folder title.

Messages

- **Opening a text message:** Click on any message in the **Inbox** to read it in the bottom panel of the window.
- **Replying to a text message:** Click on any message in the **Inbox** and select **Actions > Reply** or click the **Reply** button in the toolbar. Type the reply in the message field and click **Send** to send the message (or **Save** to save it in **Drafts**).
- **Forwarding a text message:** Click on any message in the appropriate folder and select **Actions > Forward** or click the **Forward** button in the toolbar. Enter the recipient's phone number in the "**To:**" field and make any additions/changes required in the message field and click **Send** to send the message (or **Save** to save it in **Drafts**).
- **Deleting a text message:** Click on any message in the appropriate folder and select **Actions > Delete** or click the **Delete** button in the toolbar. Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

Mobile Partner

With the **3G** module and USIM card (supplied by your service provider) installed you may then install the **Mobile Partner** application to directly access your HSPA internet service from the computer.

Mobile Partner Application Installation

1. Enable power to the module by pressing the **Fn** +  key combination or Control Center button (give the module about 10 seconds to power on).
2. If a **Found New Hardware** window appears, click **Cancel** (click **Cancel** for all **Found New Hardware** windows that appear).
3. Insert the **Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual disc** into your DVD drive.
4. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
5. Click **5.Install 3G Driver > Yes**.
6. Click **Next > Install > Finish > Next**.
7. Click **I Agree** (button) to accept the license agreement.
8. Click **Install > Finish**.
9. Choose the language you prefer and click **OK**, and then click **Next**.
10. Click **I Agree** (button) to accept the license agreement.
11. Click **Next > Install > Finish**.
12. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.
13. Access the **Mobile Partner** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > Programs/All Programs > Mobile Partner**), or by double-clicking the **Mobile Partner** icon on the desktop.



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

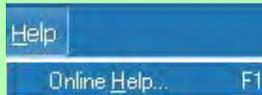
The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the **Fn** +  key combination to toggle power to the 3G module, and check the indicator to see if the module is powered on or not (see [Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11](#)/[Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11](#)).



Mobile Partner Help

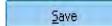
To get help on **Mobile Partner** configuration and settings, click the **Help** menu and select **Online Help** or press **F1**.



Mobile Partner Application

You will need to contact your service provider to obtain the exact details of how exactly to configure the settings on this page.

Profile Management

1. Power on the 3G module using the **Fn +**  key combination.
2. Access the **Mobile Partner** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > Programs/ All Programs > Mobile Partner**), or by double-clicking the **Mobile Partner** icon on the desktop .
3. If you have not created a profile, click **Tools** and select **Options**, and then click **Profile Management**.
4. Click **New**  and input the appropriate information for **Profile Name**, **APN** and **Authentication** etc. as supplied by your service provider.
5. Click **Save**  to save the profile.

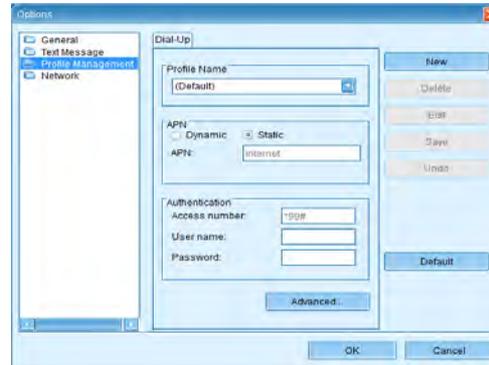
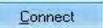


Figure 7 - 56
Profile Management

Connecting to the Service Provider

1. Power on the 3G module using the **Fn +**  key combination.
2. Access the **Mobile Partner** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > Programs/ All Programs > Mobile Partner**), or by double-clicking the **Mobile Partner** icon on the desktop .
3. The software will run and you can select the **Profile Name** from the menu.
4. Click **Connect**  to begin the connection process.

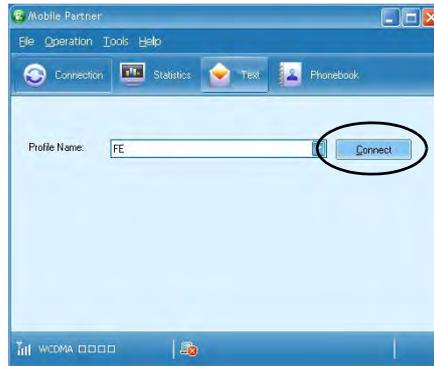


Figure 7 - 57
Connect

5. The **Mobile Partner** application will then display the connection information.

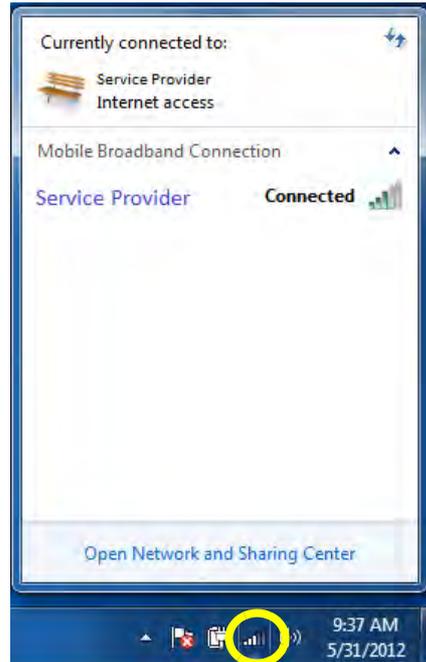


Figure 7 - 58
Network
Connection Prompt

Modules & Options

6. While connected you can also click the icon  in the notification area of the taskbar to display the **Windows 7 Mobile Broadband** connection status.

Figure 7 - 59
**Connected
Taskbar
Notification Area
Notification**



7. You can then access the internet, download e-mail etc. as per any internet connection.

8. While you are connected the indicators in the Mobile Partner window will display uploading and downloading icons.



9. To disconnect click the **Disconnect**  icon, or right click the notification area icon and select **Disconnect** (you can also select the connection in the **Mobile Broadband** connection status window, and click **Disconnect**).

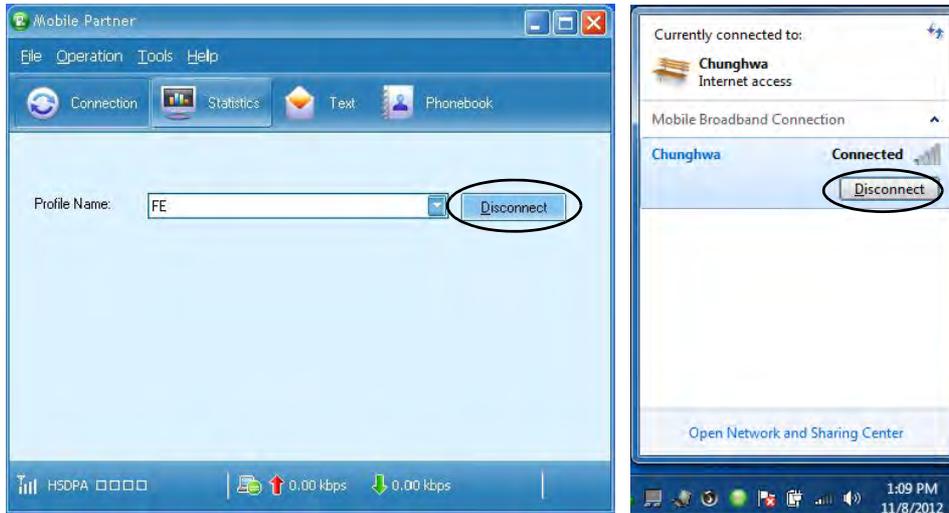
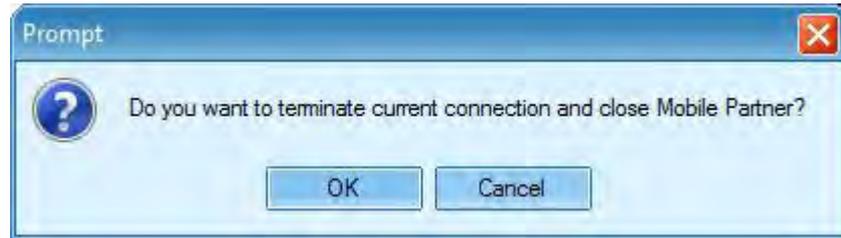


Figure 7 - 60
Disconnect

10. The program will disconnect from the service provider.
 11. The module will still be on, and you will need to press the **Fn +**  key combination to turn it off.

12. If you click the **Mobile Partner** close icon  a message will be displayed asking you to click **OK** to confirm the program exit and to **terminate the connection**.

Figure 7 - 61
Exit Prompt



13. Exiting the program terminates the connection, but DOES NOT turn off the 3G module, and you will need to press the **Fn + ** key combination to turn off the module (pay careful attention to this aboard aircraft - see *“Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft”* on page 7 - 79).
14. If the module is on and the computer enters a power-saving state, then the power status of the module on resuming from the power-saving state will be as below:
 - If the 3G module is on and the computer is **Shut Down or Restarted**; the module will be **off** when the computer starts up.
 - If the 3G module is on and the computer enters **Sleep or Hibernate**; the module will be **off** when the computer resumes from sleep.

Text Messaging Service

In addition to standard internet services you may also send and receive SMS text messages using the **Mobile Partner** program, if your service supports SMS.

Reading SMS Messages

1. An icon  will blink at the bottom of the **Mobile Partner** interface to notify you of any new messages received.
2. Click the **Text** icon  in the **Mobile Partner** Interface.
3. Select the **Local > Inbox** or **SIM/USIM Card** folder and select any message to read it.
4. Right-click the message and choose an option to reply, forward or delete the message.

Creating and Sending SMS Messages

1. Click the **Text** icon  in the **Mobile Partner** Interface.
2. Click the **New** button .
3. Enter the recipient's number in the **Send To...** field or click the **Send To...** button to select an entry from the phone book, and click **OK**.
4. Type in the message details.
5. Click the **Send** button, **Save** button to send the message later or **Close > Yes** to save in the **Draft** folder.

For more details on SMS click the **Help** menu and select **Online Help** or press **F1** and select **SMS**.

Trusted Platform Module

The **TPM security chip** allows you to create and manage digital certificates for user and platform authentication. This type of security is usually administered within large enterprises and organizations, and therefore requires implementation by a system administrator before users can access security features.

Individual users can use the TPM as an authentication with the fingerprint reader.

Make sure you have administrator's rights to your computer, and have a *Windows* password enabled for full security protection. In addition **Make sure you prepare a removable media (e.g. a USB flash drive) to store passwords etc. before beginning the TPM initialization process.**

Before setting up the TPM functions you must initialize the security platform.

Enabling & Activating TPM

1. Restart the computer.
2. Enter the **Aptio Setup Utility** pressing **F2** during the POST/startup.
3. Use the arrow keys to select the **Security** menu.
4. Select **Trusted Configuration** and press Enter to access the sub-menu.
5. Press Enter to access the **TPM Support** menu and select **Enable** to display the full **TPM configuration** menu.
6. Select **TPM State**, press Enter and select **Enable** to change the TPM state to enabled. You will then need to press **F4** to save the changes and restart the computer.



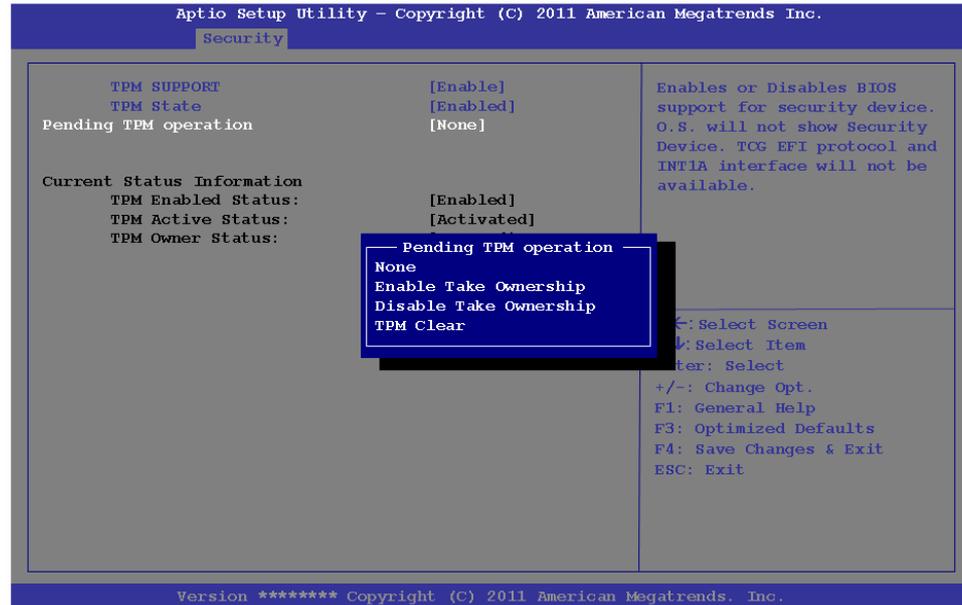
Figure 7 - 62
TPM State
(Enabled)

7. As the computer restarts press **F2** to enter the BIOS again and go to the **TPM Configuration** menu.

Modules & Options

8. Select **Pending TPM operation**, press Enter and select the option you require (if you are initializing TPM you should select **Enable Take Ownership**). You will then need to press **F4** to save the changes and restart the computer.

Figure 7 - 63
Pending TPM
operation
(Enable Take
Ownership)

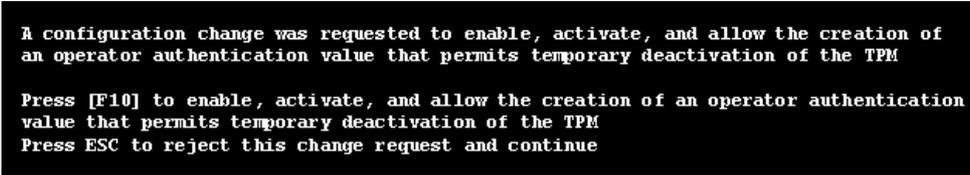


9. You can now **install the TPM driver** (see ***“Trusted Platform Module (TPM) Driver Installation” on page 7 - 89***) and then initialize the TPM.

Trusted Platform Module (TPM) Driver Installation

1. Make sure you have enabled and activated the TPM in the BIOS before installing the driver (if you do not do see the note below).
2. Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc into the DVD drive.
3. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
4. Click **5.Install TPM Driver > Yes**.
5. Click **Install > Next**.
6. Click the button to accept the license and click **Next**.
7. Click **Next > Next > Install**.
8. Click **Finish > Yes** to restart the computer.

If you have installed the driver without enabling and activating the TPM first, a confirmation message will appear on restart.



```
A configuration change was requested to enable, activate, and allow the creation of
an operator authentication value that permits temporary deactivation of the TPM

Press [F10] to enable, activate, and allow the creation of an operator authentication
value that permits temporary deactivation of the TPM
Press ESC to reject this change request and continue
```

Press **F10** to enable and activate the TPM and you can then configure as overleaf. However it is recommended that you enter the BIOS and take ownership (see page [7 - 87](#)) of the TPM before configuration in *Windows*. Alternatively press **Esc** to continue without making changes the TPM.

Figure 7 - 64
**TPM Confirmation
Message**

(if the driver is installed without TPM being enabled and activated in the BIOS)

Initializing TPM

1. Run the application from the **Infineon Security Platform Solution > Manage Security Platform** item in the **Start > Programs** menu.
2. Click **User Settings** (tab) and click **Yes**, or right-click the icon  in the notification area of the taskbar, and select **Security Platform Initialization** (or click the **Security Platform State** taskbar bubble).
3. The **Quick Initialization** method will automatically be selected for you (if you need to use advanced settings provided by your network administrator then select **Advanced Initialization**).
4. You will need to use a removable media (e.g. a USB Flash Drive) to store passwords and data (keep the media in a safe place until required).
5. Select the drive you want to use from the drop-down menu and click **Next**.

Figure 7 - 65
**Security Platform
Quick Initialization
Wizard**



6. Choose the **Security Platform Features** you want to use by clicking the appropriate tickbox.
7. Enter a **Basic User Password** (and re-type to confirm it) and click **Next**.



8. Click **Next** to confirm the settings.
9. The computer will then initialize the settings.
10. Click **Finish**.
11. Click the tabs and control panels to adjust the settings.
12. Double-click the icon  in the taskbar notification area to access the **Infineon Security Platform Settings Tool**, or right-click the icon  and select a menu item.



Help

Right-click the icon  in the notification area of the taskbar to bring up the menu to select **Help** or **How to use the Security Platform Features**.



You can also click the **Help** button in any of the Infineon Security Platform Settings Tool tabs to bring up specific help topics on each tab.

Figure 7 - 66
Settings



Menus

Note that not all the menus pictured here will be available for access. The menu items that appear will be dependent on your configuration settings etc. (see the **Help** file for full details).

Infineon Security Platform Settings Tool

The Infineon Security Platform Settings Tool allows you to manage and check the TPM state, manage your password information, and to backup and restore the TPM data. As TPM is usually administered within large enterprises and organizations, your system administrator will need to assist you in managing the information here.



Figure 7 - 67
**Infineon Security
Platform Settings
Tool**

User Settings

This page allows the settings to be configured for the currently logged in Infineon Security Platform user including the ability to change the password, configure secure e-mail, file and folder encryption and Enhanced Authentication. You can also import or delete certificates protected by the security platform.

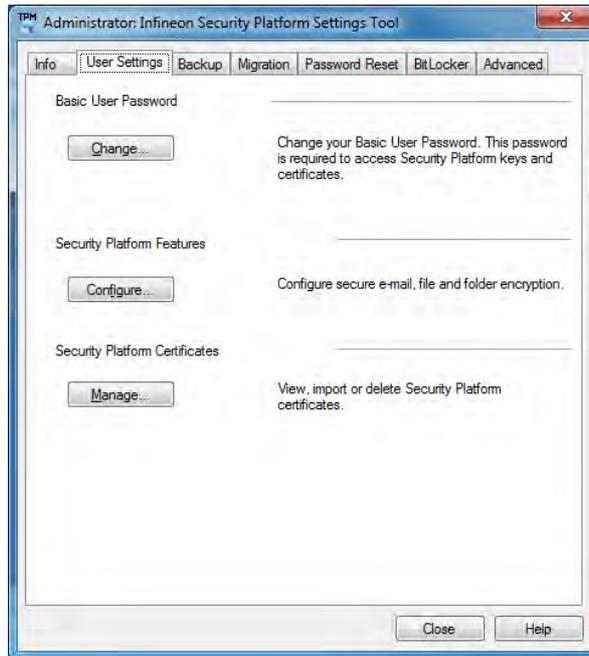
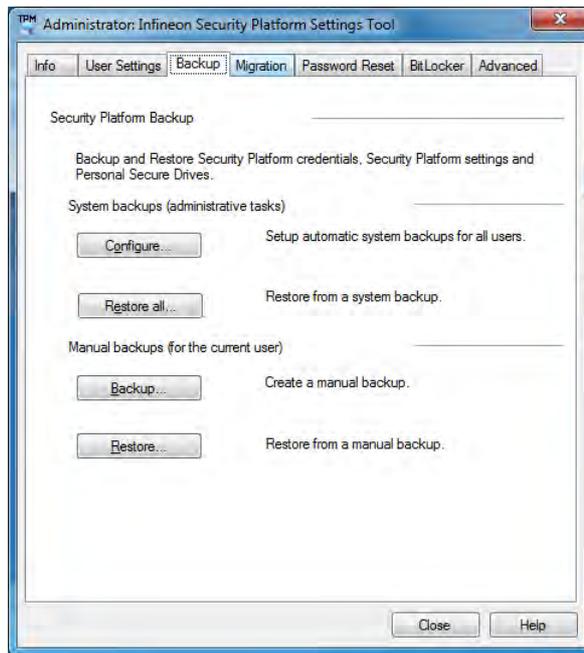


Figure 7 - 68
**Infineon Security
Platform Settings
Tool (User Settings)**

Backup

Here you can configure backup and restore operations. Backup files contain the computer identification and user identification information which is used to match the machine name and user name with the current machine and user during restoration.

Figure 7 - 69
**Infineon Security
Platform Settings
Tool (Backup)**



Migration

The Migration tab is used to help securely transfer keys and certificates from one platform to another.

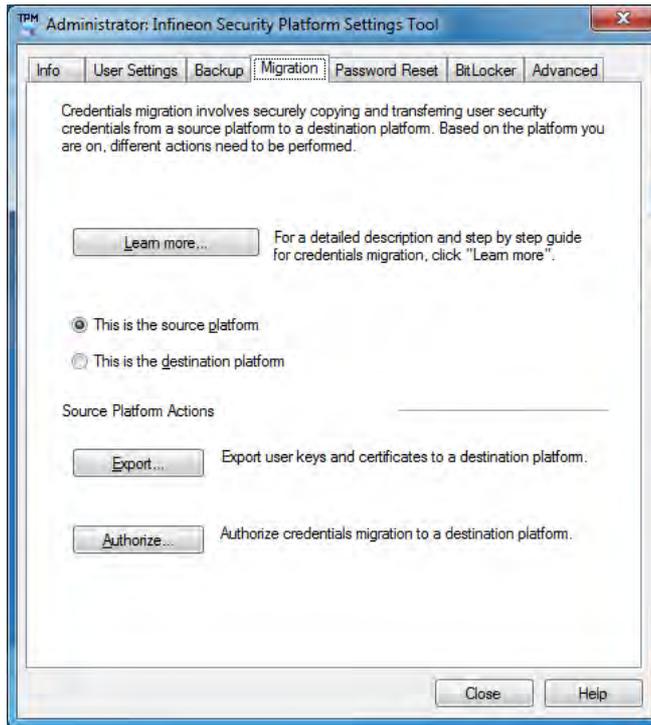
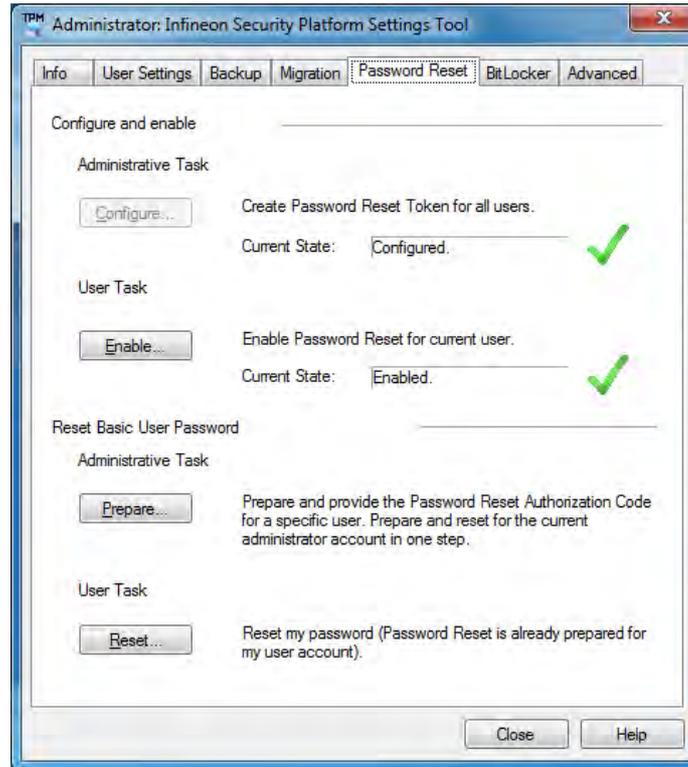


Figure 7 - 70
Infineon Security Platform Settings Tool (Migration)

Password Reset

Use Password Reset to reset basic user passwords when required.

Figure 7 - 71
**Infinion Security
Platform Settings
Tool
(Password Reset)**



BitLocker

BitLocker Drive Encryption can be used in conjunction with the TPM to encrypt data on the disk and is done via the **Microsoft BitLocker Control Panel Applet**. Click **Configure** and select a drive to be encrypted and then follow the Wizard to begin the encryption process.

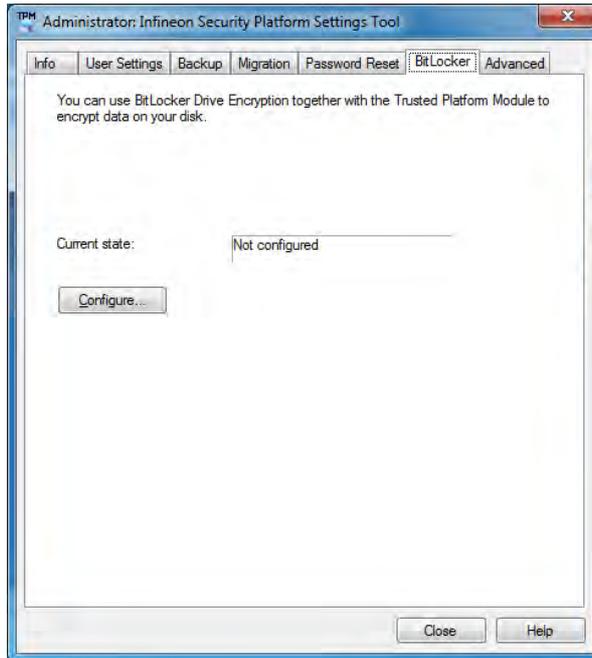


Figure 7 - 72
**Infineon Security
Platform Settings
Tool
(BitLocker)**

Access the Microsoft **BitLocker Drive Encryption** control panel applet from the *Windows* control panel (**System and Security**).

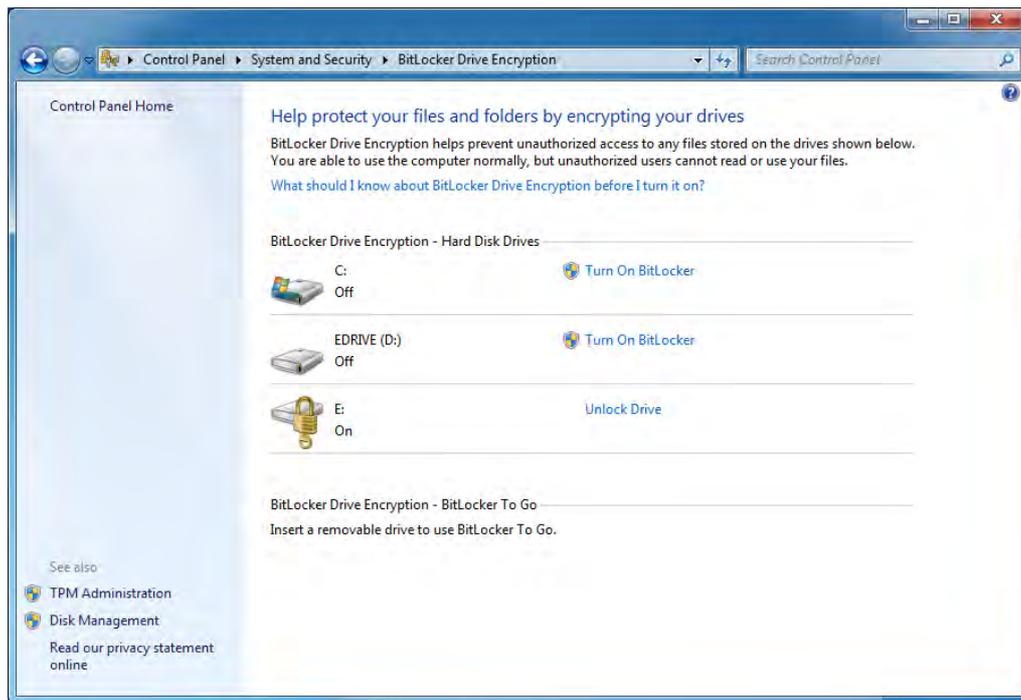


Figure 7 - 73
BitLocker Drive Encryption

Advanced

Configure all the Security Platform owner and policy settings from the Advanced tab. The settings that can be changed are for the local computer only.

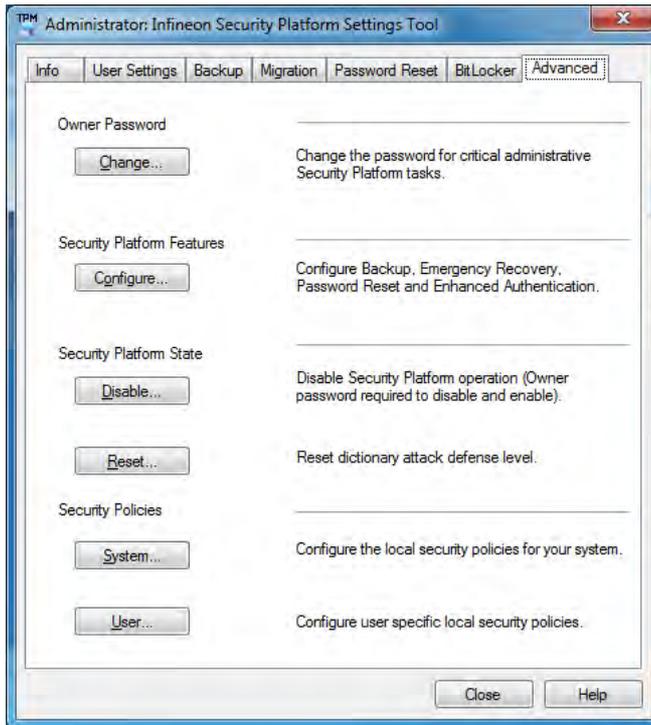


Figure 7 - 74
Infineon Security Platform Settings Tool (Advanced)

Intel Rapid Storage Technology

Install the Intel Rapid Storage Technology to support your SATA drive if set up in AHCI mode in the BIOS (see “*SATA Mode Selection (Advanced Menu)*” on *page 5 - 8*).

IRST Driver Installation

1. Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc into the DVD drive.
2. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
3. Click **6.Install IRST Driver > Yes**.
4. Click **Next > Yes > Next > Next**.
5. Click **Finish** to restart the computer (you will need to restart the system again after the computer has rebooted).

Chapter 8: Troubleshooting

Overview

Should you have any problems with your computer, before consulting your service representative, you may want to try to solve the problem yourself. This chapter lists some common problems and their possible solutions. This can't anticipate every problem, but you should check here before you panic. If you don't find the answer in these pages, make sure you have followed the instructions carefully and observed the safety precautions in the preface. If all else fails, talk to your service representative. You should also make a record of what happened and what remedies you tried.

Of course, if something goes wrong, it will happen at the most inconvenient time possible, so you should preview this section just in case. If, after you've tried everything, and the system still won't cooperate, try turning it off for a few minutes and then rebooting. You will lose any unsaved data, but it may start working again. Then call your service representative.

Basic Hints and Tips

Many of the following may seem obvious but they are often the solution to a problem when your computer appears not to be working.

- **Power** - Is the computer actually plugged into a working electrical outlet? If plugged into a **power strip**, make sure it is actually working. Check the **LED Power & Communication Indicators** (see *“LED Indicators” on page 1 - 11*) to see the computer’s power status.
- **Connections** - Check all the **cables** to make sure that there are no **loose connections** anywhere.
- **Power Savings** - Make sure that the system is not in **Hibernate** or **Sleep** mode by pressing the keys configured in your *Power Options* (see *“Power-Saving States” on page 3 - 6*), the **Fn + F4** key combination, or power button to wake-up the system.
- **Brightness** - Check the brightness of the screen by pressing the **Fn + F8 and F9** keys to adjust the brightness.
- **Display Choice** - Press **Fn + F7** to make sure the system is not set to “external only” display.
- **Boot Drive** - Make sure there are no **optical media and/or USB storage devices** in any connected drive (this is a common cause of the message *“Invalid system disk - Replace the disk, and then press any key” / “Remove disks or other media. Press any key to restart”*).

Backup and General Maintenance

- Always **backup** your important data, and keep copies of your OS and programs safe, but close to hand. Don't forget to note the **serial numbers** if you are storing them out of their original cases, e.g. in a CD wallet.
- Run **maintenance programs** on your hard disk and OS as often as you can. You may schedule these programs to run at times when you are not using your computer. You can use those that are provided free with your OS, or buy the more powerful dedicated programs to do so.
- Write down your passwords and keep them safe (away from your computer). This is especially important if you choose to use a **Supervisor** password for the BIOS (see *“The Setup Utility” on page 5 - 2*).
- Keep copies of vital **settings files** such as network, dialup settings, mail settings etc.(even if just brief notes).



Warranty

The CPU is not a user serviceable part. Opening this compartment, or accessing the CPU in any way, may violate your warranty.

Viruses

- Install an **Anti-Virus** program and keep the **definitions file** (the file which tells your program which viruses to look for) up to date. New computer viruses are discovered daily, and some of them may seriously harm your computer and cause you to lose data. **Anti-Virus** programs are commercially available and the **definitions file updates** are usually downloadable directly from the internet.
- Be careful when opening e-mail from sources you don't know. **Viruses** are often triggered from within **e-mail attachments** so take care when opening any attached file. You can configure most **Anti-Virus** programs to check all **e-mail attachments**. **Note:** You should also beware of files from people you know as the virus may have infected an **address book** and been automatically forwarded without the person's knowledge.
- Keep a "**Bootable CD-ROM/DVD-ROM/USB storage device**" (this CD/DVD/USB device provides basic information which allows you to startup your computer) handy. You may refer to your OS's documentation for instructions on how to make one, and many **Anti-Virus** programs will also provide such a disk (or at least instructions on how to make one).

Upgrading and Adding New Hardware/Software

- Do not be tempted to make changes to your **Windows Registry** unless you are very sure of what you are doing, otherwise you will risk severely damaging your system.
- Don't open your computer or undertake any repair or upgrade work if you are not comfortable with what you are doing.
- Read the **documentation**. We can assume, since you are reading this that you are looking at the computer's manual, but what about any new peripheral devices you have just purchased? Many problems are caused by the installation of new hardware and/or software. Always refer to the documentation of any new hardware and/or software, and pay particular attention to files entitled "**READ ME**" or "**READ ME FIRST**".
- When installing a new device always make sure the device is powered on, and in many cases you will need to restart the computer. Always check that all the cables are correctly connected.
- Make sure you have installed the **drivers** for any new hardware you have installed (latest **driver files** are usually available to download from vendor's websites).

Troubleshooting

- Thoroughly check any **recent changes** you made to your system as these changes may affect one or more system components, or software programs. If possible, go back and undo the change you just made and see if the problem still occurs.
- Don't over complicate things. The less you have to deal with then the easier the source of the problem may be found; **Example** - if your computer has many devices plugged into its ports, and a number of programs running, then it will be difficult to determine the cause of a problem. Try disconnecting all of the devices and restarting the computer with all the peripheral devices unplugged. A process of elimination (adding and removing devices and restarting where necessary) will often find the source of a problem, although this may be time consuming.

Problems and Possible Solutions

Problem	Possible Cause - Solution
<p>You turned on the power but it doesn't work.</p>	<p><i>Battery missing / incorrectly installed.</i> Check the battery bay, make sure the battery is present and seated properly (the design of the battery only allows it to go in one way). Make sure there's nothing interfering with the battery contacts.</p>
<p>The battery LED power indicator , is blinking orange.</p>	<p><i>Low Battery.</i> Plug in the DC power source. If the computer doesn't start up immediately, turn it off then on again.</p>
<p>You are losing battery power too quickly.</p>	<p><i>The system is using too much power.</i> If your OS has a <i>Power Options</i> scheme (see "Power Plans" on page 3 - 4) check its settings. You may also be using a USB device/external device that is drawing a lot of power.</p>
<p>Actual battery operating time is shorter than expected.</p>	<p><i>The battery has not been fully discharged before being recharged.</i> Make sure the battery is fully discharged and recharge it completely before reusing (see "Battery Information" on page 3 - 11).</p> <p><i>Power Options have been disabled.</i> Go to the Control Panel in <i>Windows</i> and re-enable the options.</p> <p><i>A peripheral device/USB device is consuming a lot of power.</i> Turn off/remove the unused device to save power.</p>

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause - Solution
The computer feels too hot .	<p>Make sure the computer is properly ventilated and the Vent/Fan intakes are not blocked. If this doesn't cool it down, put the system into Hibernate mode or turn it off for an hour. Make sure the computer isn't sitting on a thermal surface (see "Overheating" on page 1 - 24). Make sure you're using the correct adapter.</p> <p>Make sure that your notebook is completely powered off before putting it into a travel bag (or any such container). Putting a notebook which is powered on in a travel bag may cause the Vent/Fan intakes to be blocked.</p>
Nothing appears on screen.	<p><i>The system is in a power saving mode.</i> Toggle the sleep/resume key combination, Fn + F4 (see "Configuring the Power Buttons" on page 3 - 8).</p> <p><i>The screen controls need to be adjusted.</i> Toggle the screen control key combinations Fn + F8/F9. If you're connected to an external monitor, make sure it's plugged in and turned on. You should also check the monitor's own brightness and contrast controls.</p> <p><i>The computer is set for a different display.</i> Toggle the screen display key combination, Fn + F7. If an external monitor is connected, turn it on.</p> <p><i>The screen saver is activated.</i> Press any key or touch the Touchpad.</p>
No image appears on the external monitor I have plugged in and powered on.	<p><i>You haven't installed the video driver and configured it appropriately from the Control Panel.</i> See Appendix C for instructions on installing and configuring the video driver.</p>

Problem	Possible Cause - Solution
You forget the boot password .	<i>If you forget the password, you may have to discharge the battery of the CMOS. Contact your service representative for help.</i>
 <p>Password Warning</p> <p>If you choose to set a boot password, NEVER forget your password. The consequences of this could be serious. If you cannot remember your boot password you must contact your vendor and you may lose all of the information on your hard disk.</p>	
The sound cannot be heard or the volume is very low .	<i>The volume might be set too low. Check the volume control in the Volume Control Panel in the Windows taskbar, or use the key combination Fn + F5 and F6 (see “Function/Hot Key Indicators” on page 1 - 15) to adjust.</i>
The CD/DVD cannot be read .	<i>The CD/DVD is dirty. Clean it with a CD/DVD cleaner kit.</i>
The CD/DVD tray will not open when there is a disc in the tray.	<i>The CD/DVD is not correctly placed in the tray. Gently try to remove the disc using the eject hole (see “Loading Discs” on page 2 - 3).</i>
The DVD regional codes can no longer be changed.	<i>The code has been changed the maximum 5 times. See “DVD Regional Codes” on page 2 - 5.</i>
Unwelcome numbers appear when typing.	<i>If the LED  is lit, then Num Lock is turned ON. (see “LED Indicators” on page 1 - 11).</i>

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause - Solution
 <h3>Other Keyboards</h3> <p>If your keyboard is damaged or you just want to make a change, you can use any standard USB keyboard. The system will detect and enable it automatically. However special functions/hot keys unique to the system's regular keyboard may not work.</p>	
The system freezes or the screen goes dark.	<i>The system's power saving features have timed-out.</i> Use the AC/DC adapter, press the sleep (Fn + F4) key combination, or press the power button if no LEDs are lit.
The system never goes into a power saving mode .	Power Options features are not enabled. Go to the Windows Power Options menu and enable the features you prefer (see " Power-Saving States " on page 3 - 6). Make sure you have enabled Hibernate mode from the control panel.
The Wireless LAN or Bluetooth modules cannot be detected.	<i>The modules are off.</i> Check the LED indicator and/or function key indicator to see if the WLAN/Bluetooth module is on or off (see " LED Indicators " on page 1 - 11). If the LED indicator is off, then press the Fn + F11 (WLAN) or Fn + F12 (Bluetooth) key combination(s) in order to enable the modules (see Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15).

Problem	Possible Cause - Solution
The PC Camera module cannot be detected.	<i>The module is off.</i> Press the Fn + F10 key combination in order to enable the module (see “Function/Hot Key Indicators” on page 1 - 15). Run the camera application to view the camera picture.
The PC Camera module does not display the LED light when the camera is in use.	<i>You are using a 300K or 1.3M camera in the Windows 8 OS.</i> The Windows 8 OS does not support 300K or 1.3M cameras, and therefore the LED light will not display.
The Wireless LAN/Bluetooth/ PC Camera modules cannot be configured.	The driver(s) for the module(s) have not been installed. Make sure you have installed the driver for the appropriate module (see the instructions for the appropriate module in “Modules & Options” on page 7 - 1).
A file cannot be copied to/from a connected Bluetooth device.	<i>The transfer of data between the computer and a Bluetooth enabled device is supported in one direction only (simultaneous data transfer is not supported).</i> If you are copying a file from your computer to a Bluetooth enabled device, you will not be able to copy a file from the device to your computer until the file transfer process from the computer has been completed.
The Bluetooth module is off after resuming from Sleep.	<i>The Bluetooth module’s default state will be off after resuming from the Sleep power-saving state.</i> Use the key combination (Fn + F12) to power on the Bluetooth module after the computer resumes from Sleep.
I am sliding my finger up and down on the right side of the Touchpad to scroll a Window and the Touchpad does not respond .	<i>There are different Touchpad versions available on this computer, and this version requires tapping/holding to scroll.</i> Either tap repeatedly, or hold the finger down, at the top or bottom right of the Touchpad (depending on the scrolling direction required) to scroll the window.

Bluetooth Connection Problems

If you are experiencing problems connecting to some Bluetooth devices (in particular certain mobile phones and headsets) it may be necessary to download and install the **Windows Mobile Device Center** software (for *Windows Vista* and *Windows 7*). Go to the Microsoft website and search for the **Microsoft Windows Device Center Driver for Windows Vista (64-bit or 32-bit) and Windows 7 (64-bit or 32-bit)**, and then download the driver.

1. Install the **Microsoft Windows Device Center Driver** as appropriate for your operating system.
2. **Windows Vista** will automatically configure the driver for you, however **Windows 7** requires further configuration.
3. Make sure the Bluetooth device is powered on.
4. Go to the **Windows 7** control panel and double-click **Device Manager (Hardware and Sound > Devices and Printers)**.
5. **Bluetooth Peripheral Device(s)** will be listed under **Other Devices** (note this will only be listed if you have connected, or tried to connect to, a Bluetooth device previously).

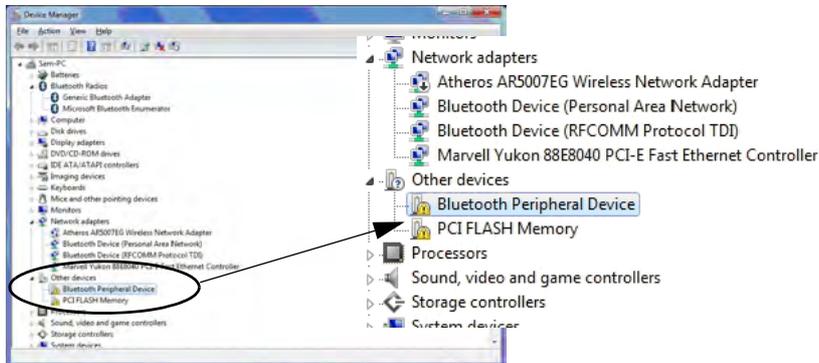


Figure 8 - 1 - Device Manager

Bluetooth Peripheral Devices

You will need to repeat the procedure listed here for all **Bluetooth Peripheral Devices** listed under **Other Devices** i.e. until there are no more **Bluetooth Peripheral Devices** listed under this menu heading.

6. Right-click **Bluetooth Peripheral Device** and click on **Update Driver Software**.
7. Click **Browse my computer for driver software**.
8. Click **Let Me pick from a list of device drivers on my computer**.

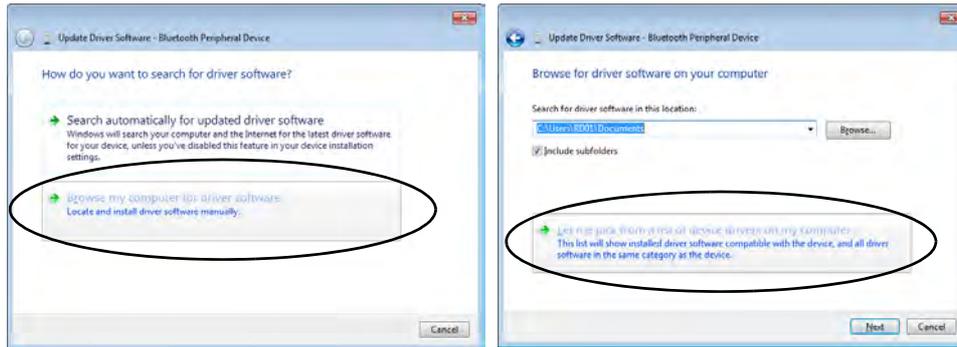


Figure 8 - 2 - Browse my computer.../Let me pick from...

9. Select **Bluetooth Radios** from the list.

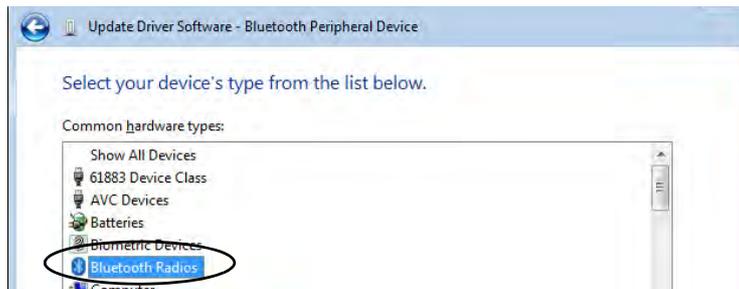


Figure 8 - 3 - Select Bluetooth Radios

Troubleshooting

10. A list of drivers will appear with **Manufacturer** on one side and **Model** in the other.
11. Choose **Microsoft Corporation** (make sure you choose the full name **Microsoft Corporation** and do not choose **Microsoft** - Note that you must have installed the **Microsoft Windows Device Center Driver for Microsoft Corporation** to appear in the list).
12. Select **Windows Mobile-based device support** from the **Model** list.

8

Make sure you select
Microsoft Corporation

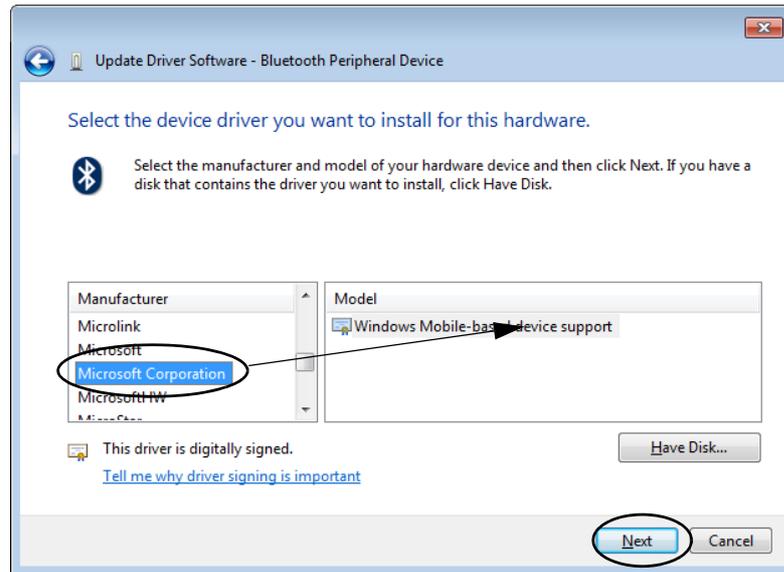


Figure 8 - 4 - Select Device Driver

13. Click **Next > Yes** and the driver will install.
14. Click **Close** to complete the installation.

15. The **Device Manager** should now display the **Windows Mobile-based device support** under **Bluetooth Radios**.
16. You will need to repeat the process for any other **Bluetooth Peripheral Devices** listed under **Other Devices**.

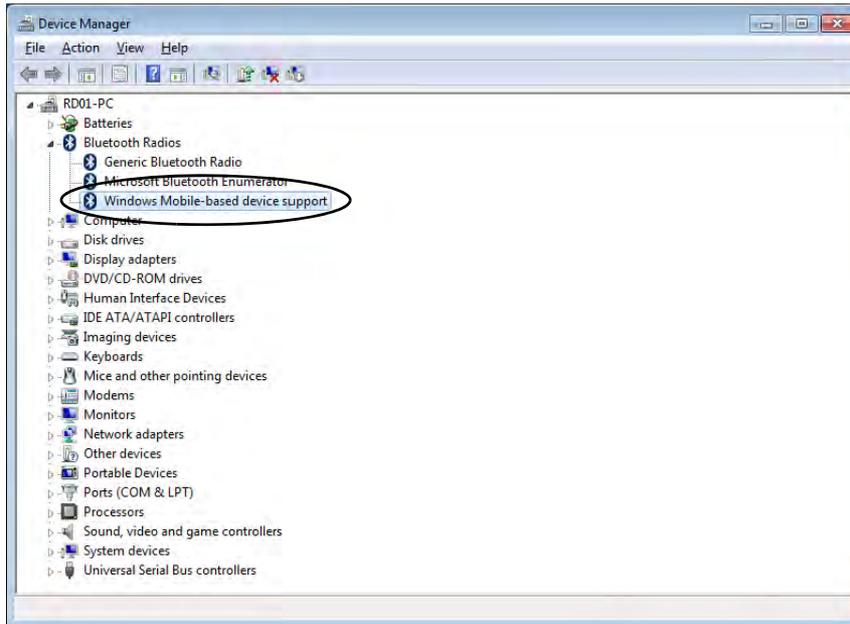


Figure 8 - 5 - Device Manager - Bluetooth Radio

Resolving the “Insert a SIM” issue with the 3G Module (Windows 8)

1. If a PIN was set for the EM820W 3G module, you have then switched **Mobile broadband off** (or put the system in **Airplane Mode**) under **Wireless** in **PC Settings**, and the system has just resumed from a power-saving state the following error may occur.

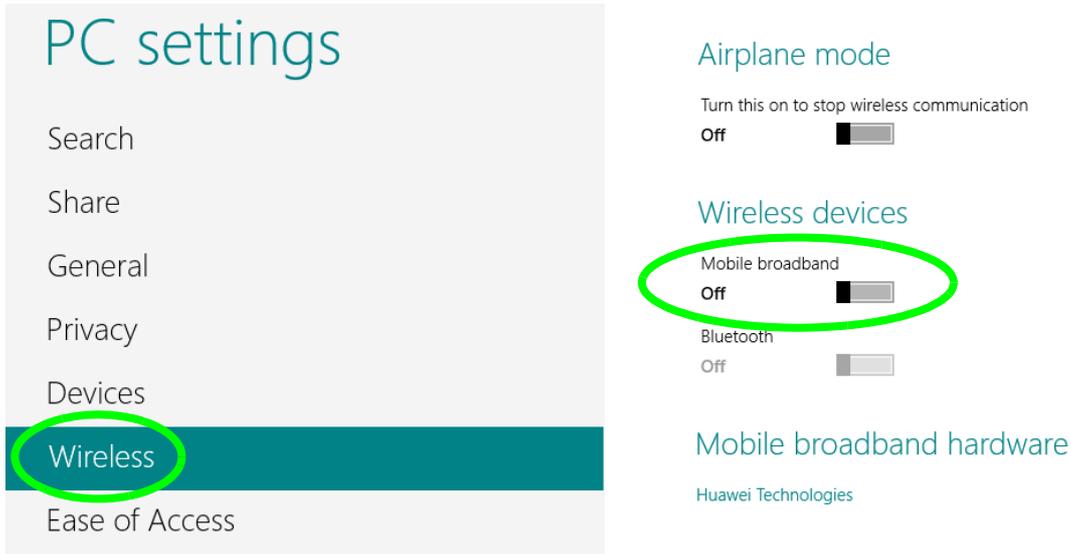


Figure 8 - 6 - PC Settings (Charms Bar) - Wireless (Mobile Broadband Off)

2. On resuming from the power-saving state the standard procedure would be to go to **PC Settings** in the **Charms Bar** and turn on Mobile broadband under **Wireless > Wireless Devices**.

3. Go to the **Charms Bar**.
4. Select **Settings** and you will then note that the **WiFi icon** will read **Unavailable**.
5. Standard procedure would be to click the connection and enter the PIN number to unlock the connection.
6. In this instance you will note that the **Mobile broadband** connection will read **Insert a SIM**.

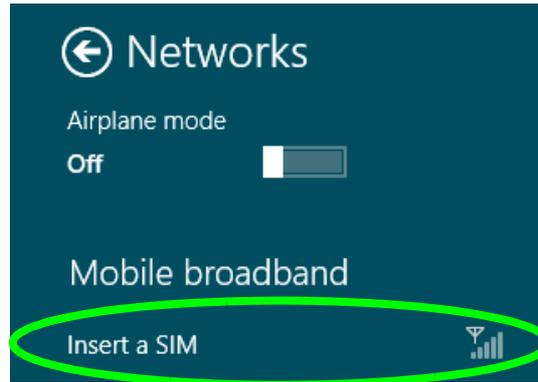


Figure 8 - 7 - Mobile Broadband (Insert a SIM)

7. In this case you will need to **restart the computer**.
8. After system restart you can then connect to the Mobile Broadband as normal.
9. **To fully resolve this issue it is recommended that you do not Enable a PIN for the EM820W 3G module.**

Appendix A: Interface (Ports & Jacks)

Overview

The following chapter will give a quick description of the interface (ports & jacks) which allow your computer to communicate with external devices, connect to the internet etc.

Notebook Ports and Jacks

Item	Description
<p>Card Reader Port</p> 	<p>The card reader allows you to use some of the latest digital storage cards. Push the card into the slot and it will appear as a removable device.</p>
<p>DC-In Jack</p> 	<p>Plug the supplied AC/DC adapter into this jack to power your computer.</p>
<p>External Monitor (VGA) Port</p> 	<p>This port allows you to connect an external monitor, or Flat Panel Display, to get dual video or simultaneous display on the LCD and external monitor/FPD.</p>
<p>HDMI-Out Port</p> 	<p>The HDMI-Out (High-Definition Multimedia Interface) is an audio/video connector interface for transmitting uncompressed digital streams. This allows you to connect an external monitor, TV or Flat Panel Display etc. as a display device by means of a HDMI cable. Note that HDMI carries both audio and video signals.</p>
<p>Headphone-Out Jack</p> 	<p>Headphones or speakers may be connected through this jack. Note: Set your system's volume to a reduced level before connecting to this jack.</p>

Item	Description
Microphone-In Jack 	Plug an external microphone in to this jack to record on your computer.
RJ-45 LAN Jack 	This port supports LAN (Network) functions. Note: Broadband (e.g. ADSL) modems usually connect to the LAN port.
Security Lock Slot 	To prevent possible theft, a Kensington-type lock can be attached to this slot. Locks can be purchased at any computer store.
USB 2.0/1.1 Ports  USB 3.0 Port	<p>These USB 2.0 compatible ports (USB 2.0 is fully USB 1.1 compliant) are for low-speed peripherals such as keyboards, mice or scanners, and for high-speed peripherals such as external HDDs, digital video cameras or high-speed scanners etc. Devices can be plugged into the computer, and unplugged from the computer, without the need to turn the system off (if the power rating of your USB device is 500mA or above, make sure you use the power supply which comes with the device).</p> <p>The USB 3.0 ports are denoted by their blue color; USB 2.0 ports are colored black. USB 3.0 will transfer data much faster than USB 2.0, and is backwards-compatible with USB 2.0.</p> <p>Note that the USB 3.0 ports require a driver installation (see <i>“USB 3.0 (Win 7 Only)” on page 4 - 7</i> for <i>Windows 7</i> (<i>Windows 8</i> does not require a driver) and do not support wake on USB.</p>

Interface (Ports & Jacks)

A

Appendix B: Control Center

Overview

The following chapter will give a quick description of the functions of the **Control Center**. The **Control Center** gives quick access to frequently used controls, power management features and enables you to quickly turn modules on/off. Click the **Control Center** icons to toggle the appropriate function, or hold the mouse button down and move the slider where applicable. Certain functions will automatically be adjusted when a power mode is selected. The **Control Center** in *Windows 8* works under the **Desktop** app (see *“Function/Hot Key Indicators & Control Center” on page E - 15*) and not under the Start screen, and does not feature the wireless/Bluetooth buttons and Airplane Mode etc.



Figure B - 1 - Control Center

Control Center

Power Modes

You can set a **Power Mode** by clicking the appropriate icon at the top of the **Control Center**. Each power mode will affect the power status of modules (e.g. WLAN, Bluetooth, 3G or Camera), screen brightness, TouchPad power and Silent Mode.

You can click a **Control Center** icon to set an overall power mode and then click individual icons in the **Control Center** to power on/off any modules etc.

The **table overleaf** illustrates the basic settings for each power mode. If you choose user defined the settings will correspond to your selected system settings.

Modes		Power Saving	Flight (Win 7 Only)	Entertainment	Quiet	Performance	User Defined	
Icon								
Power Plan		Power Saver	Balanced	Power Saving	Power Saving	High Performance	User Defined	
Power Conservation Mode		Energy Star	BIOS Default	Energy Star	Energy Star	Performance		
Brightness		14	42	100	42	100		
WLAN (Win 7 Only)		OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON		
Bluetooth (Win 7 Only)		BIOS Default						
3G (Win 7 Only)		OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF		
PC Camera		OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON		
TouchPad		ON	ON	OFF	ON	ON		

Table B - 1- Power Modes

Control Center

Power Status

The **Power Status** icon will show whether you are currently powered by the battery, or by the AC/DC adapter plugged in to a working power outlet. The power status bar will show the current battery charge state.

Brightness

The **Brightness** icon will show the current screen brightness level. You can use the slider to adjust the screen brightness or the **Fn + F8/F9** key combinations, or use the **Fn+ F2** key combination to turn off the LED backlight (press any key to turn it on again). Note that screen brightness is also effected by the **Power Mode** selected (see [Table B - 1, on page B - 3](#)).

Volume

The **Volume** icon will show the current volume level. You can use the slider to adjust the Volume or the **Fn + F5/F6** key combinations, or use the **Fn+ F3** key combination to mute the volume.

Power Conservation

This system supports **Energy Star** power management features that place computers (CPU, hard drive, etc.) into a low-power sleep modes after a designated period of inactivity (see [“Power Conservation Modes” on page 3 - 10](#)). Click either the **Performance**, **Balanced** or **Energy Star** button.



Sleep 

Click the **Sleep** button to bring up the **Hibernate**  or **Sleep**  buttons, and click either button to have the computer enter the appropriate power-saving mode (see *“Power-Saving States” on page 3 - 6*).

Display Switch 

Click the **Display Switch** button to access the menu (or use the  + **P** key combination) and select the appropriate attached display mode (see page *C - 10*).

Time Zone 

Clicking the **Time Zone** button will access the **Date and Time Windows** control panel.

Desktop Background 

Clicking the **Desktop Background** button will allow you to change the desktop background picture.

TouchPad/PC Camera/Wireless LAN Module /Bluetooth/3.75G Module     

Click any of these buttons to toggle the TouchPad or module's power status. A crossed out icon will appear over the top left of the icon  when it is off. Note that the power status of a module, and TouchPad power, is also effected by the **Power Mode** selected (see *Table B - 1, on page B - 3*). The WLAN, Bluetooth and 3G buttons are not featured in the *Windows 8* system.

Control Center

Silent Mode

Click the **Silent Mode** button toggles silent mode on/off. You can use **Silent Mode** to reduce power consumption and fan noise. Note that the **Silent Mode** effected by the **Power Mode** selected.

-  Silent Mode is **OFF**
-  Silent Mode is **On**

Note **Silent Mode** may reduce computer performance.

Caps Lock/Scroll Lock/ Number Lock

Click the button to toggle the appropriate lock mode.

Appendix C: Video Driver Controls

The basic settings for configuring the LCD are outlined in “*Video Features*” on [page 1 - 26](#). For information on the *Windows 8* operating system see [Appendix E](#).

Video Driver Installation

Make sure you install the drivers in the order indicated in [Table 4 - 1, on page 4 - 3](#).

1. Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User’s Manual* disc and click **Install Drivers** (button).
2. Click **2.Install VGA Driver > Yes**.
3. Click **Next > Yes > Next > Next**.
4. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.

Note: After installing the video driver go to the **Display** control panel to adjust the video settings to the highest resolution.

Dynamic Video Memory Technology

Intel® DVMT automatically and dynamically allocates as much (up to **1748MB**) system memory (RAM) as needed to the integrated video system (**the video driver must be installed**). DVMT returns whatever memory is no longer needed to the operating system.



Video Card Options

Note that card types, specifications and drivers are subject to continual updates and changes. Check with your distributor/supplier for the latest details on video cards supported.

DVMT Notes

DVMT is not local video memory.

DVMT will not function in MS-DOS. DOS uses the legacy memory indicated.



Application Mode

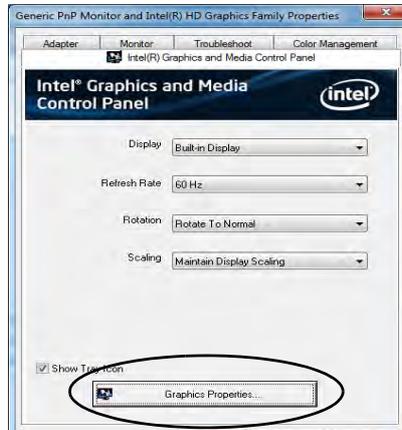
Note that all figures pictured, and instructions outlined here are based on the **Advanced Application Mode**.

Intel® Graphics & Media Control Panel

Advanced video configuration options are provided by the **Intel® Graphics and Media Control Panel**. To access the control panel:

1. Click **Advanced settings** in the **Screen Resolution** control panel in **Windows**.
 2. Click the **Intel(R)...** tab and click **Graphics Properties** (button).
- OR
3. Right-click the desktop and select **Graphics Properties** from the menu.
- OR
4. Double-click the **Intel(R) G&M** control panel in **Windows**.
 5. Choose the application mode (**Basic, Advanced or Wizard**) required (see sidebar).

Figure C - 1
Intel® G&M
Control Panel



You may make changes to any of the graphics properties by clicking the appropriate menu tab on the left of the menu and adjusting the settings on the right.



Options & Support

Click **Options & Support** and select an item from the sub-menu to bring up the help and support topics.

You will need to be connected to the Internet to access the key resource links.

Multiple Display

At least one other display must be attached in order to view multiple display selection options.

Figure C - 2

Intel® G&M
Control Panel Tabs



Function Key Combination

You can use the **Fn + F7** key combination to toggle through the display options:

- Notebook Only
- External Display Only
- Notebook + External Display

Make sure you give the displays enough time to refresh.

Note that HDMI supports video and audio signals.

Table C - 1
Display Modes

Display Devices & Options

Besides the built-in LCD you can also use an external monitor/flat panel display/TV connected to the external monitor port or to the HDMI-Out port (High-Definition Multimedia Interface) as your display device. The table below outlines the display options.



Attaching Displays

When you first attach an external display you may find that the desktop does not occupy the full screen area. Use either the display's auto adjust/configure controls, or the Intel(R) G&M control panel to configure the full screen display.

Intel Display Mode	Description
Single Display	One of the connected displays is used as the display device
Clone Displays	Both connected displays output the same view and may be configured independently
Extended Desktop	Both connected displays are treated as separate devices, and act as a virtual desktop

Attaching Other Displays

If you prefer to use a monitor or flat panel display, connect it to the external monitor port or HDMI-Out port on the left of the computer.

To Clone Displays:

1. Attach your display to the external monitor port or HDMI-Out port, and turn it on.
2. Go to the **Intel(R) G&M** control panel and click **Display > Multiple Displays**.
3. Click **Operating Mode** and select **Clone Displays** from the menu.
4. Click **Apply**, and **OK** to confirm the settings change.
5. You can switch the **Primary/Secondary Display** from the menu.



Multiple Display

At least one other display must be attached in order to view **Multiple Display** selection options.

General Settings

Click **General Settings** to access settings the options for any attached display.

Figure C - 3
Display > Multiple Displays (Clone)

Video Driver Controls

Display Settings Extended Desktop

You can have different Colors, Screen Area and Monitor Refresh Rates for each display device **provided your monitor can support them.**

You can drag the monitor icons to match the physical layout of your displays. Icons and programs may also be dragged between the displays.

To Enable Extended Desktop:

1. Attach your display to the external monitor port or HDMI-Out port, and turn it on.
2. Go to the **Intel(R) G&M** control panel and click **Display > Multiple Displays**.
3. Click **Operating Mode** and select **Extended Desktop** from the menu.
4. Click **Apply**, and **OK** to confirm the settings change.



Click the appropriate monitor icon and drag it to match the physical arrangement you wish to use (e.g. the secondary display may be extended left/right/above/below the primary display).

Click **General Settings** to make any adjustments required.

Figure C - 4

Display > Multiple Displays (Extended)

Display Profiles

You can save display settings to be loaded at any time.

1. Go to the **Intel(R) G&M** control panel and click **Display**.
2. Configure the General Settings, Multiple Displays, Color Enhancement, Custom Resolution and Monitor/TV Settings to your preferences.
3. Click **Apply**, and **OK** to confirm the settings change.
4. Click the **Save** button at the top of the General Settings, Multiple Displays or Color Enhancement menus (under **Display Profiles**).
5. Type a name for the **Profile** and click **OK**.
6. The **Profile** will be listed under **Display Profiles**.
7. Select the profile from the pull-down menu and click **Apply**, and **OK** to confirm the settings change.

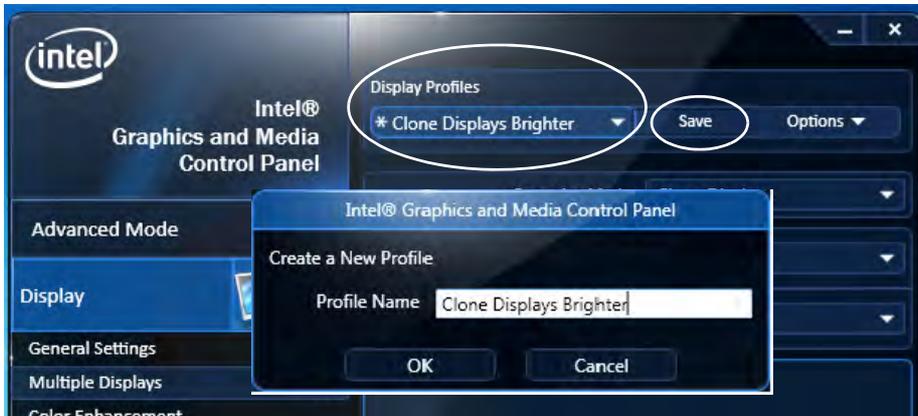


Figure C - 5
Intel® G&M
Profiles



Function Key Combination

You can use the **Fn + F7** key combination to toggle through the display options:

- Notebook Only
- External Display Only
- Notebook + External Display

Make sure you give the displays enough time to refresh.

Note that HDMI supports video and audio signals.

Configuring an External Display in Windows 7

You can also use the **Screen Resolution** control panel in *Windows 7* to configure an external display.

1. Attach your display to the external monitor port or HDMI-Out port, and turn it on.
2. Go to the **Screen resolution** control panel (see *“Video Features” on page 1 - 26*).
3. Click the **Detect** button.
4. The computer will then detect any attached displays.

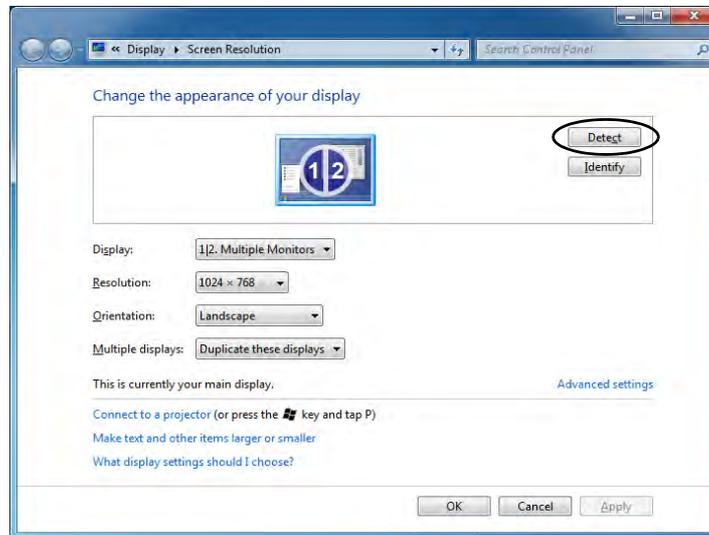


Figure C - 6
Screen Resolution
Multiple Displays
(Win 7)

5. You can configure the displays from the **Multiple Displays** menu.

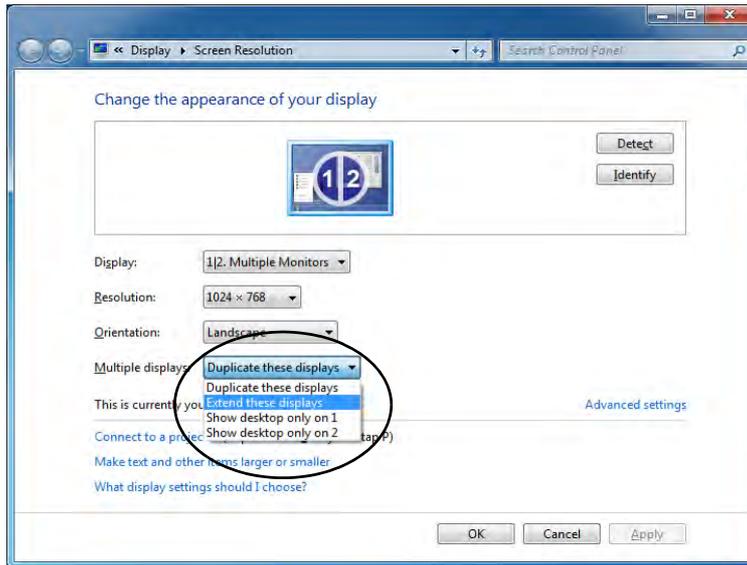


Figure C - 7
Screen Resolution
Multiple Display
Options
(Win 7)

- Duplicate these displays - Shows an exact copy of the main display desktop on the other display(s)
- Extend these displays - Treats both connected displays as **separate** devices
- Show desktop only on 1/2 - Only one of your displays is used.

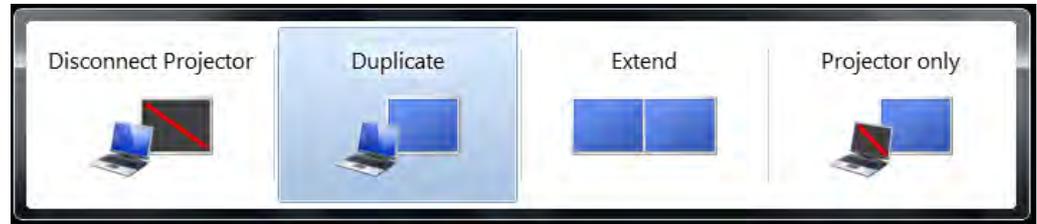
Video Driver Controls

Using the Windows Logo Key + P Key Combination to Switch Displays

You can also use the  + **P** key combination to quickly change display configuration and modes (this is particularly useful when attaching a projector) in *Windows 7*.

1. Attach your display to the external monitor port or HDMI-Out port, and turn it on.
2. Press the  + **P** key combination.
3. An on-screen menu will pop up.
4. Use the cursor keys (or  + **P**) to select the appropriate configuration from the menu, and press Enter to confirm the selection.

Figure C - 8
 + P Display
Configuration
Selection
(Win 7)

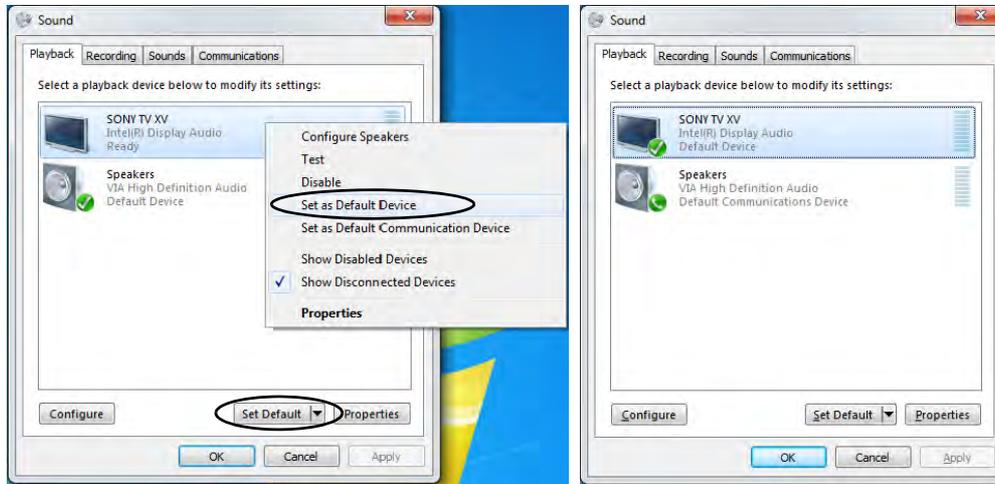


You can also use the **Display Switch**  button in the **Control Center** to access the menu and select the appropriate attached display mode.

HDMI Audio Configuration

HDMI (High-Definition Multimedia Interface) carries both **audio** and video signals. In some cases it will be necessary to go to the **Sound** control panel and manually configure the HDMI audio output as per the instructions below.

1. Click **Start**, and click **Control Panel** (or point to **Settings** and click **Control Panel**).
2. Click **Sound** (Hardware and Sound) and click **Playback** (tab)
3. Depending on your display, the playback device may be selected, however in some cases you may need to select the audio device and click **Set Default** (button).
4. Double-click the device to access the control panel tabs illustrated overleaf.



Volume Indicator

Click the taskbar volume indicator  when an HDMI device is selected, and you will note that the icon at the top of the volume level indicator has changed.

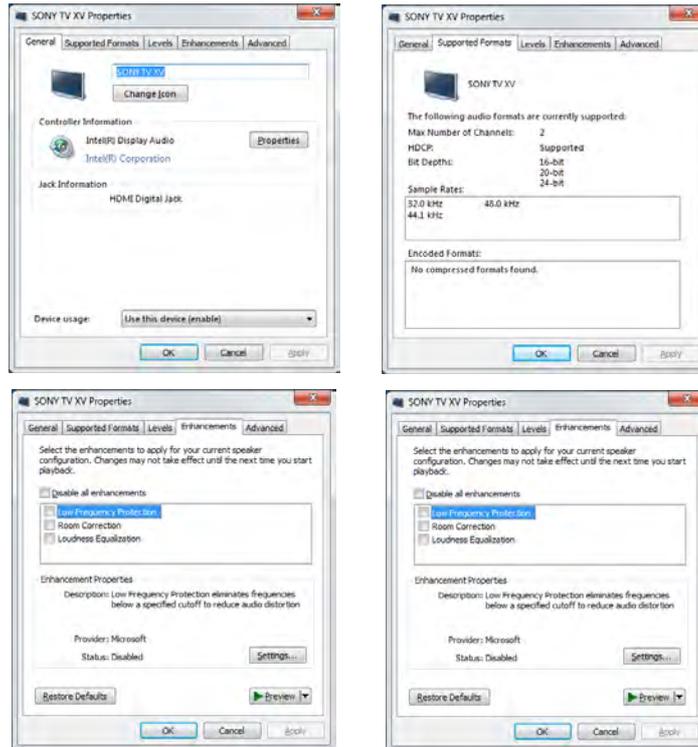


Figure C - 9
Sound - HDMI
Device (set Default)

Video Driver Controls

5. Double-click the connected HDMI device (or right-click and select **Properties**) to adjust the HDMI settings from the control panel tabs.
6. Click **OK** to close the control panel (see notes overleaf).

Figure C - 10
HDMI Device Properties



HDMI Notes

- Connect a device with HDMI support to the HDMI-Out port **BEFORE** attempting to play audio/video sources through the device.
- To play audio sources through your external display's (TV or LCD) speakers you will need to go to the audio configuration control panel on the display and configure the audio input accordingly (see your display device manual).

HDMI Video Configuration

1. Connect an HDMI cable from the HDMI-Out port to your external display.
2. Configure your external display as per the instructions in *“Attaching Other Displays” on page C - 5*.
3. Set up your external display (TV or LCD) for HDMI input (see your display device manual).
4. You can now play video/audio sources through your external display.



Other Applications

If you are using a third party application to play DVDs etc. from any attached DVD device, you will need to consult the application's documentation to see the appropriate audio configuration (the application must support digital to analog translation).

Appendix D: Specifications



Latest Specification Information

The specifications listed in this Appendix are correct at the time of going to press. Certain items (particularly processor types/speeds and CD/DVD device types) may be changed, updated or delayed due to the manufacturer's release schedule. Check with your distributor/supplier for details.

Specifications

Processors		Display
Intel® Pentium® B980 (2.4GHz) 2M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W	Intel® Celeron® B810 (1.60GHz) 2M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W	Model A: 14.0" / 35.56cm HD (1366 * 768), 16:9 Backlit Panel
Intel® Pentium® B970 (2.3GHz) 2M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W	Intel® Celeron® B730 (1.80GHz) 1.5M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W	Model B: 15.6" / 39.62cm HD (1366 * 768) / HD+ (1600 * 900)16:9 Backlit Panel
Intel® Pentium® B960 (2.2GHz) 2M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W	Intel® Celeron® B720 (1.70GHz) 1.5M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W	Model C: 17.3" / 43.94cm HD+ (1600 * 900), FHD (1920 * 1080), 16:9 Backlit Panel
Intel® Pentium® B950 (2.1GHz) 2M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W	Core Logic	Video Controller
Intel® Pentium® B840 (1.90GHz) 2M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W	Mobile Intel® HM70 Express Chipset	Intel® HD Graphics (GPU is Dependent on Processor):
Intel® Celeron® B820 (1.70GHz) 2M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W	Memory	Dynamic Frequency Intel Dynamic Video Memory Technology up to 1.7GB Microsoft DirectX®10 Compatible
Intel® Celeron® B815 (1.60GHz) 2M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W	Dual Channel DDRIII (DDR3) Two 204 Pin SO-DIMM sockets supporting DDR3 1333MHz / 1600MHz (real operational frequency depends on the FSB of the processor) Memory Expandable up to 8GB (using 1GB/2GB/4GB SO-DIMM Modules)	

<p>Storage</p> <p>One Changeable 12.7mm(h) Super Multi/ Blu-ray Combo Optical Device Drive with SATA Interface (Factory Option)</p> <p>One Changeable 2.5" / 9.5 mm (h) HDD with SATA (Serial) Interface</p> <p>Dummy Optical Device Drive (Factory Option - for some Model designs in this series)</p>	<p>Audio</p> <p>High Definition Audio Interface Built-In Microphone 2 * Built-In Speakers</p> <p>Interface</p> <p>One USB 2.0 Port Two USB 3.0 Ports One External Monitor Port One HDMI-Out (High-Definition Multimedia Interface) Port (with HDCP) One Headphone-Out Jack One Microphone-In Jack One RJ-45 LAN Jack One DC-In Jack</p>	<p>Slot</p> <p>Models A & B: Two Mini-Card Slots with PCIe & USB Interfaces: Slot 1 for WLAN Module Slot 2 for 3G Module (Factory Option)</p> <p>Model C: One Mini-Card Slot with PCIe & USB Interfaces: Slot 1 for WLAN Module</p>
<p>Keyboard & Pointing Device</p> <p>Built-in Touchpad with Multi-Gesture Functionality</p> <p>Model A Only: Isolated OR Floating A4 Size Keyboard (Design Style Dependent) Three Instant Buttons: WWW/ E-Mail / Silent OR WWW/ E-Mail / WLAN ON/OFF (Design Style Dependent)</p> <p>Models B & C: Isolated A4 Full Size Keyboard with Numeric Keypad</p>	<p>Card Reader</p> <p>Embedded Multi-In-1 Card Reader</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - MMC/ RS MMC - SD/ Mini SD / SDHC/ SDXC - MS/ MS Pro/ MS Duo <p>Note: Some of these cards require PC adapters that are usually supplied with the cards.</p>	<p>Communication</p> <p>Built-In 10/100/1000Mb Base-TX Ethernet LAN</p> <p>Intel® Centrino® Wireless-N 2230 2*2 (802.11 b/g/n) Half Mini-Card PCIe WLAN + Bluetooth Combo Module (Factory Option)</p> <p>Intel® Centrino® Wireless-N 135 (1*1 802.11 b/g/n+) Half Mini-Card PCIe WLAN & Bluetooth Combo Module (Factory Option)</p> <p>(Continued overleaf)</p>



Specifications

3rd Party Combo WLAN (802.11b/g/n) and **Bluetooth v4.0+HS** Half Mini-Card Module with PCIe Interface (**Factory Option**)

3rd Party WLAN 802.11b/g/n Half Mini-Card Module (**Factory Option**)

Model A:

300K / 1.3M Pixel or 2.0M HD **PC Video Camera Module** with USB interface (**Factory Option**)

Models B & C:

2.0M HD **PC Video Camera Module** with USB interface (**Factory Option**)

Models A & B Only:

UMTS/HSPDA **OR** UMTS/HSPDA+ based **3G Module** with Mini-Card Interface (**Factory Option**)

Quad-band GSM/GPRS (850 MHz, 900 MHz, 1800 MHz, 1900 MHz)

UMTS WCDMA FDD (2100 MHz)

Note that UMTS modes CAN NOT be used in North America

Power Management

Supports Wake on LAN
Supports Wake on USB

Power

Full Range AC/DC Adapter
AC input 100 - 240V, 50 - 60Hz,
DC Output 19V, 3.42A or 18.5V, 3.5A (**65 Watts**)

Removable 6 Cell Smart Lithium Ion Battery Pack 48.84WH

Removable 6 Cell Smart Lithium Ion Battery Pack 62.16WH (**Factory Option**)

Indicators

LED Indicators - Power/Suspend, Battery, HDD/ODD, Bluetooth/Wireless LAN, Num Lock, Caps Lock, Scroll Lock, CCD

Model B & C Computers:

Camera LED located on camera module

For Model A Computers:

Camera LED located on Power/Suspend LED

For **some Model A designs** in this series: Power/Suspend, Battery, HDD/ODD, Bluetooth/Wireless LAN

Operating System

Windows® 7 with Service Pack 1
Windows® 8

BIOS

48Mb SPI Flash ROM
AMI BIOS

Security

Security (Kensington® Type) Lock Slot
BIOS Password
Trusted Platform Module V1.2

Features

IMR (Injected Molded Resin) LCD Back Covers (For **some Model designs** in this series)

Painted Style (For **some Model designs** in this series)

Magic Of Film Art II Changeable LCD Back Covers (For **some Model designs** in this series)

Environmental Spec

Temperature

Operating: 5°C - 35°C

Non-Operating: -20°C - 60°C

Relative Humidity

Operating: 20% - 80%

Non-Operating: 10% - 90%

Dimensions & Weight

Model A (Design Style Dependent):

340mm(w) * 238mm(d) * 26.25-34.7mm(h)

2.2 kg with 48.84WH Battery & ODD

OR

341mm(w) * 238.5mm(d) * 16-34mm (h)

2.2 kg with 48.84WH Battery & ODD

OR

340mm(w) * 238mm(d) * 12-30.2mm(h)

2.15 kg with 48.84WH Battery & ODD

Model B (Design Style Dependent):

374mm(w) * 250mm(d) * 14.3-34.1mm(h)

2.3 kg with 48.84WH Battery & ODD

OR

374mm(w) * 250mm(d) * 20-37.2mm(h)

2.6 kg with 48.84WH Battery & ODD

Model C:

413mm(w) * 270mm(d) * 14-40.5mm(h)

2.9 kg with ODD & 48.84WH Battery

Specifications

D

Appendix E: Windows 8

Overview

This Appendix contains information (including control panel information, driver installation etc.) for users of the *Windows 8 OS*.

You can refer to the main manual for details of drivers required, audio & video information, BIOS, modules etc. However any information specific to *Windows 8* will be included in this Appendix, as well as details on how to navigate the *Windows 8 Metro User Interface* to access the applications, control panels, taskbar etc.



Windows 7/8 OS

In order to run *Windows 7 or 8 (32 Bit)* without limitations or decreased performance, your computer requires a minimum **1GB** of system memory (RAM), however if you are running *Windows 7 or 8 (64 bit)* your computer requires a minimum **2GB** of system memory (RAM).

Windows 8 Start Screen & Desktop

The Apps, control panels, utilities and programs within *Windows 8* are accessed from the **Metro** user interface's **Start screen** and/or **Windows Desktop**. The **Desktop** (which runs as an app within the Start screen) can be accessed from the **Desktop** item in the Start screen (or by using the **Windows Logo Key**  + **D** key combination).

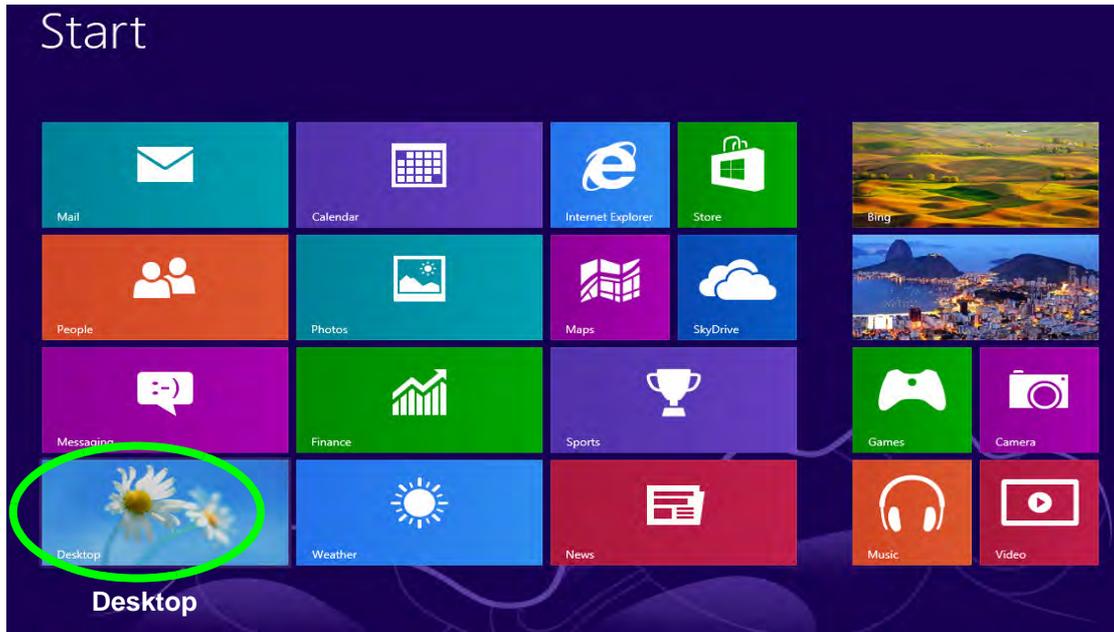


Figure E - 1 - Windows Start Screen

Apps & Tiles

The **Windows 8** Start screen will contain a number of Apps, and many more will be installed as you add more applications etc. Not all of these apps can fit on one screen so you will often need use the **slider** at the bottom of the screen in order to view all the necessary apps.

Accessing Pinning/Unpinning All Apps

You can add and remove the tiles for apps and control panels in the Start screen. Right-click on a blank area of the Metro UI **Start** screen and you will see the **All Apps** icon. Click the **All Apps** icon to display all the installed applications etc. Right-click any icon to bring up the menu at the bottom of the screen. You can then click the appropriate icon to **pin the app** to (or unpin from) the **Start** screen, or to the **taskbar** in the **Desktop application**.



Figure E - 2 - All Apps

Windows 8

Desktop Application

When the **Desktop app** is running (click the app in the Start screen or use the **Windows Logo Key**  + **D** key combination) you can use lower left hot corner to switch between the Start screen and the **Windows Desktop**. To do so move your mouse to hover over the bottom left corner of the screen and click the pop-up.

When you move to the lower left hot corner in the Start screen itself it will take you back to your most recently used app.

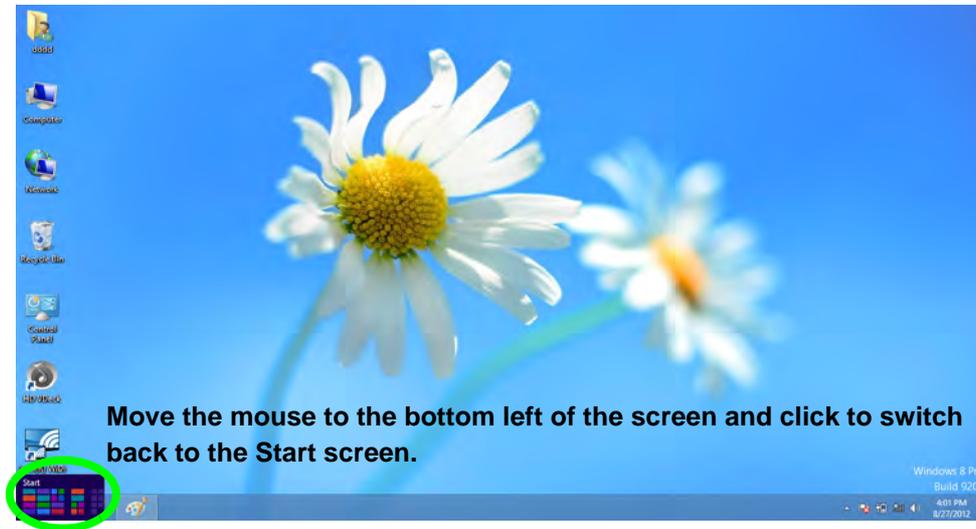


Figure E - 3 - Desktop

When the Desktop app is running you can right-click the lower left hot corner (or use the **Windows Logo Key**  + **X** key combination) to bring up an advanced context menu of useful features such as Control Panel, Programs and Features, Power Options, Task Manager, Search, Windows Explorer, Command Prompt, Device Manager and Network Connections etc.

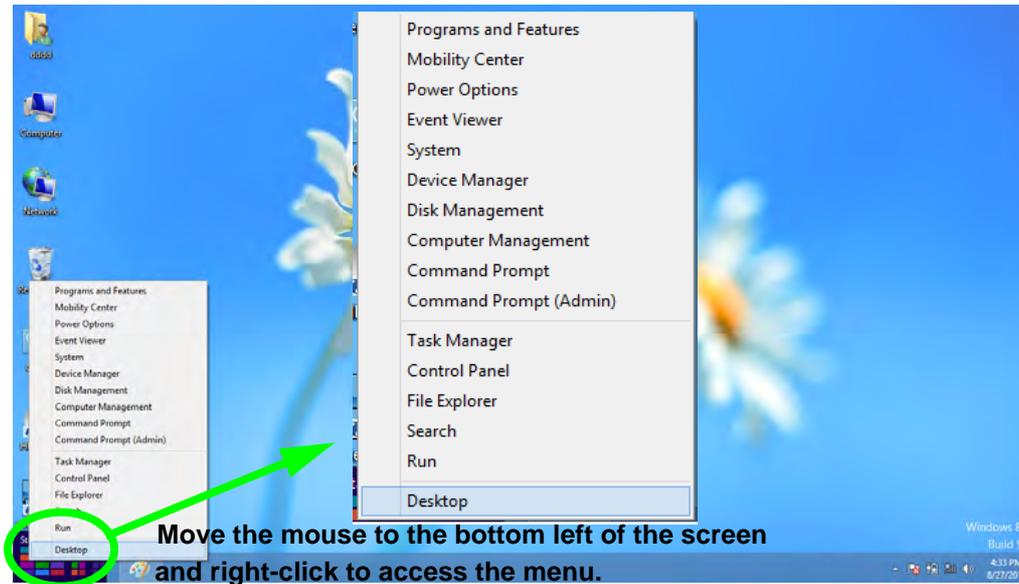


Figure E - 4 - Advanced Context Menu (Right-Click lower left hot corner)



Display Most Recently Used Apps

If you are in the **Start** screen, **Desktop** or an app you can move your mouse to the upper left corner of the screen to get back to the most recently used app.

To view all the most recently used apps hover over the top left of the screen and then move the mouse down along the left side of the screen to display the list.

Windows 8

Windows 8 Charms Bar

The right side of the screen displays the *Windows 8 Charms Bar*. The Charms Bar contains the **Search**, **Share**, **Start**, **Devices** and **Settings** menus. To access up the Charms Bar move the cursor to the upper or lower right corners of the screen, and then hover over one of the items in the Charms Bar to activate it (the bar will be black when it is active), or use the **Windows Logo Key**  + **C** key combination.

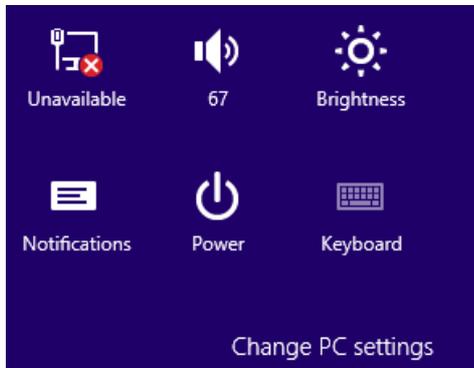


Figure E - 5 - Start Screen with Charms Bar

E - 6 Windows 8 Start Screen & Desktop

Charms Bar Items

- **Search** : You can search for any file, application, apps and control panel settings with instantaneous results.
- **Share** : This button is used to share information with people via mail or social networks.
- **Start** : Click to bring up the Start Menu (the same function as pressing the Windows Logo Key or clicking the bottom left of the screen).
- **Devices** : Click this button to change connected peripheral device settings e.g. an external display.
- **Settings** : This button gives instant access to the computer settings, such as Network, Audio, Brightness, Notifications, Power and Keyboard (click **Change PC Settings** to activate the PC Settings menu).





Charms Bar - TouchPad Access

To quick access the **Charms Bar** using the TouchPad:

1. Place your finger **off** the TouchPad (slightly to the right of the pad resting on the computer).
2. Move your finger across to the left on to the TouchPad.
3. The Charms Bar will then pop-up.

Figure E - 6 - Settings Menu

Windows 8 Control Panel

In many instances throughout this manual you will see an instruction to open the **Control Panel**. The Control Panel is much the same as that in *Windows 7*, however it can be accessed in a number of ways in *Windows 8*.

- Click **Search** in the **Windows Charms Bar** (see previous page) and the search pane will pop out. Type *Control Panel* and select it from the results to the left.



Figure E - 7 - Search (Control Panel)

- Click on **Computer** in the **Start** screen, click on **Computer** in the top menu and select **Open Control Panel** from the ribbon.

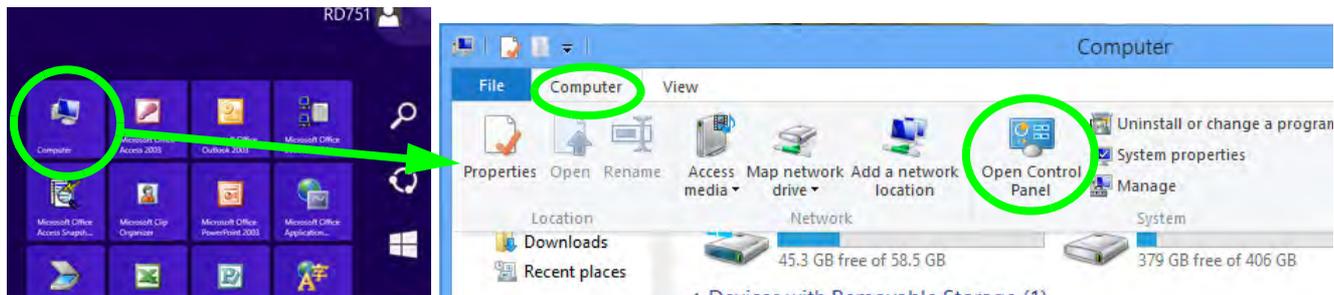


Figure E - 8 - Open Control Panel (Computer)

- When in the **Desktop** app (this does not apply to the Start screen) click on **Settings** in the **Windows Charms Bar** and select **Control Panel** from the menu.

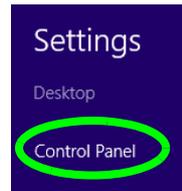


Figure E - 9 - Settings Charms Bar (Desktop App Only)

- **Right-click on a blank area of the Metro UI Start screen**, click the **All Apps** icon and click Control Panel.

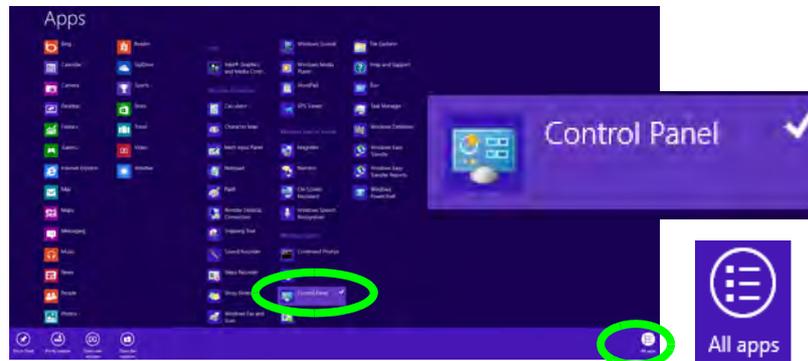


Figure E - 10 - All Apps - Control Panel

Windows 8

- Right-click the lower left hot corner to bring up the menu and select Control Panel (see *Figure E - 4 on page E - 5*).



Keyboard Shortcut to Control Panel

You can also use keyboard shortcuts to access the Control Panel. Press the **Windows logo key**  and **X** to bring up the context menu, and then press **P** to bring up the Control Panel. Alternatively press the **Windows logo key**  and **R** to bring up the **Run** dialog box, and then type “**Control Panel**” and press Enter to access the Control Panel.

Windows 8 Taskbar

In many instances throughout this manual you will see an instruction to access the **notification area of the taskbar**. In *Windows 8* the taskbar is accessed from the **Desktop** application. If you are in the Start screen you will need to click the Desktop app to switch to the Desktop.

The taskbar is displayed in much the same way as it was in *Windows 7*, and you can see the notification area of the taskbar in the bottom right of the screen. Some of the Control Panels and applications referred to during the course of this manual can be accessed from here.



Figure E - 11 - Desktop Taskbar

You can pin/unpin apps to/from the taskbar in much the same way as you can to the Start screen (see *“[Accessing Pining/Unpinning All Apps](#)” on page E - 3*).

LED Indicators

The LED indicators on the computer display helpful information about the current status of the computer.

Icon	Color	Description
	Orange	DC Power is Plugged In
	Green	The Computer is On
	Blinking Green	The Computer is in Sleep Mode
	Blinking Orange	The PC Camera is In Use (for 14.0" / 35.56cm Model A computers only)
	Orange	The Battery is Charging
	Green	The Battery is Fully Charged
	Blinking Orange	The Battery Has Reached Critically Low Power Status

Table E - 1 - LED Power Indicators

Icon	Color	Description
	Green	The (optional) Wireless LAN Module is Powered On
	Orange	Win 7 - The (optional) Bluetooth Module is Powered On Win 8 - The (optional) Bluetooth Module is Installed (<i>this is not a power on/off indicator in Windows 8</i>)
	Green	Hard Disk Activity
	Green	Number Lock Activated
	Green	Caps Lock Activated
	Green	Scroll Lock Activated

Table E - 2 - LED Status Indicators

Keyboard - Windows 8

The main difference between the *Windows 7* & **Windows 8** keyboards is in the function of the **Windows Logo Key** & **Menu/Application Key** (in the **Start** screen), otherwise the keyboard functions are identical (see *“Keyboard - Model A” on page 1 - 13/“Keyboard - Models B & C” on page 1 - 14*).



Figure E - 12 - Keyboard - Model A

The function/hot key indicators function in the same manner as outlined for *Windows 7* on *“Function/Hot Key Indicators” on page 1 - 15*. However the indicators work under the **Desktop** App (see *“Desktop Application” on page E - 4*) and not under the **Start** screen.



Windows Logo Keyboard Shortcut

Use the Windows logo key  + **D** key combination to switch between the **Start** screen and **Windows Desktop** (see *Table E - 3* overleaf for further information).

Menu/Application Keyboard Shortcut

When the **Desktop** app is running you can use the **Menu/Application** key  on the keyboard to display the context menu as per a mouse right-click. In the **Start** screen this function is useful to quickly display the **All Apps** icon.

Keyboard Shortcuts

The following Windows Logo Key (Winkey) keyboard shortcuts are useful for navigation/operation in *Windows 8*.

Windows Logo  Key +	Description
Tap Winkey	Toggle between the Start screen and the foremost running app or the Windows Desktop
C	Display Charms menu
D	Switch to the Windows Desktop and toggle show Desktop
E	Switch to the Windows desktop and launch Windows Explorer with Computer displayed
F	Display file Search
I	Open the Settings charm
K	Open the Connect charm
L	Lock the computer and display the Lock screen
P	Display the Second Screen menu (see Figure E - 14 on page E - 16)
R	Switch to the Windows Desktop and display the Run dialog box
Z	Access the App Bar (see Figure E - 4 on page E - 5)

Table E - 3 - Keyboard Shortcuts

Function/Hot Key Indicators & Control Center

The function/hot key indicators and Control Center function in the same manner as outlined for *Windows 7* in “*Function/Hot Key Indicators*” on page 1 - 15 and “*Control Center*” on page 1 - 16. However both of these functions work under the **Desktop** app (see “*Desktop Application*” on page E - 4) and not under the Start screen, and the Control Center does not feature the wireless/Bluetooth buttons and Airplane Mode etc.



Control Center

Click on any button to turn any of the modules (e.g. Touch-Pad, Camera) on/off.

Click on the power conservation modes to switch between Performance, Balanced or Energy Star modes (see page 3 - 10). To remove the Power Conservation Modes screen just click in a blank area of the icon or press a key on the keyboard.

Click on the buttons (or just click and hold the mouse button) to adjust the slider for Brightness/Volume.

Click on Display Switch and click to choose a display mode from the menu (see page C - 10).



Figure E - 13 - Control Center

Video Features

You can switch display devices, and configure display options, from the **Display** control panel (in **Appearances and Personalization**) in *Windows 8* in the same manner as *Windows 7* running the **Desktop** app (see “*Desktop Application*” on page E - 4 and *Appendix C*). In *Windows 8* it is possible to quickly configure external displays from the **Devices** menu item in the **Charms Bar** (see “*Windows 8 Charms Bar*” on page E - 6).

To Configure Displays from Devices (Charms Bar):

1. Attach your display to the appropriate port, and turn it on.
2. Go to the **Charms Bar** and select **Devices**.
3. Click **Second Screen**.
4. Click on any one of the options from the menu to select Duplicate, Extend or a Single display.

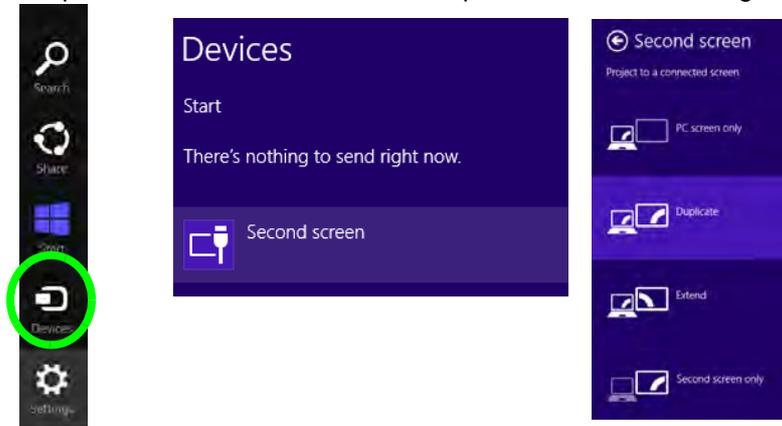


Figure E - 14 - Second Screen (Devices)

Power Options

Power Options can be accessed from the Control Panel in the same manner as *Windows 7* from the Desktop app. The **Power** item in **Settings** in the **Charms Bar** in *Windows 8* may be used to **Shut down**, **Restart** or send the computer to **Sleep**.

Shut Down, Restart or Sleep

1. Go to the **Charms Bar** and click **Settings**.
2. Click **Power** .
3. Select **Sleep**, **Shut Down** or **Restart**.

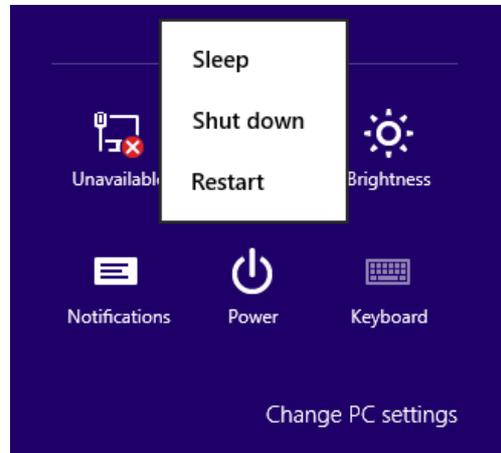


Figure E - 15 - Power (Settings)

Windows 8

Ctrl + Alt + Delete Key Combination

You can use the **CTRL + ALT + DEL** key combination from almost any of the *Windows 8* interfaces/apps to bring up a full-screen displaying **Lock**, **Switch User**, **Log off**, **Change a password** and **Task Manager** options. If you click the **Power** icon in the lower right corner of the screen a power management option menu appears to display **Sleep**, **Shut down**, and **Restart**.

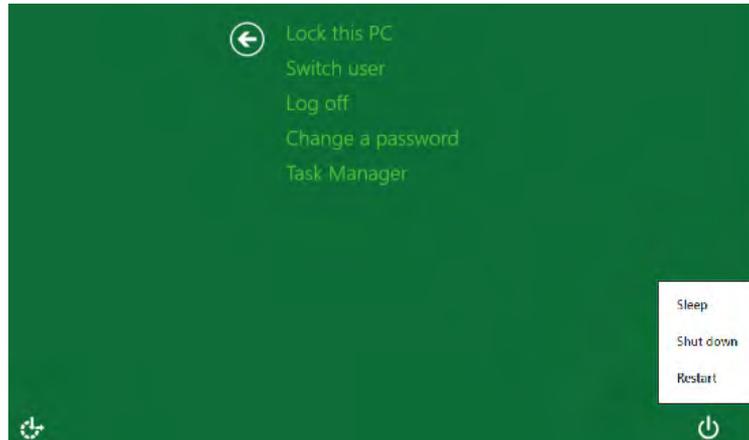


Figure E - 16 - CTRL + ALT + DEL Menu

To fully control all the power options (including Hibernate mode) go to the **Power Options** control panel and configure the power button, sleep button and lid (see *Figure E - 17 on page E - 19*) to perform the function selected.

E - 18 Power Options

Wake On LAN Settings

If you require your computer to wake up from network activity in *Windows 8* then make sure that the computer is either in **Sleep** or **Hibernate**. The power/sleep button (**Fn + F4** key combo) and closed lid may be set to send the computer in to a power-saving state. Click **Choose what the power buttons do** on the left menu in **Power Options** to bring up the menu.

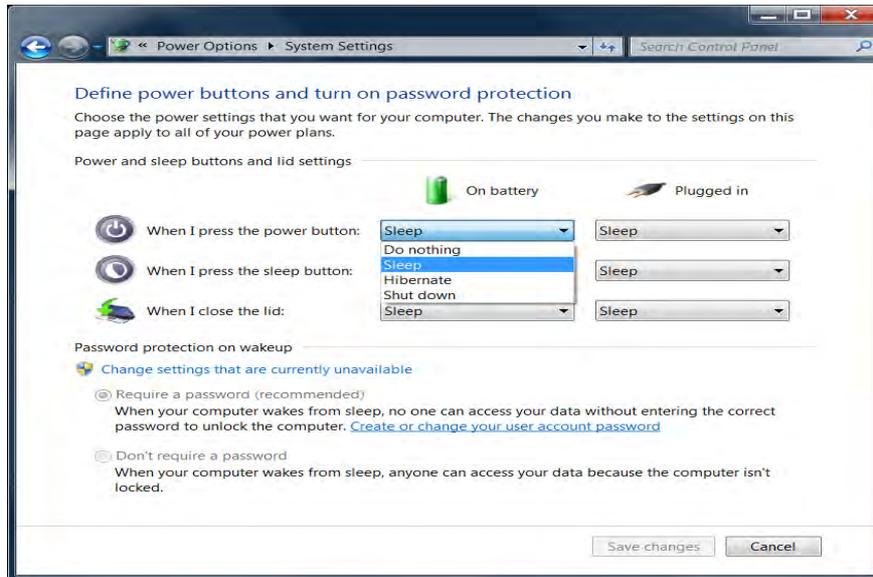


Figure E - 17 - Power Options Define Power Buttons



Wake On LAN Support (Windows 8)

Wake-On-LAN is only supported from **Sleep** or **Hibernate** states in *Windows 8*.

Wake-On-LAN is not supported from Shut-down states in *Windows 8*.



Screen Resolution for Metro Style Apps (Windows 8)

The minimum resolution in which Metro style apps will run is **1024x768**.

The minimum resolution required to support all the features of Windows 8 (including multitasking with snap) is **1366x768**.

These specs are the minimum screen resolution that supports all the features of Windows 8 on a useful physical size.

Running Metro UI Apps

To run Apps in the Metro UI in *Windows 8* you will need to check that the **Screen Resolution** and **User Account Control Settings** are compatible with the system requirements:

Screen Resolution Settings

1. Switch to the Windows Desktop (click the App or use the Windows logo key  + D key combination).
2. Right-click a blank area of the Windows Desktop and select **Screen Resolution**.
3. Adjust the **Resolution** to make sure that it is at least **1024 * 768**, although preferably **1366 * 768** or above (see sidebar).

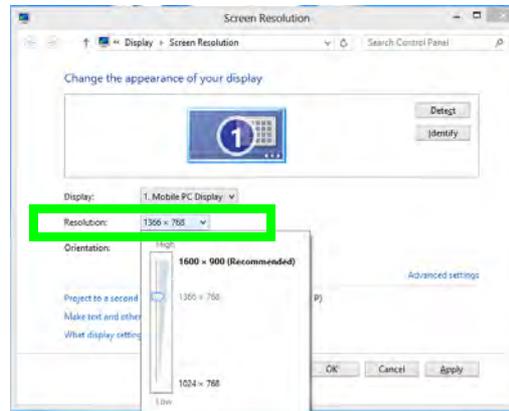


Figure E - 18 - Screen Resolution

User Account Control Settings

If your computer meets the minimum screen resolution requirements, and still you can't run Metro Apps, then that you have to check the status of **User Account Control** (UAC). Metro Apps may fail to open when the UAC is turned off. To check whether the UAC is on or off, follow the instructions below.

1. Open the **Control Panel** (see *“Windows 8 Control Panel” on page E - 8*).
2. Click on **User Accounts** and then click on **Change User Account Control settings** (or click **System and Security** and click **Change User Account Control Settings** under **Action Center**).
3. If the slider is in the **Never notify** position, then the UAC is disabled.
4. To enable or turn on the UAC, move the slider to **Always notify** or **Notify me when apps try to make changes to my computer (default)** position, and then click **OK**.

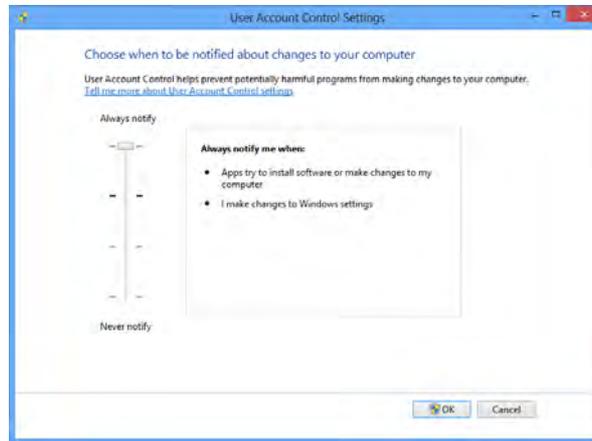


Figure E - 19 - User Account Control

Drivers & Utilities

Make sure you install all the drivers and utilities for your system. Follow the instructions in *Chapter 4 “Drivers & Utilities” on page 4 - 1*/*“Modules & Options” on page 7 - 1* for installing all the basic system drivers and module drivers for *Windows 7 & 8*.

However note that the **USB 3.0 and 3G drivers/applications are not required for Windows 8**, and that the **PC Camera driver is only required for 14.0” / 35.56cm Model A computers**.

Driver Installation (Windows 8)

1. Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc into the computer's DVD drive.
2. Click the message "Tap to choose what happens with this disc."
3. Click **Run autorun.exe**.



Figure E - 20 - Autorun Driver Installation Disc

4. Click **Install Drivers** (button), or **Option Drivers** (button) to access the **Optional** driver menu.
5. Check the driver installation order from [Table E - 4, on page E - 24](#) (the drivers must be installed in this order) which is the same as that listed in the **Drivers Installer** menu below.
6. Click to select the driver you wish to install, (you should note down the drivers as you install them).
7. Follow the instructions for each individual driver installation procedure as listed on the appropriate pages.

Windows 8

Win 7 SP1/Win 8 Driver	Page #	Win 7 SP1/Win 8 Driver	Page #
<i>Chipset</i>	<i>Page 4 - 6</i>	<i>PC Camera Module</i> (see page <i>E - 25</i>) (Only 14.0" / 35.56cm Model A computers require a camera driver for Windows 8)	<i>Page 7 - 2</i>
<i>Video (VGA)</i>	<i>Page 4 - 6</i>	<i>Wireless LAN Module</i> (see page <i>E - 30</i>)	<i>Page 7 - 10</i>
<i>LAN</i>	<i>Page 4 - 6</i>	<i>Bluetooth & WLAN Combo Module</i> (see page <i>E - 37</i>)	<i>Page 7 - 31</i>
<i>CardReader</i>	<i>Page 4 - 6</i>	<i>The USB 3G driver is not required for Windows 8</i> (see page <i>E - 42</i>)	
<i>Touchpad</i>	<i>Page 4 - 6</i>	<i>Trusted Platform Module</i>	<i>Page 7 - 64</i>
<i>Hot Key</i>	<i>Page 4 - 7</i>	<i>Intel Rapid Storage Technology</i> (required for hard disks in AHCI mode)	<i>Page 7 - 78</i>
<i>The USB 3.0 driver is not required for Windows 8</i>		<i>All drivers provided are for Windows 7 with Service Pack 1 or Windows 8.</i>	
<i>MEI Driver</i>	<i>Page 4 - 7</i>		
<i>Audio</i>	<i>Page 4 - 7</i>		

Table E - 4 - Driver Installation

Note that you need to install both the WLAN & Bluetooth drivers for the Intel and 3rd party WLAN & Bluetooth Combo modules.

PC Camera (Windows 8)

Use the **Fn + F10** key combination (see *“Function/Hot Key Indicators” on page 1 - 15*) or **Control Center button** to toggle power to the PC Camera module.

A PC Camera driver is only required if you have a **Model A** computer with a **14"/35.56cm screen** (see *“PC Camera Driver Installation” on page 7 - 4*). **Model B & C** computers **do not require any driver installation**.

When the **14"/35.56cm screen Model A** PC Camera is in use the power LED indicator will blink orange (see *Table 1 - 2, on page 1 - 11*).

When the **Model B/C** PC Camera is in use the LED indicator to the left of the camera will be illuminated in **red** (see **2** *Figure 1 - 4 on page 1 - 9/Figure 1 - 5 on page 1 - 10*).

Note that you need to use the **Camera App** in *Windows 8* to take pictures and capture video (the camera application listed in **Chapter 7** is for *Windows 7* only).

Metro UI Camera App

1. Make sure the PC Camera is turned on by using the **Fn + F10** key combination (or **Control Center button**).
2. Run the Camera App from the Metro UI by clicking on the **Camera App icon** .
3. The camera interface is a translucent app bar with three buttons.

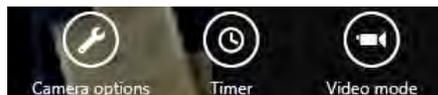


Figure E - 21 - Camera App Bar

- **Camera options:**. Click this button to open a window with three main options:


Camera Options

- **Resolution** (determined by the camera spec)
- **Audio device** (select microphone to use)
- **Video Stabilization** (a toggle based on spec of the camera)

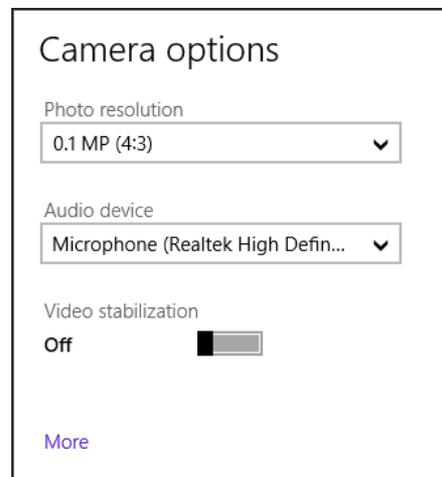


Figure E - 22 - Camera Options

You can also click on **More** to adjust **Brightness**, **Contrast** and **Flicker** (if you find that the video screen in the camera program is flickering, you can try to adjust the setting here),

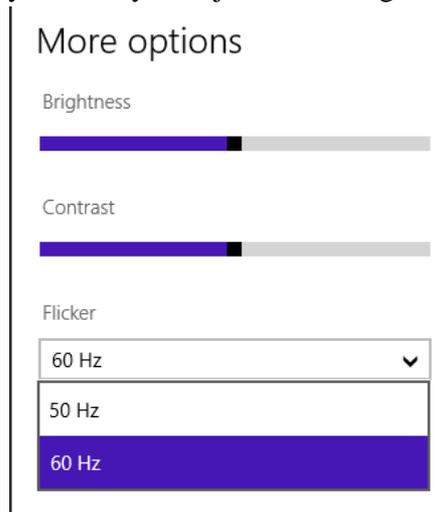


Figure E - 23 -More Camera Options

- **Timer:** This button will start a three second countdown before the system takes a still photo or video recording starts.
- **Video Mode:** This button toggles between still photo mode (transparent button ) and video recording mode (highlighted white button )

Taking Pictures/Capturing Video

1. Make sure the PC Camera is turned on by using the **Fn + F10** key combination (or **Control Center button**).
2. Run the Camera App from the Metro UI by clicking on the **Camera App** icon .
3. Click to select the timer if you require a countdown before capture.
4. Click to select either photo or video modes.
5. Click in the main window to take a picture or start video capture (if video capture begins a timer will appear in the bottom right corner of the screen).
6. To stop video capture click the main window again.
7. Captured photos and videos will be saved to a **Camera Roll** folder within the **Picture** folder in **Libraries**.

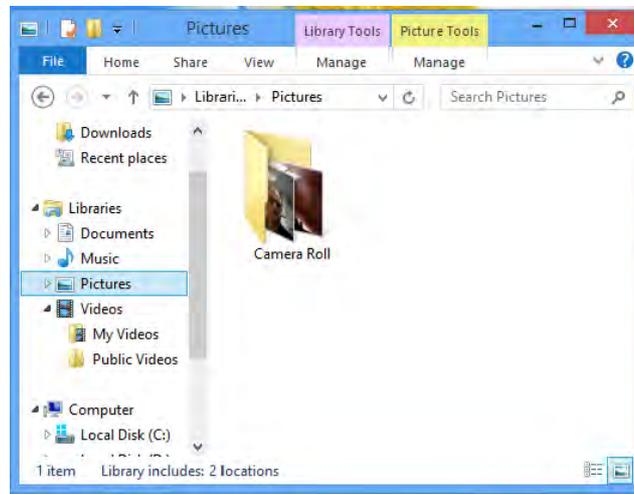


Figure E - 24 - Libraries - Pictures

8. A scroll arrow will appear on the left side of the screen after any pictures/videos have been captured.
9. Click the arrows (on either side of the screen) to browse through the captured photos/video, and back to the Camera App.
10. Clicking on a captured photo will bring up an App bar with **Crop** and **Delete** buttons.



Figure E - 25 - Crop & Delete Buttons (for Still Photos)

11. Use the handles to **Crop** any captured picture, and click **OK** to save the changes made.
12. Click **Delete** to delete any captured photo (note that no prompt will appear to confirm the delete).
13. Right-click any captured video to bring up app bar with **Trim** and **Delete** buttons.



Figure E - 26 - Trim & Delete Buttons (for Video Files)

14. Use the buttons at either end of the slider to adjust the video length and click **OK** to save the changes made.

Wireless LAN Settings (Windows 8)

If you have included an **Intel® or 3rd Party** Wireless LAN (or WLAN & Bluetooth combo) module in your purchase option, make sure that the WLAN module is on before installing the driver.

Use the **Fn + F11 key combination** (see *“Function/Hot Key Indicators” on page 1 - 15*) or **Control Center button to toggle power to the Wireless LAN module**. Make sure you install the drivers in the order indicated in *Table 4 - 1, on page 4 - 3*. See *“3rd Party 802.11b/g/n Driver Installation (for WLAN Module)” on page 7 - 12/ “3rd Party 802.11b/g/n Driver Installation (for Combo Modules)” on page 7 - 13* or *“Intel® WLAN Driver Installation” on page 7 - 14* for driver installation information, however see **overleaf for WLAN configuration information in Windows 8**.

Note that you need to install both the WLAN & Bluetooth drivers for the Intel and 3rd party WLAN & Bluetooth Combo modules.

WLAN Configuration in Windows 8

You can configure a wireless connection using one of the following options, however make sure the Wireless LAN module is turned on (and not in Airplane Mode) before configuration begins.

Charms Bar

1. Go to the **Charms Bar**.
2. Select **Settings** and then click the **WiFi icon** (it should read **Available** under the icon and **Airplane mode** should be **Off**).
3. A list of available access points will appear.

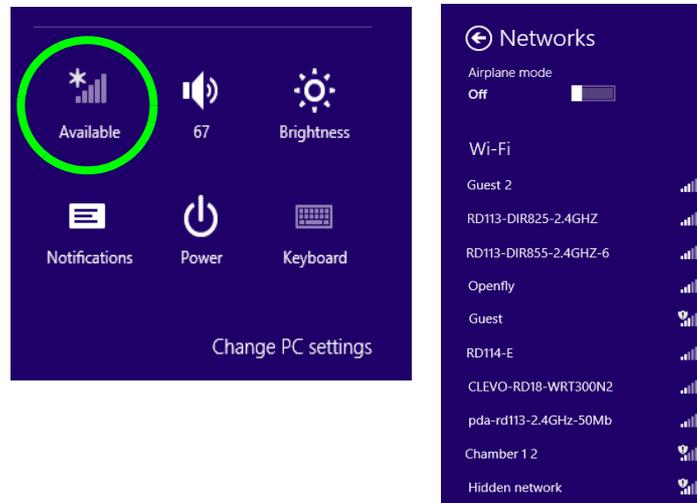


Figure E - 27 - WiFi Settings (Charms Bar) & Networks

Windows 8

4. Double-click an access point to connect to it (or click it and click **Connect**).
5. Enter a network security key (password) if required, and click **Next**.
6. You can choose to share or connect to devices or not.
7. When you are connected to the network access point it will display the Connected icon **Connected** .
8. Select any connected network and click **Disconnect**  to disconnect from a connected access point.

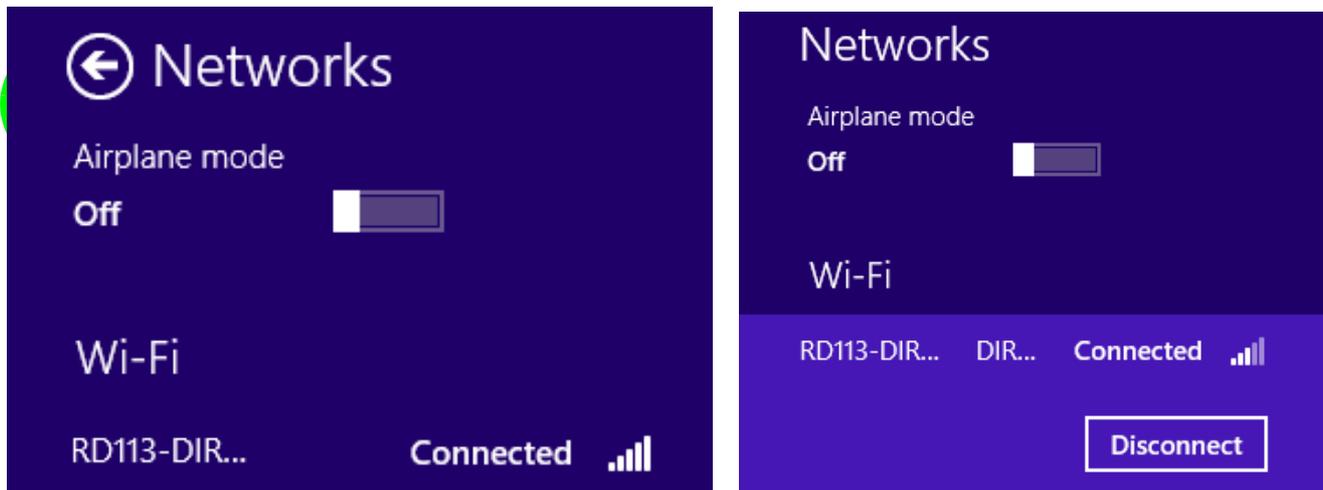


Figure E - 28 - Networks Connected / Disconnect

9. You can click the **Airplane Mode** button to turn the mode On or Off.
10. If you click on **Change PC Settings** (at the bottom of **Settings** in the **Charms Bar**) you can turn **Wireless** or **Airplane Mode** On/Off (see over).

E - 32 Wireless LAN Settings (Windows 8)

11. You need to either use **Airplane Mode**, or to **turn the WLAN module off** aboard aircraft.

The image shows a screenshot of the Windows 8 'PC settings' application. On the left is a navigation pane with the following options: Activate Windows, Personalize, Users, Notifications, Search, Share, General, Privacy, Devices, and Wireless (which is highlighted in blue). The main content area is divided into two sections. The top section is titled 'Airplane mode' and contains the text 'Turn this on to stop wireless communication' and a toggle switch labeled 'Off'. The bottom section is titled 'Wireless devices' and contains the text 'Wi-Fi' and a toggle switch labeled 'On'. To the right of the settings is a red rounded rectangle containing a white bell icon at the top, followed by the heading 'Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft'. Below the heading is the text: 'The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited.' and 'Make sure the module is either **OFF** or in **Airplane Mode** (for **Windows 8** only) if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.'

Figure E - 29 - PC Settings (Wireless)

Windows 8

Desktop Mode

1. Switch to the Windows Desktop (click the App or use the Windows logo key **+** **D** key combination).
2. Click the wireless icon  in the notification area of the taskbar.
3. A list of available access points will appear.
4. Double-click an access point to connect to it (or click it and click **Connect**).
5. Enter a network security key (password) if required, and click **Next**.
6. You can choose to share or connect to devices or not.
7. Select any connected network and click **Disconnect** to disconnect from a connected access point.

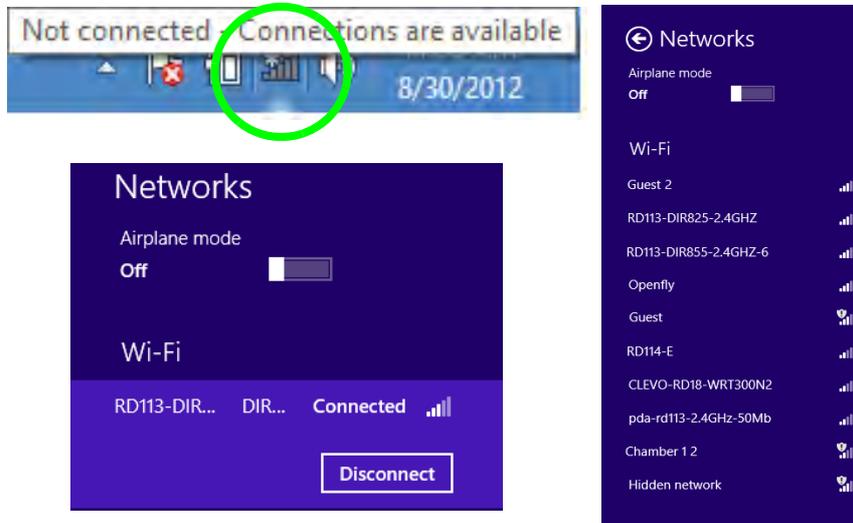


Figure E - 30 - Windows Desktop Taskbar Notification Area WLAN Connection

Control Panel

If you are in **Category View** do the following (see over for Icon View):

1. Open the **Control Panel** (see *“Windows 8 Control Panel” on page E - 8*).
2. Click the **Network and Internet** control panel.
3. Click **Connect to a network**.

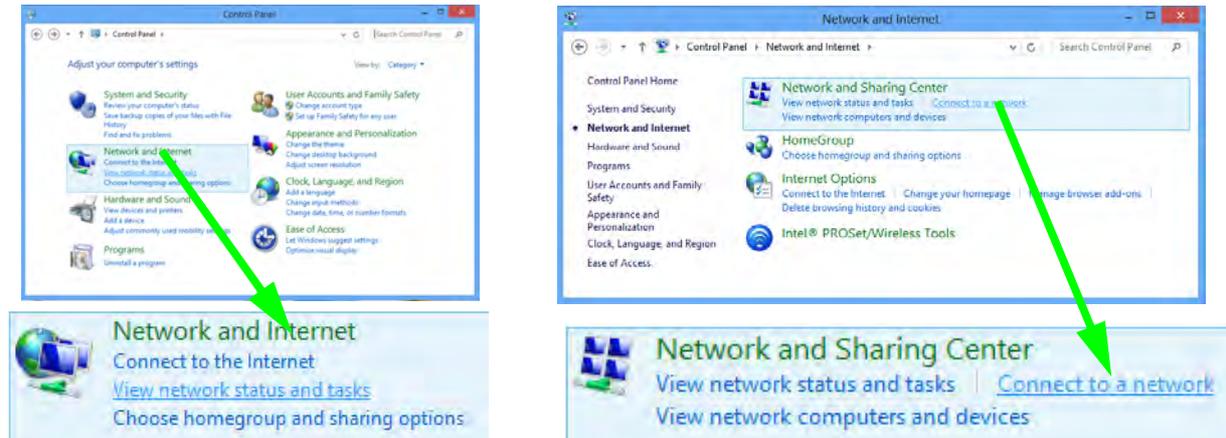


Figure E - 31 - Network and Internet Control Panel

4. A list of available access points will appear.
5. Double-click an access point to connect to it (or click it and click **Connect**).
6. Enter a network security key (password) if required, and click **Next**.
7. You can choose to share or connect to devices or not.
8. Select any connected network and click **Disconnect** to disconnect from a connected access point.

Windows 8

If you are in **Icon View** do the following:

1. Open the **Control Panel** (see “*Windows 8 Control Panel*” on page E - 8).
2. Click **Network and Sharing Center**.
3. Click **Change Adapter Settings**.
4. Double-click **Wi-Fi**.



Figure E - 32 - Network and Sharing Center Control Panel

5. A list of available access points will appear.
6. Double-click an access point to connect to it (or click it and click **Connect**).
7. Enter a network security key (password) if required, and click **Next**.
8. You can choose to share or connect to devices or not.
9. Select any connected network and click **Disconnect** to disconnect from a connected access point.

E - 36 Wireless LAN Settings (Windows 8)

Bluetooth Settings (Windows 8)

If your purchase option includes the **Combination Wireless LAN & Bluetooth module** (either **Intel®** or **3rd Party**) then install the driver as instructed in **Chapter 7** (see links below).

Use the **Fn + F12** key combination or **Control Center** button to toggle power to the **Bluetooth** module.



Bluetooth Data Transfer

Note that the transfer of data between the computer and a Bluetooth enabled device is supported **in one direction only (simultaneous data transfer is not supported)**. Therefore if you are copying a file from your computer to a Bluetooth enabled device, you will not be able to copy a file from the Bluetooth enabled device to your computer until the file transfer process from the computer has been completed.

- For **3rd party Bluetooth** modules see *“3rd Party Bluetooth (V4.0) Combo Driver Installation” on page 7 - 33.*
- For **Intel Bluetooth** combo modules see the installation procedure see *“Intel Bluetooth Combo Driver Installation” on page 7 - 34.*

Bluetooth Configuration in Windows 8

You can configure a Bluetooth connection as below, however make sure the Bluetooth module is turned on (and not in Airplane Mode) before configuration begins.

Desktop Mode

1. Switch to the Windows Desktop (click the App or use the Windows logo key **+** **D** key combination).
 2. Click the notification area of the taskbar and double-click the Bluetooth icon  (or click and select **Show Bluetooth Devices**).
 3. The **Devices** item in **PC Settings** will appear.
- OR

Charms Bar

1. Go to the **Charms Bar**.
2. Select **Settings** and then click **Change PC Settings**.
3. The **Devices** item in **PC Settings** will appear.

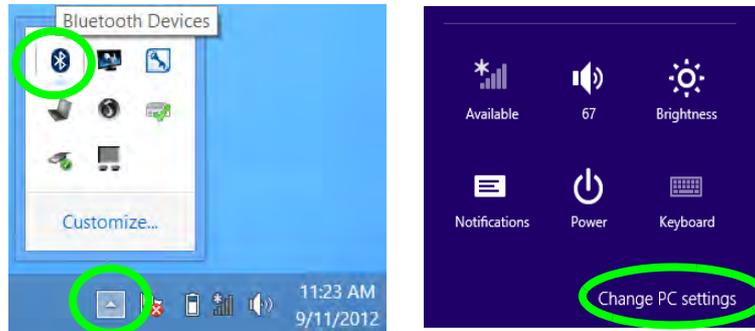


Figure E - 33 - Bluetooth Taskbar Icon & Change PC Settings (Charms Bar -Settings)

4. Click **Add a Device**.
5. Double-click the device you want to pair with the computer.

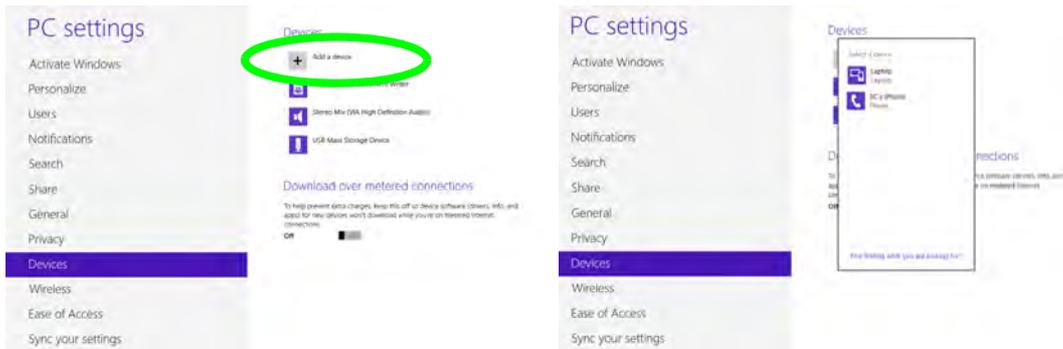


Figure E - 34 - PC Settings (Devices) - Add A Device

6. On first connection the computer will provide you with a pairing code to be entered onto the device.

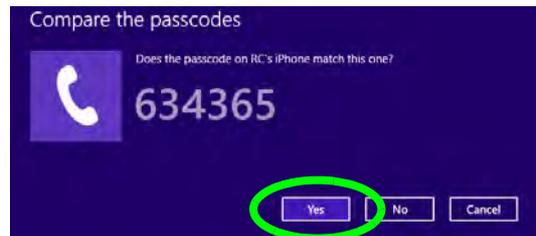


Figure E - 35 - Enter the Passcode

7. Enter the code into your Bluetooth enabled device and click **Yes** on the computer to complete the pairing.

8. You need to either use **Airplane Mode**, or to **turn the Bluetooth module off** aboard aircraft.

The image shows a screenshot of the Windows 8 PC settings application. On the left is a navigation pane with the following options: Activate Windows, Personalize, Users, Notifications, Search, Share, General, Privacy, Devices, **Wireless** (highlighted in blue), Ease of Access, and Sync your settings. The main content area displays the 'Wireless' settings. At the top is 'Airplane mode', which is turned 'Off' (indicated by a grey slider). Below it is the 'Wireless devices' section, which includes 'Mobile broadband' (On), 'Wi-Fi' (On), and 'Bluetooth' (On), each with a blue slider. At the bottom of this section is 'Mobile broadband hardware' with the text 'Chunghwa Telecom'. To the right of the settings is a red rounded rectangle containing a warning icon (a bell with a lightning bolt) and the text: 'Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft. The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module is either **OFF** or in **Airplane Mode** (for **Windows 8** only) if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.'

Figure E - 36 - PC Settings (Wireless)

To Make your Computer Discoverable to Bluetooth Devices

1. Switch to the Windows Desktop (click the App or use the Windows logo key  + D key combination).
2. Click the notification area of the taskbar, click the Bluetooth icon  and click **Open Settings**.
3. Click **Options**, and make sure that **Allow Bluetooth devices to find this computer** check box (**Discovery**) has a tick inside it.
4. Make sure that the **Alert me when a new Bluetooth device wants to connect** check box (**Connections**) has a tick inside it, if you want to be notified when a Bluetooth device wants to connect.

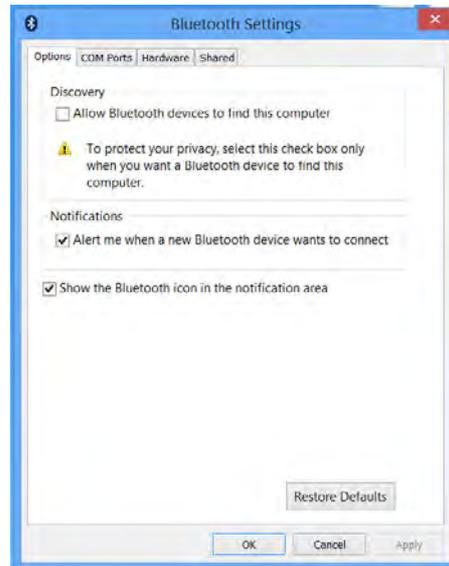


Figure E - 37 - Bluetooth Settings

3G Settings (Windows 8)

(For **Models A & B** Only)

If you have included an **optional UMTS/HSPDA OR UMTS/HSPDA+** based 3G Module (Universal Mobile Telecommunications System or High Speed Packet Access) module (see **“Communication” on page D - 3** for specification details) in your purchase option, ***you do not require a driver/application installation for Windows 8***. Follow the instructions on page **7 - 40** to install the USIM card (which will be provided by your service provider), and then **use the Charms Bar Wireless icon to access the 3G network** in the same manner as the WLAN (see overleaf).



Important Notice - 3.75G/HSPA & Bluetooth/Wireless LAN Modules

In order to comply with FCC regulations you should NOT operate the 3.75G/HSPA module and the Bluetooth/Wireless LAN modules at the same time as this may disrupt radio frequency, and cause interference. When the 3.75G/HSPA module is powered on, make sure that the Bluetooth/Wireless LAN modules are powered off.

Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited.

Make sure the module is either **OFF** or in **Airplane Mode** (for **Windows 8** only) if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

3G Configuration in Windows 8

You can configure a 3G connection as below, however make sure the 3G module is turned on by pressing the **Fn + []** key combination (give the module about 10 seconds to power on) or Control Center button (and not in Airplane Mode) before configuration begins.

Charms Bar

1. Go to the **Charms Bar**.
2. Select **Settings** and then click the **WiFi icon** (it should read **Available** under the icon and **Airplane mode** should be **Off**).
3. A list of available access points will appear.

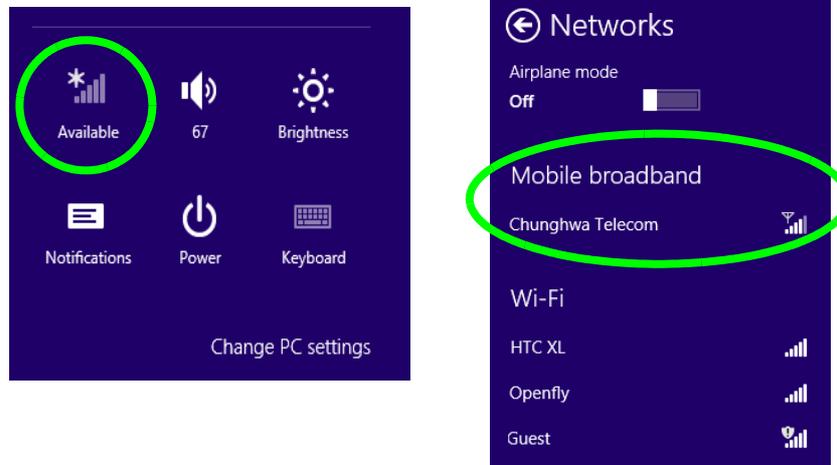


Figure E - 38 - WiFi Settings (Charms Bar) & Networks (with Mobile Broadband)

Windows 8

- Any 3G service provider (connection information is usually stored on the USIM card) will appear under Mobile Broadband.
- Double-click any connection icon under Mobile Broadband (or click and click **Connect**).



Figure E - 39 - Mobile Broadband (Connect)

- The system will connect to your network.
- A **Connected** will appear alongside the 3G connection (click the connection to view the timer which indicates your connected time for the current session).

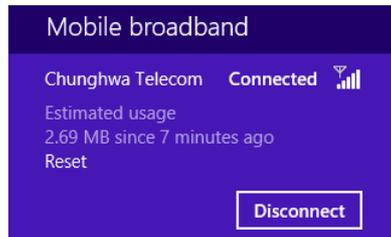
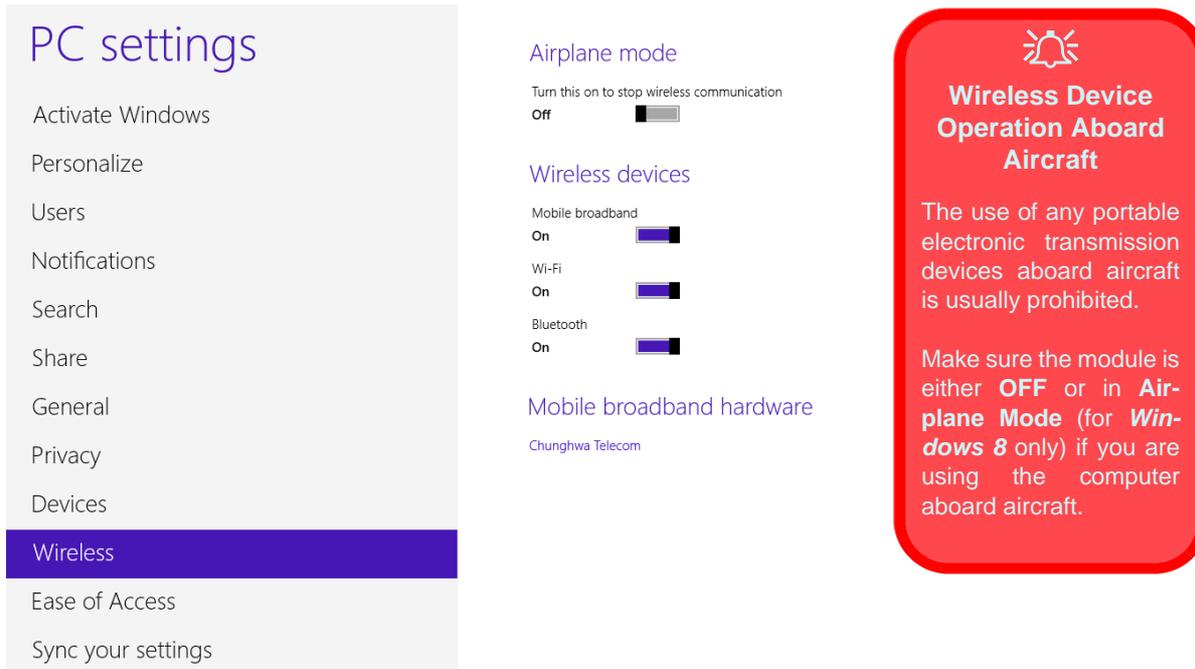


Figure E - 40 - Mobile Broadband (Disconnect)

8. You can then access the internet, download e-mail etc. as per any internet connection.
9. To disconnect you can select the connection and click **Disconnect** .
10. You need to either use **Airplane Mode**, or to **turn the Mobile Broadband module off** aboard aircraft.



The image shows a screenshot of the Windows 8 settings application. On the left is a navigation pane with 'Wireless' selected. The main area shows 'Airplane mode' (Off), 'Wireless devices' (Mobile broadband On, Wi-Fi On, Bluetooth On), and 'Mobile broadband hardware' (Chunghwa Telecom). A red callout box on the right contains a warning about wireless device operation aboard aircraft.

PC settings

- Activate Windows
- Personalize
- Users
- Notifications
- Search
- Share
- General
- Privacy
- Devices
- Wireless**
- Ease of Access
- Sync your settings

Airplane mode
Turn this on to stop wireless communication
Off

Wireless devices

- Mobile broadband
On
- Wi-Fi
On
- Bluetooth
On

Mobile broadband hardware
Chunghwa Telecom

Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited.

Make sure the module is either **OFF** or in **Airplane Mode** (for *Windows 8* only) if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Figure E - 41 - PC Settings (Wireless)

EM820W 3G Module PIN Code & Power-Saving

Note that there may be some issues when a PIN Code is set for the EM820W 3G module (if you are unsure of your module version contact your distributor/supplier) in *Windows 8*, Mobile Broadband has been turned off, and the system has resumed from a power-saving state. **To prevent any issues it is recommended that you simply do not enable a PIN for the EM820W 3G module.** The following provides instructions for disabling the PIN code; for specific instructions on resolving the issue where “**Insert a SIM**” appears in the connection see “*Resolving the “Insert a SIM” issue with the 3G Module (Windows 8)” on page 8 - 16.*

Disabling a PIN code for a 3G Module

1. Go to the **Charms Bar**.
2. Select **Settings** and then click the **WiFi icon**.
3. Right-click the 3G connection and select **View connection properties**.

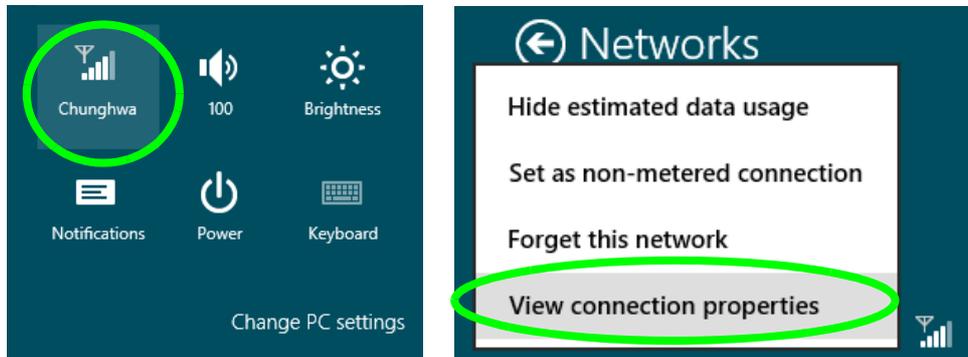


Figure E - 42 - WiFi Settings (Charms Bar) & Right-Click Connection to View Properties

4. Click **Security** (tab) and click **Disable PIN**.
5. Enter the PIN number and click **Disable PIN** and click **OK** to confirm.
6. **It is recommended that you do not Enable a PIN for the EM820W 3G module.**

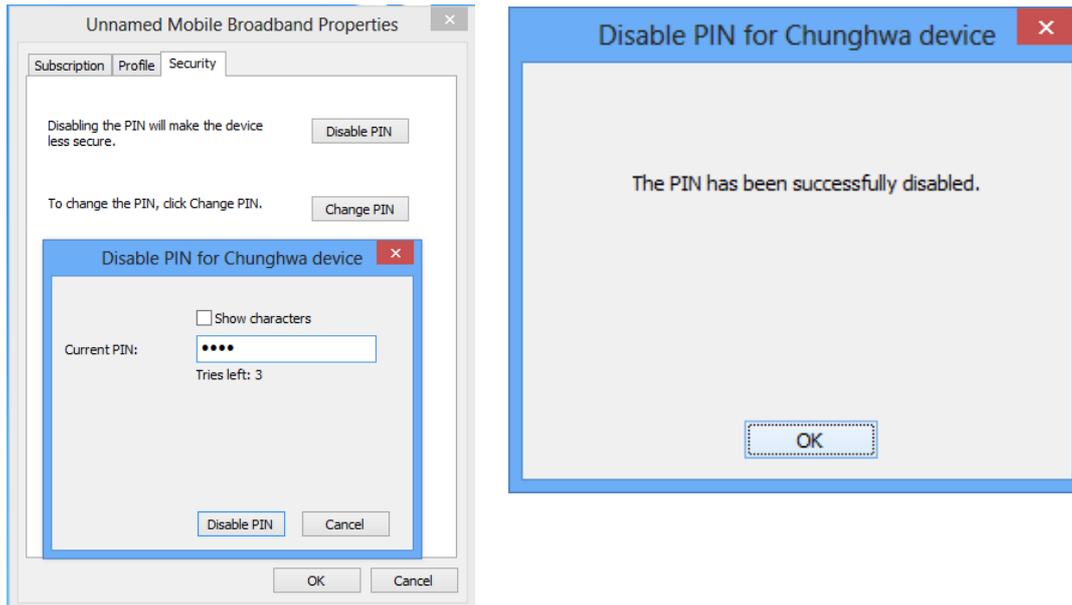


Figure E - 43 - Disable PIN

USER'S MANUAL

Notebook Series II

notebook



Notice

The company reserves the right to revise this publication or to change its contents without notice. Information contained herein is for reference only and does not constitute a commitment on the part of the manufacturer or any subsequent vendor. They assume no responsibility or liability for any errors or inaccuracies that may appear in this publication nor are they in anyway responsible for any loss or damage resulting from the use (or misuse) of this publication.

This publication and any accompanying software may not, in whole or in part, be reproduced, translated, transmitted or reduced to any machine readable form without prior consent from the vendor, manufacturer or creators of this publication, except for copies kept by the user for backup purposes.

Brand and product names mentioned in this publication may or may not be copyrights and/or registered trademarks of their respective companies. They are mentioned for identification purposes only and are not intended as an endorsement of that product or its manufacturer.

©June 2013

Trademarks

Intel, **Pentium** and **Intel Core** are trademarks/registered trademarks of Intel Corporation.

Preface

R&TTE Directive

This device is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of the R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC.

This device will be sold in the following EEA countries: Austria, Italy, Belgium, Liechtenstein, Denmark, Luxembourg, Finland, Netherlands, France, Norway, Germany, Portugal, Greece, Spain, Iceland, Sweden, Ireland, United Kingdom, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Estonia, Hungary, Latvia, Lithuania, Malta, Slovakia, Poland, Slovenia.

ErP Off Mode Power Consumption Statement:

The figures below note the power consumption of this computer in compliance with European Commission (EC) regulations on power consumption in off mode

- Off Mode < 0.5W

CE Marking

This device has been tested to and conforms to the regulatory requirements of the European Union and has attained CE Marking. The CE Mark is a conformity marking consisting of the letters “CE”. The CE Mark applies to products regulated by certain European health, safety and environmental protection legislation. The CE Mark is obligatory for products it applies to: the manufacturer affixes the marking in order to be allowed to sell his product in the European market.

This product conforms to the essential requirements of the R&TTE directive 1999/5/EC in order to attain CE Marking. A notified body has determined that this device has properly demonstrated that the requirements of the directive have been met and has issued a favorable certificate of expert opinion. As such the device will bear the notified body number 0560 after the CE mark.

The CE Marking is not a quality mark. Foremost, it refers to the safety rather than to the quality of a product. Secondly, CE Marking is mandatory for the product it applies to, whereas most quality markings are voluntary.

FCC Statement (Federal Communications Commission)

You are cautioned that changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Re orient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the service representative or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.

And

2. This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement:

1. This Transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.
2. This equipment complies with FCC RF radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20 centimeters between the radiator and your body.



Warning

Use only shielded cables to connect I/O devices to this equipment. You are cautioned that changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer for compliance with the above standards could void your authority to operate the equipment.

If your purchase option includes both **Wireless LAN** and **3G** modules, then the appropriate antennas will be installed. Note that in order to comply with FCC RF exposure compliance requirements, the antenna must not be co-located or operate in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Important Notice - 3G & Bluetooth/Wireless LAN Modules

In order to comply with FCC regulations you should NOT operate the 3G module and the Bluetooth/Wireless LAN modules at the same time as this may disrupt radio frequency, and cause interference. When the 3G module is powered on, make sure that the Bluetooth/Wireless LAN modules are powered off.

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

Follow basic safety precautions, including those listed below, to reduce the risk of fire, electric shock, and injury to persons when using any electrical equipment:

1. Do not use this product near water, for example near a bath tub, wash bowl, kitchen sink or laundry tub, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
2. Avoid using this equipment with a telephone line (other than a cordless type) during an electrical storm. There may be a remote risk of electrical shock from lightning.
3. Do not use the telephone to report a gas leak in the vicinity of the leak.
4. Use only the power cord and batteries indicated in this manual. Do not dispose of batteries in a fire. They may explode. Check with local codes for possible special disposal instructions.
5. This product is intended to be supplied by a Listed Power Unit with an AC Input of 100 - 240V, 50 - 60Hz, DC Output of 19V, 3.42A or 18.5V, 3.5A (**65 Watts**) minimum AC/DC Adapter.

This Computer's Optical Device is a Laser Class 1 Product

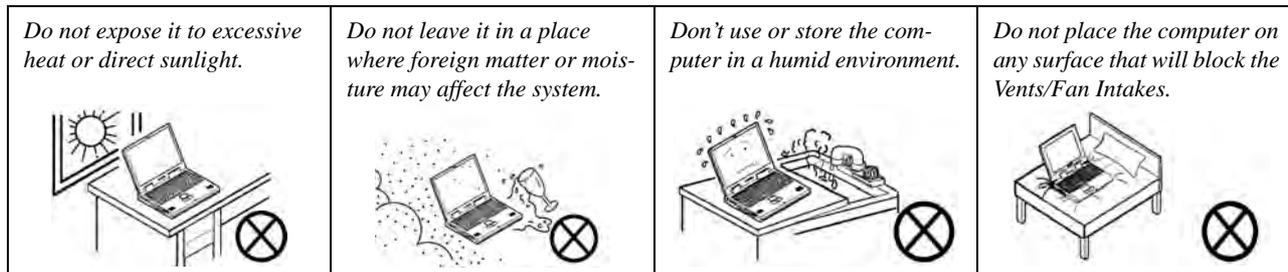
Instructions for Care and Operation

The notebook computer is quite rugged, but it can be damaged. To prevent this, follow these suggestions:

1. **Don't drop it, or expose it to shock.** If the computer falls, the case and the components could be damaged.

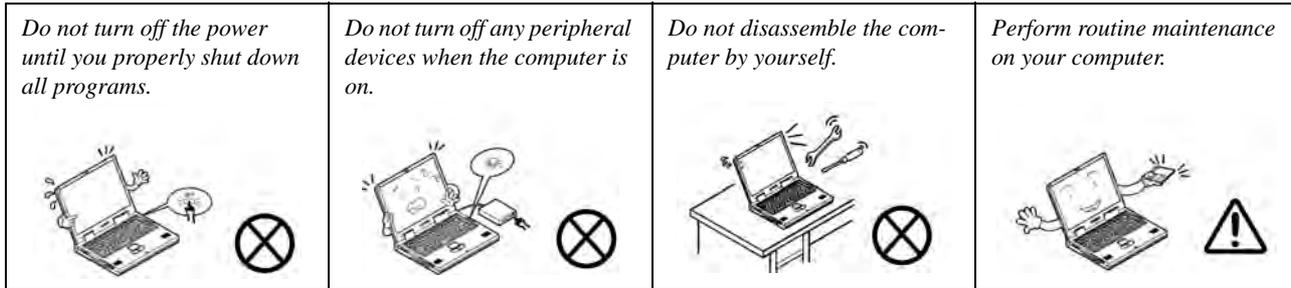


2. **Keep it dry, and don't overheat it.** Keep the computer and power supply away from any kind of heating element. This is an electrical appliance. If water or any other liquid gets into it, the computer could be badly damaged.

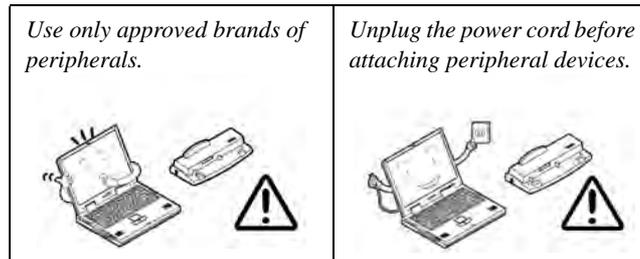


Preface

- Avoid interference.** Keep the computer away from high capacity transformers, electric motors, and other strong magnetic fields. These can hinder proper performance and damage your data.
- Follow the proper working procedures for the computer.** Shut the computer down properly and don't forget to save your work. Remember to periodically save your data as data may be lost if the battery is depleted.



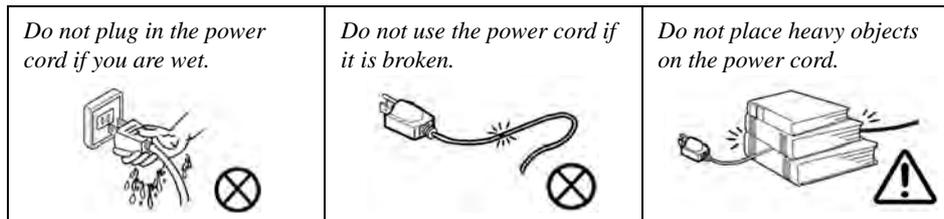
- Take care when using peripheral devices.**



Power Safety

The computer has specific power requirements:

- Only use a power adapter approved for use with this computer.
- Your AC/DC adapter may be designed for international travel but it still requires a steady, uninterrupted power supply. If you are unsure of your local power specifications, consult your service representative or local power company.
- The power adapter may have either a 2-prong or a 3-prong grounded plug. The third prong is an important safety feature; do not defeat its purpose. If you do not have access to a compatible outlet, have a qualified electrician install one.
- When you want to unplug the power cord, be sure to disconnect it by the plug head, not by its wire.
- Make sure the socket and any extension cord(s) you use can support the total current load of all the connected devices.
- Before cleaning the computer, make sure it is disconnected from any external power supplies (i.e. AC/DC adapter or car adapter).



Power Safety Warning

Before you undertake any upgrade procedures, make sure that you have turned off the power, and disconnected all peripherals and cables (including telephone lines and power cord).

You must also remove your battery in order to prevent accidentally turning the machine on. **Before removing the battery disconnect the AC/DC adapter from the computer.**

Polymer Battery Precautions

Note the following information which is specific to polymer batteries only, and where applicable, this overrides the general battery precaution information overleaf.

- Polymer batteries may experience a slight expansion or swelling, however this is part of the battery's safety mechanism and is not a cause for concern.
- Use proper handling procedures when using polymer batteries. Do not use polymer batteries in high ambient temperature environments, and do not store unused batteries for extended periods.

See also the general battery precautionary information overleaf for further information.

Battery Precautions

- Only use batteries designed for this computer. The wrong battery type may explode, leak or damage the computer.
- Do not remove any batteries from the computer while it is powered on.
- Do not continue to use a battery that has been dropped, or that appears damaged (e.g. bent or twisted) in any way. Even if the computer continues to work with a damaged battery in place, it may cause circuit damage, which may possibly result in fire.
- If you do not use the battery for an extended period, then remove the battery from the computer for storage.
- Recharge the batteries using the notebook's system. Incorrect recharging may make the battery explode.
- Do not try to repair a battery pack. Refer any battery pack repair or replacement to your service representative or qualified service personnel.
- Keep children away from, and promptly dispose of a damaged battery. Always dispose of batteries carefully. Batteries may explode or leak if exposed to fire, or improperly handled or discarded.
- Keep the battery away from metal appliances.
- Affix tape to the battery contacts before disposing of the battery.
- Do not touch the battery contacts with your hands or metal objects.



Battery Disposal & Caution

The product that you have purchased contains a rechargeable battery. The battery is recyclable. At the end of its useful life, under various state and local laws, it may be illegal to dispose of this battery into the municipal waste stream. Check with your local solid waste officials for details in your area for recycling options or proper disposal.

Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Discard used battery according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Cleaning

Do not apply cleaner directly to the computer; use a soft clean cloth.

Do not use volatile (petroleum distillates) or abrasive cleaners on any part of the computer.

Servicing

Do not attempt to service the computer yourself. Doing so may violate your warranty and expose you and the computer to electric shock. Refer all servicing to authorized service personnel. Unplug the computer from the power supply. Then refer servicing to qualified service personnel under any of the following conditions:

- When the power cord or AC/DC adapter is damaged or frayed.
- If the computer has been exposed to rain or other liquids.
- If the computer does not work normally when you follow the operating instructions.
- If the computer has been dropped or damaged (do not touch the poisonous liquid if the LCD panel breaks).
- If there is an unusual odor, heat or smoke coming from your computer.



Removal Warning

When removing any cover(s) and screw(s) for the purposes of device upgrade, remember to replace the cover(s) and screw(s) before restoring power to the system.

Also note the following when the cover is removed:

- Hazardous moving parts.
- Keep away from moving fan blades.

Travel Considerations

Packing

As you get ready for your trip, run through this list to make sure the system is ready to go:

1. Check that the battery pack and any spares are fully charged.
2. Power off the computer and peripherals.
3. Close the display panel and make sure it's latched.
4. Disconnect the AC/DC adapter and cables. Stow them in the carrying bag.
5. The AC/DC adapter uses voltages from 100 to 240 volts so you won't need a second voltage adapter. However, check with your travel agent to see if you need any socket adapters.
6. Put the notebook in its carrying bag and secure it with the bag's straps.
7. If you're taking any peripherals (e.g. a printer, mouse or digital camera), pack them and those devices' adapters and/or cables.
8. Anticipate customs - Some jurisdictions may have import restrictions or require proof of ownership for both hardware and software. Make sure your documents are prepared.



Power Off Before Traveling

Make sure that your notebook is completely powered off before putting it into a travel bag (or any such container). Putting a notebook which is powered on in a travel bag may cause the vent(s)/fan intake(s)/outlet(s) to be blocked. To prevent your computer from overheating make sure nothing blocks the vent(s)/fan intake(s)/outlet(s) while the computer is in use.

Preface

On the Road

In addition to the general safety and maintenance suggestions in this preface, and Chapter 8: Troubleshooting, keep these points in mind:

Hand-carry the notebook - For security, don't let it out of your sight. In some areas, computer theft is very common. Don't check it with normal luggage. Baggage handlers may not be sufficiently careful. Avoid knocking the computer against hard objects.

Beware of Electromagnetic fields - Devices such as metal detectors & X-ray machines can damage the computer, hard disk, floppy disks, and other media. They may also destroy any stored data - Pass your computer and disks around the devices. Ask security officials to hand-inspect them (you may be asked to turn it on). **Note:** Some airports also scan luggage with these devices.

Fly safely - Most airlines have regulations about the use of computers and other electronic devices in flight. These restrictions are for your safety, follow them. If you stow the notebook in an overhead compartment, make sure it's secure. Contents may shift and/or fall out when the compartment is opened.

Get power where you can - If an electrical outlet is available, use the AC/DC adapter and keep your battery(ies) charged.

Keep it dry - If you move quickly from a cold to a warm location, water vapor can condense inside the computer. Wait a few minutes before turning it on so that any moisture can evaporate.

Developing Good Work Habits

Developing good work habits is important if you need to work in front of the computer for long periods of time. Improper work habits can result in discomfort or serious injury from repetitive strain to your hands, wrists or other joints. The following are some tips to reduce the strain:

- Adjust the height of the chair and/or desk so that the keyboard is at or slightly below the level of your elbow. Keep your forearms, wrists, and hands in a relaxed position.
- Your knees should be slightly higher than your hips. Place your feet flat on the floor or on a footrest if necessary.
- Use a chair with a back and adjust it to support your lower back comfortably.
- Sit straight so that your knees, hips and elbows form approximately 90-degree angles when you are working.
- Take periodic breaks if you are using the computer for long periods of time.



Remember to:

- Alter your posture frequently.
- Stretch and exercise your body several times a day.
- Take periodic breaks when you work at the computer for long periods of time. Frequent and short breaks are better than fewer and longer breaks.



Lighting

Proper lighting and comfortable display viewing angle can reduce eye strain and muscle fatigue in your neck and shoulders.

- Position the display to avoid glare or reflections from overhead lighting or outside sources of light.
- Keep the display screen clean and set the brightness and contrast to levels that allow you to see the screen clearly.
- Position the display directly in front of you at a comfortable viewing distance.
- Adjust the display-viewing angle to find the best position.

LCD Screen Care

To prevent **image persistence** on LCD monitors (caused by the continuous display of graphics on the screen for an extended period of time) take the following precautions:

- Set the *Windows* **Power Plans** to turn the screen off after a few minutes of screen idle time.
- Use a rotating, moving or blank screen saver (this prevents an image from being displayed too long).
- Rotate desktop background images every few days.
- Turn the monitor off when the system is not in use.

LCD Electro-Plated Logos

Note that in computers featuring a raised LCD electro-plated logo, the logo is covered by a protective adhesive. Due to general wear and tear, this adhesive may deteriorate over time and the exposed logo may develop sharp edges. Be careful when handling the computer in this case, and avoid touching the raised LCD electro-plated logo. Avoid placing any other items in the carrying bag which may rub against the top of the computer during transport. If any such wear and tear develops contact your service center.

Contents

Notice	I
EuP-Standby and Off Mode Power Consumption Statement:	II
FCC Statement	IV
FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement:	V
Instructions for Care and Operation	VII
Power Safety	IX
Polymer Battery Precautions	X
Battery Precautions	XI
Cleaning	XII
Servicing	XII
Travel Considerations	XIII

Quick Start Guide

Overview	1-1
Advanced Users	1-2
Beginners and Not-So-Advanced Users	1-2
Warning Boxes	1-2
Not Included	1-3
System Startup	1-4
System Software	1-5
Model Differences	1-6

Preface

System Map: LCD Panel Open - Model A Design I	1-7
System Map: LCD Panel Open - Model A Design II	1-8
System Map: LCD Panel Open - Model B	1-9
System Map: Model C - LCD Panel Open	1-10
LED Indicators	1-11
Hot Key Buttons - Some Model A Design Styles	1-12
Keyboard - Model A	1-13
Keyboard - Models B & C	1-14
Function/Hot Key Indicators	1-15
Control Center	1-16
System Map: Front & Left Views - Models A & B	1-17
System Map: Front & Left Views - Model C	1-18
System Map: Right & Rear Views - Models A & B	1-19
System Map: Right & Rear Views - Model C	1-20
System Map: Bottom View - Model A	1-22
System Map: Bottom View - Model B	1-23
System Map: Bottom View - Model C	1-24
Video Features	1-26
Power Options	1-28

Features & Components

Overview	2-1
----------------	-----

Hard Disk Drive	2-2
Optical (CD/DVD) Device	2-3
Loading Discs	2-3
Handling CDs or DVDs	2-4
DVD Regional Codes	2-5
Multi-In-1 Card Reader	2-6
TouchPad and Buttons/Mouse	2-7
Gestures and Device Settings	2-9
Audio Features	2-12

Power Management

Overview	3-1
The Power Sources	3-2
AC/DC Adapter	3-2
Battery	3-2
Turning On the Computer	3-3
Power Plans	3-4
Power-Saving States	3-6
Sleep	3-6
Hibernate	3-7
Shut down	3-7
Configuring the Power Buttons	3-8

Preface

Resuming Operation	3-9
Power Conservation Modes	3-10
Battery Information	3-11
Conserving Battery Power	3-12
Battery Life	3-13
New Battery	3-13
Recharging the Battery with the AC/DC Adapter	3-13
Proper handling of the Battery Pack	3-14
Battery FAQ	3-15

Drivers & Utilities

What to Install	4-1
Module Driver Installation	4-1
Driver Installation	4-2
Updating/Reinstalling Individual Drivers	4-4
User Account Control	4-5
Windows Security Message	4-5
New Hardware Found	4-5
Driver Installation Procedure	4-6
Chipset	4-6
Video (VGA)	4-6
LAN	4-6

CardReader	4-6
Touchpad	4-6
Hot Key	4-7
USB 3.0 (Win 7 Only)	4-7
MEI Driver	4-7
Audio	4-7
Windows Experience Index	4-8
Optional Drivers	4-9

BIOS Utilities

Overview	5-1
The Setup Utility	5-2
Failing the POST	5-3
Fatal Errors	5-3
Non-Fatal Errors	5-3
Setup Screens	5-4
Main Menu	5-5
System Time & Date (Main Menu)	5-5
SATA Port # (Main Menu)	5-6
System/Extended Memory: (Main Menu)	5-6
MB Series / BIOS Revision / KBC/EC firmware Revision	5-6
Advanced Menu	5-7

Preface

Advanced Chipset Control (Advanced Menu)	5-7
Bluetooth Power Setting (Advanced Menu > Advanced Chipset Control)	5-8
Intel Smart Connect Technology (Advanced Menu)	5-8
Intel Anti-Theft Technology (Advanced Menu)	5-8
SATA Mode Selection (Advanced Menu)	5-9
Boot Logo (Advanced Menu)	5-9
Power On Boot Beep (Advanced Menu)	5-9
Battery Low Alarm Beep: (Advanced Menu)	5-9
Security Menu	5-10
Set Supervisor Password (Security Menu)	5-10
Set User Password (Security Menu)	5-11
Password on boot: (Security Menu)	5-11
Secure Boot (Security Menu)	5-12
TPM Configuration (Security Menu)	5-13
TPM State (Security Menu > TPM Support Enabled)	5-14
Pending TPM operation (Security Menu > TPM Support & TPM State Enabled)	5-15
Boot Menu	5-16
Boot Option Priorities (Boot Menu)	5-17
OS Select (Boot Menu)	5-17
UEFI Boot (Boot Menu)	5-17
Exit Menu	5-18

Upgrading The Computer

Overview	6-1
When Not to Upgrade	6-2
Removing the Battery	6-4
Upgrading the Hard Disk Drive	6-5
Upgrading the Optical (CD/DVD) Device	6-8
Removing the Optical Device for Model A Computers	6-9
Removing the Optical Device for Model B & C Computers	6-11
Upgrading the System Memory (RAM)	6-12

Modules & Options

Overview	7-1
PC Camera Module	7-3
PC Camera Driver Installation	7-4
Wireless LAN Module	7-11
3rd Party 802.11b/g/n Driver Installation	7-12
Intel® WLAN Driver Installation	7-13
Connecting to a Wireless Network in Windows 7	7-14
Intel® My WiFi Configuration	7-17
Intel WLAN & Bluetooth Combo Module High-Speed Data Transfer Configuration	7-29
Windows Mobility Center	7-31
Intel® Wireless Display Application	7-32

Preface

Intel® WiDi Application Installation	7-33
Intel® Wireless Music Driver Installation	7-33
Intel® WiDi Application Configuration	7-34
Bluetooth & WLAN Combo Module	7-37
3rd Party Bluetooth (V4.0) Combo Driver Installation	7-38
Intel Bluetooth Combo Driver Installation	7-39
Standard Bluetooth Configuration in Windows 7	7-40
3G Module	7-44
Wireless Manager	7-48
Wireless Manager Installation	7-48
Wireless Manager Application	7-49
Profiles	7-52
Settings	7-56
Text Messaging Service (SMS)	7-59
SMS Utility	7-59
Sending a Text Message	7-61
Phonebook	7-64
SMS Settings	7-67
Sierra Wireless AirCard Watcher	7-70
Sierra Wireless AirCard Watcher Installation	7-70
AirCard Watcher Application	7-71
Air Card Watcher Menu	7-75

Selecting a Network Operator/Service Provider	7-76
Profiles	7-77
User Options	7-79
Text Messaging Service (SMS)	7-81
SMS Express	7-81
Sending a Text Message	7-82
Inbox	7-83
Mobile Partner	7-84
Mobile Partner Application Installation	7-84
Mobile Partner Application	7-85
Profile Management	7-85
Text Messaging Service	7-90
Trusted Platform Module	7-91
Enabling & Activating TPM	7-92
Trusted Platform Module (TPM) Driver Installation	7-94
Initializing TPM	7-95
Infineon Security Platform Settings Tool	7-97
Intel Rapid Storage Technology	7-105
IRST Driver Installation	7-105
Intel® Smart Connect Technology	7-106
Intel® Smart Connect Technology Driver Installation	7-106
Intel® Smart Connect Technology Configuration	7-107

Troubleshooting

Overview8-1
Basic Hints and Tips8-2
Backup and General Maintenance8-3
Viruses8-4
Upgrading and Adding New Hardware/Software8-5
Problems and Possible Solutions8-7
Bluetooth Connection Problems8-12
Resolving the “Insert a SIM” issue with the 3G Module (Windows 8)8-16

Interface (Ports & Jacks)

OverviewA-1
Notebook Ports and JacksA-2

Control Center

OverviewB-1

Video Driver Controls

Video Driver InstallationC-1
Dynamic Video Memory TechnologyC-1
Intel® Graphics & Media Control PanelC-2
Display Devices & OptionsC-4

Attaching Other Displays C-5
 Configuring an External Display in Windows 7 C-8
 HDMI Audio Configuration C-11

Specifications

Processor D-2
 Core Logic D-3
 Memory D-3
 Display D-3
 Video D-4
 Storage D-4
 Keyboard & Pointing Device D-4
 Audio D-4
 Interface D-4
 Card Reader D-4
 Slot D-5
 Communication D-5
 Power Management D-5
 Power D-5
 Operating System D-5
 BIOS D-5
 Indicators D-5

Preface

Security	D-6
Features	D-6
Environmental Spec	D-6
Dimensions & Weight	D-6

Windows 8

Overview	E-1
Windows 8 Start Screen & Desktop	E-2
Apps & Tiles	E-3
Desktop Application	E-4
Windows 8 Charms Bar	E-6
Windows 8 Control Panel	E-8
Windows 8 Taskbar	E-11
LED Indicators	E-12
Keyboard - Windows 8	E-13
Keyboard Shortcuts	E-14
Function/Hot Key Indicators & Control Center	E-15
Video Features	E-16
Power Options	E-17
Running Metro UI Apps	E-20
Drivers & Utilities	E-22
Driver Installation (Windows 8)	E-23

PC Camera (Windows 8) E-25

Metro UI Camera App E-26

Taking Pictures/Capturing Video E-28

Wireless LAN Settings (Windows 8) E-30

WLAN Configuration in Windows 8 E-31

Bluetooth Settings (Windows 8) E-37

Bluetooth Configuration in Windows 8 E-38

3G Settings (Windows 8) E-42

3G Configuration in Windows 8 E-43

Disabling a PIN code for a 3G Module E-46

Chapter 1: Quick Start Guide

Overview

This Quick Start Guide is a brief introduction to the basic features of your computer, to navigating around the computer and to getting your system started. The remainder of the manual covers the following:

- **Chapter 2** A guide to using some of the main features of the computer e.g. the **storage devices (hard disk, optical device, card reader)**, **Touchpad & Mouse & Audio**.
- **Chapter 3** The computer's **power** saving options.
- **Chapter 4** The installation of the **drivers** and utilities essential to the operation or improvement of some of the computer's subsystems.
- **Chapter 5** An outline of the computer's built-in software or **BIOS** (Basic Input Output System).
- **Chapter 6** Instructions for **upgrading** your computer.
- **Chapter 7** A quick guide to the computer's **PC Camera, Wireless LAN, Combo Bluetooth & WLAN** and **3G** modules (some of which may be **optional** depending on your purchase configuration).
- **Chapter 8** A **troubleshooting** guide.
- **Appendix A** Definitions of the **interface, ports/jacks** which allow your computer to communicate with external devices.
- **Appendix B** Information on **Control Center**.
- **Appendix C** Information on the **video driver controls**.
- **Appendix D** The computer's **specification**.
- **Appendix E** Information related to the *Windows 8* operating system.

Advanced Users

If you are an advanced user you may skip over most of this Quick Start Guide. However you may find it useful to refer to *“What to Install” on page 4 - 1*, *“BIOS Utilities” on page 5 - 1* and *“Upgrading The Computer” on page 6 - 1* in the remainder of the User’s Manual. You may also find the notes marked with a  of interest to you.

Beginners and Not-So-Advanced Users



Notes

Check the light colored boxes with the mark above to find detailed information about the computer’s features.

If you are new to computers (or do not have an advanced knowledge of them) then the information contained in the Quick Start Guide should be enough to get you up and running. Eventually you should try to look through all the documentation (more detailed descriptions of the functions, setup and system controls are covered in the remainder of the User’s Manual), but do not worry if you do not understand everything the first time. Keep this manual nearby and refer to it to learn as you go. You may find it useful to refer to the notes marked with a  as indicated in the margin. For a more detailed description of any of the interface ports and jacks see *“Interface (Ports & Jacks)” on page A - 1*.

Warning Boxes

No matter what your level please pay careful attention to the warning and safety information indicated by the  symbol. Also please note the safety and handling instructions as indicated in the *Preface*.

Not Included

Operating Systems (e.g. *Windows 7*) and applications (e.g. word processing, spreadsheet and database programs) have their own manuals, so please consult the appropriate manuals.



Drivers

If you are installing new system software, or are re-configuring your computer for a different system, you will need to install the drivers listed in ***“Drivers & Utilities” on page 4 - 1***. Drivers are programs which act as an interface between the computer and a hardware component e.g. a wireless network module. It is very important that you install the drivers in the order listed. You will be unable to use most advanced controls until the necessary drivers and utilities are properly installed. If your system hasn't been properly configured (your service representative may have already done that for you); refer to ***Chapter 4*** for installation instructions.

Ports and Jacks

See ***“Notebook Ports and Jacks” on page A - 2*** for a description of the interface (ports & jacks) which allow your computer to communicate with external devices, connect to the internet etc.

System Startup

1. Remove all packing materials.
2. Place the computer on a stable surface.
3. Securely attach any peripherals you want to use with the notebook (e.g. keyboard and mouse) to their ports.
4. Attach the AC/DC adapter to the DC-In jack on the left of the computer, then plug the AC power cord into an outlet, and connect the AC power cord to the AC/DC adapter.
5. Use one hand to raise the lid/LCD to a comfortable viewing angle (**do not exceed 130 degrees**); use the other hand (as illustrated in [Figure 1 - 1](#) below) to support the base of the computer (**Note: Never** lift the computer by the lid/LCD).



Figure 1 - 1 - Opening the Lid/LCD & Computer with AC/DC Adapter Plugged-In



Shutdown

Note that you should always shut your computer down by choosing the **Shut Down** command from the bottom right of the **Start** menu in **Windows**. This will help prevent hard disk or system problems.

System Software

Your computer may already come with system software pre-installed. Where this is not the case, or where you are re-configuring your computer for a different system, you will find the **Windows 7 (with Service Pack 1 installed)** and **Windows 8** operating systems are supported.

The majority of this menu covers information covers information related to the **Windows 7** operating system, however for specific information on the **Windows 8** operating system see [Appendix E](#).

Note: In order to run **Windows 7 (SPI)** without limitations or decreased performance, your computer requires a minimum **1GB** of system memory (RAM).



Windows 7/8 OS

In order to run **Windows 7 or 8 (32 Bit)** without limitations or decreased performance, your computer requires a minimum **1GB** of system memory (RAM), however if you are running **Windows 7 or 8 (64 bit)** your computer requires a minimum **2GB** of system memory (RAM).

Quick Start Guide

Model Differences

This notebook series includes **three** different models that vary slightly in design style (**Models A and B** include two distinct design styles), color, general appearance and features supported. Note that your computer may look slightly different from that pictured throughout this manual.

Feature	Model A	Model B	Model C
Display Type Supported	14.0" / 35.56cm HD (1366 * 768), 16:9 Backlit Panel	15.6" / 39.62cm HD (1366 * 768) / HD+ (1600 * 900), FHD (1920 * 1080), 16:9 Backlit Panel	17.3" / 43.94cm HD+ (1600 * 900), FHD (1920 * 1080), 16:9 Backlit Panel
Dimensions & Weight	See " <i>Dimensions & Weight</i> " on page D - 6.		
See " <i>Specifications</i> " on page D - 1 for full details .			

Table 1 - 1 - Model Differences

System Map: LCD Panel Open - Model A Design I



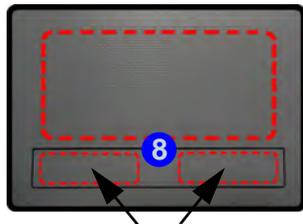

**Wireless Device
 Operation Aboard
 Aircraft**

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the key combinations to toggle power to the **3G/WLAN/Bluetooth** modules, and check the LED indicator or on-screen icon to see if the modules are powered on or not (see [Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15/ Table 1 - 2, on page 1 - 11](#)).

Figure 1 - 2
LCD Panel Open - Model A Design I

1. Built-In PC Camera (Optional)
2. LCD
3. Power Button
4. Hot Key Buttons
5. LED Status Indicators
6. Keyboard
7. Built-In Microphone
8. Touchpad & Buttons

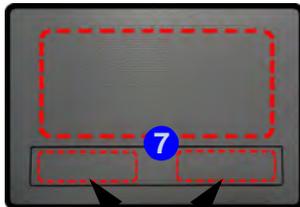


Touchpad Buttons
(valid operational area)

Note that the Touchpad and Buttons valid operational area is that indicated within the red dotted lines indicated on the right.

Figure 1 - 3
LCD Panel Open -
Model A Design II

1. Built-in PC Camera (Optional)
2. LCD
3. Power Button
4. LED Status Indicators
5. Keyboard
6. Built-In Microphone
7. Touchpad & Buttons



Touchpad Buttons
(valid operation area)

System Map: LCD Panel Open - Model A Design II



Note that the Touchpad and Buttons valid operational area is that indicated within the red dotted lines indicated on the left.



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the key combinations to toggle power to the **3G/WLAN/Bluetooth** modules, and check the LED indicator or on-screen icon to see if the modules are powered on or not (see [Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15](#) / [Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11](#)).

System Map: LCD Panel Open - Model B




**Wireless Device
 Operation Aboard
 Aircraft**

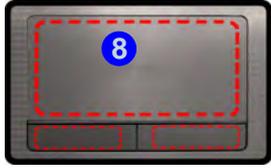
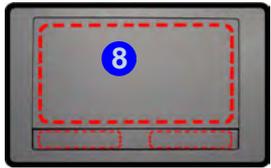
The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the key combinations to toggle power to the **3G/WLAN/Bluetooth** modules, and check the LED indicator or on-screen icon to see if the modules are powered on or not (see [Table 1 - 5](#), on [page 1 - 15](#); [Table 1 - 3](#), on [page 1 - 11](#)).



Figure 1 - 4
LCD Panel Open
Model B

1. Built-in PC Camera (Optional)
2. PC Camera LED
3. LCD
4. Power Button
5. LED Status Indicators
6. Keyboard
7. Built-In Microphone
8. Touchpad & Buttons

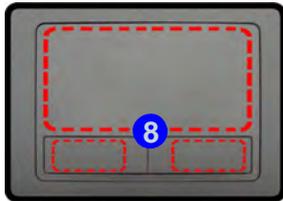


Note that the Touchpad and Buttons valid operational area is that indicated within the red dotted lines indicated on the right.

Quick Start Guide

Figure 1 - 5
LCD Panel Open
Model C

1. Built-In PC Camera (Optional)
2. PC Camera LED
3. LCD
4. Power Button
5. LED Indicators
6. Keyboard
7. Built-In Microphone
8. Touchpad & Buttons



Note that the Touchpad and Buttons valid operational area is that indicated within the red dotted lines above.

System Map: Model C - LCD Panel Open



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the key combinations to toggle power to the **WLAN/Bluetooth** modules, and check the LED indicator or on-screen icon to see if the modules are powered on or not (see [Table 1 - 5](#), on [page 1 - 15](#)/ [Table 1 - 3](#), on [page 1 - 11](#)).

LED Indicators

The LED indicators on the computer display helpful information about the current status of the computer.

Icon	Color	Description
	Orange	DC Power is Plugged In
	Green	The Computer is On
	Blinking Green	The Computer is in Sleep Mode
	Blinking Orange	The PC Camera is In Use (for 14.0" / 35.56cm Model A computers only)
	Orange	The Battery is Charging
	Green	The Battery is Fully Charged
	Blinking Orange	The Battery Has Reached Critically Low Power Status

Table 1 - 2 - LED Power Indicators

Icon	Color	Description
	Green	The (optional) Wireless LAN Module is Powered On
	Orange	Win 7 - The (optional) Bluetooth Module is Powered On
Win 8 - The (optional) Bluetooth Module is Installed (<i>this is not a power on/off indicator in Windows 8</i>)		
	Green	Hard Disk Activity
	Green	Number Lock Activated
	Green	Caps Lock Activated
	Green	Scroll Lock Activated
	Blue	Power Button

Table 1 - 3 - LED Status Indicators

Hot Key Buttons - Some Model A Design Styles

These buttons give instant access to the default Internet browser and e-mail program, and allow you to toggle the **Silent Mode** on/off with one quick button press.

Hot Key	Function
	
 1 OR  1	Toggle *Silent Mode (for power saving) OR WLAN ON/OFF
 2	Activate the Default Internet Program
 3	Activate the Default E-Mail Browser (Note that this button has no function in Windows 7 without Outlook/Outlook Express installed. If Outlook/Outlook Express are installed then the button will activate the application)

Table 1 - 4 - Hot Key Buttons - Some Model A Design Styles

*When enabled, **Silent Mode** will reduce fan noise and save power consumption. Note this may reduce computer performance.

Keyboard - Model A

The keyboard has an embedded numerical keypad for easy numeric data input, and function keys to change operational features instantly. See *Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15* for function key details and *Appendix E* for *Windows 8* keyboard information.

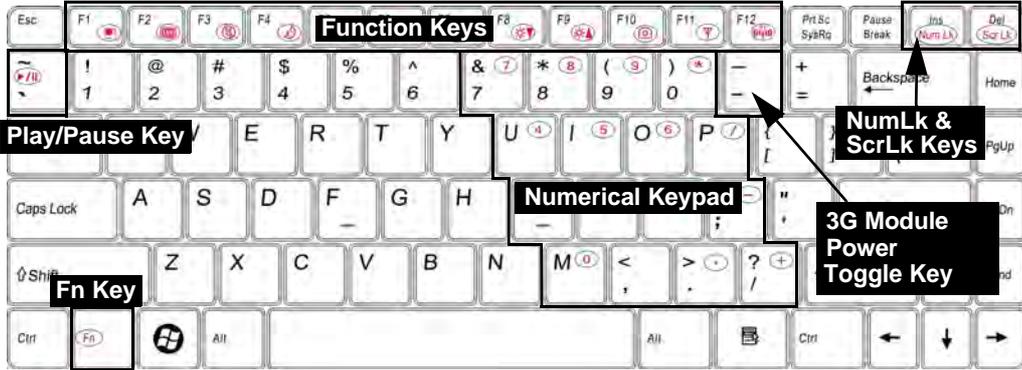


Figure 1 - 6 - Keyboard - Model A



Special Characters

Some software applications allow the number-keys to be used with **Alt** to produce special characters. These special characters can only be produced by using the numeric keypad. Regular number keys (in the upper row of the keyboard) will not work. Make sure that **NumLk** is on.



Other Keyboards

If your keyboard is damaged or you just want to make a change, you can use any standard USB keyboard. The system will detect and enable it automatically. However special functions/hot-keys unique to the system's regular keyboard may not work.

NumLk & ScrLk

Hold down the **Fn Key** and either **NumLk** or **ScrLk** to enable number or scroll lock, and check the LED indicator for status.



Other Keyboards

If your keyboard is damaged or you just want to make a change, you can use any standard USB keyboard. The system will detect and enable it automatically. However special functions/hot-keys unique to the system's regular keyboard may not work.

NumLk & ScrLk

Hold down the **Fn Key** and either **NumLk** or **ScrLk** to enable number or scroll lock, and check the LED indicator for status.

Keyboard - Models B & C

The keyboard has an embedded numerical keypad for easy numeric data input, and function keys to change operational features instantly. See [Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15](#) for function key details and [Appendix E](#) for *Windows 8* keyboard information.



Figure 1 - 7 - Keyboard - Models B & C



Special Characters

Some software applications allow the number-keys to be used with **Alt** to produce special characters. These special characters can only be produced by using the numeric keypad. Regular number keys (in the upper row of the keyboard) will not work. Make sure that **NumLk** is on.

Function/Hot Key Indicators

The **function keys** (F1 - F12 etc.) will act as **hot keys** when pressed while the **Fn** key is held down. In addition to the basic function key combinations; visual indicators are available when the hot key utility is installed.

Keys	Function	Keys	Function
Fn + ~	Play/Pause (in Audio/Video Programs)	Fn + F8/F9	Brightness Decrease/Increase 
Fn + 	3G Module Power Toggle (Models A & B Only)  		Silent Mode Toggle (for some Model A Designs Only - see page 3 - 2)  
Fn + F1	TouchPad Toggle  	Fn + F10	PC Camera Power Toggle  
Fn + F2	Turn LCD Backlight Off (Press a key to or use TouchPad to turn on)	Fn + F11	WLAN Module Power Toggle  
Fn + F3	Mute Toggle  	Fn + F12	Bluetooth Module Power Toggle  
Fn + F4	Sleep Toggle	Fn + NumLk	Number Lock Toggle  
Fn + F5/ F6	Volume Decrease/ Increase 	Fn + ScrLk	Scroll Lock Toggle  
Fn + F7	Display Toggle	Caps Lock	Caps Lock Toggle  

Table 1 - 5 - Function & Hot Key Indicators

Control Center

Press the **Fn + Esc** key combination, or **double-click the icon**  in the **notification area of the taskbar** to toggle the **Control Center** on/off. The **Control Center** gives quick access to frequently used controls and enables you to quickly turn modules on/off (see [Appendix B](#) for full details). The **Control Center** in **Windows 8** works under the **Desktop** app and not under the Start screen, and does not feature the wireless/Bluetooth buttons and Airplane Mode (see page [E - 15](#) for **Windows 8** information).



Control Center

Click on any button to turn any of the modules (e.g. TouchPad, Camera) on/off.

Click on the power conservation modes to switch between Performance, Balanced or Energy Star modes (see page [3 - 10](#)). To remove the Power Conservation Modes screen just click in a blank area of the icon or press a key on the keyboard.

Click on the buttons (or just click and hold the mouse button) to adjust the slider for Brightness/Volume.

Click on Display Switch and click to choose a display mode from the menu (see page [C - 10](#)).



Figure 1 - 8 - Control Center

System Map: Front & Left Views - Models A & B

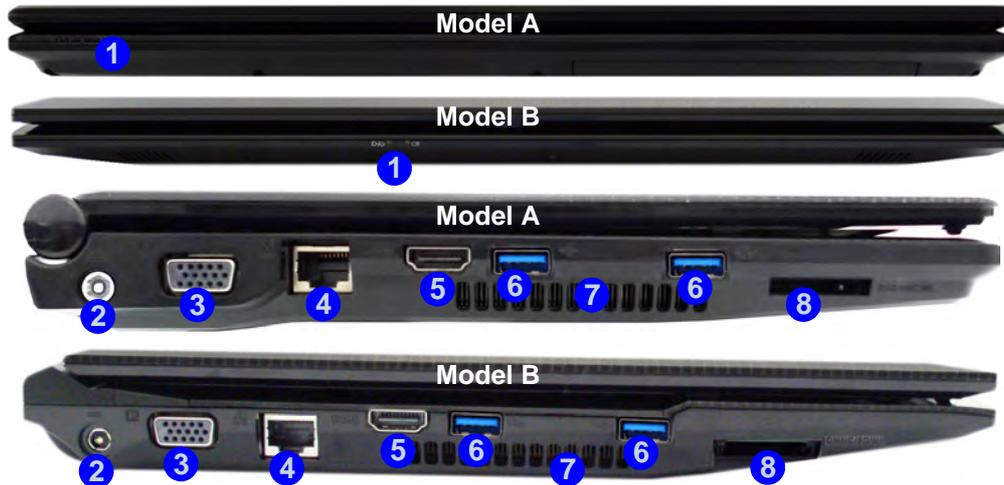


Figure 1 - 9
Front & Left Views
Models A & B

1. LED Power Indicators
2. DC-In Jack
3. External Monitor Port
4. RJ-45 LAN Jack
5. HDMI-Out Port
6. USB 3.0 Port
7. Vent/Fan Intake/Outlet
8. Multi-in-1 Card Reader



Multi-In-1 Card Reader

The card reader allows you to use the most popular digital storage card formats:

MMC (MultiMedia Card) / RSMHC
SD (Secure Digital) / Mini SD / SDHC / SDXC
MS (Memory Stick) / MS Pro / MS Duo

Figure 1 - 10
Front & Left Views
Model C

1. LED Indicators
2. DC-In Jack
3. External Monitor Port
4. RJ-45 LAN Jack
5. HDMI-Out Port
6. USB 3.0 Port
7. Vent/Fan Intake
8. Multi-In-1 Card Reader

System Map: Front & Left Views - Model C



Multi-In-1 Card Reader

The card reader allows you to use the most popular digital storage card formats:

MMC (MultiMedia Card) / RS MMC
 SD (Secure Digital) / Mini SD / SDHC / SDXC
 MS (Memory Stick) / MS Pro / MS Duo

USB 3.0 Port OR USB 2.0 Port

This model includes USB 3.0 ports on the left side of the computer. USB 3.0 ports are denoted by their **blue color**; USB 2.0 ports are colored black. Note that the USB 3.0 ports require a driver installation for **Windows 7** (**Windows 8** does not require a driver) and do not support wake on USB.

System Map: Right & Rear Views - Models A & B

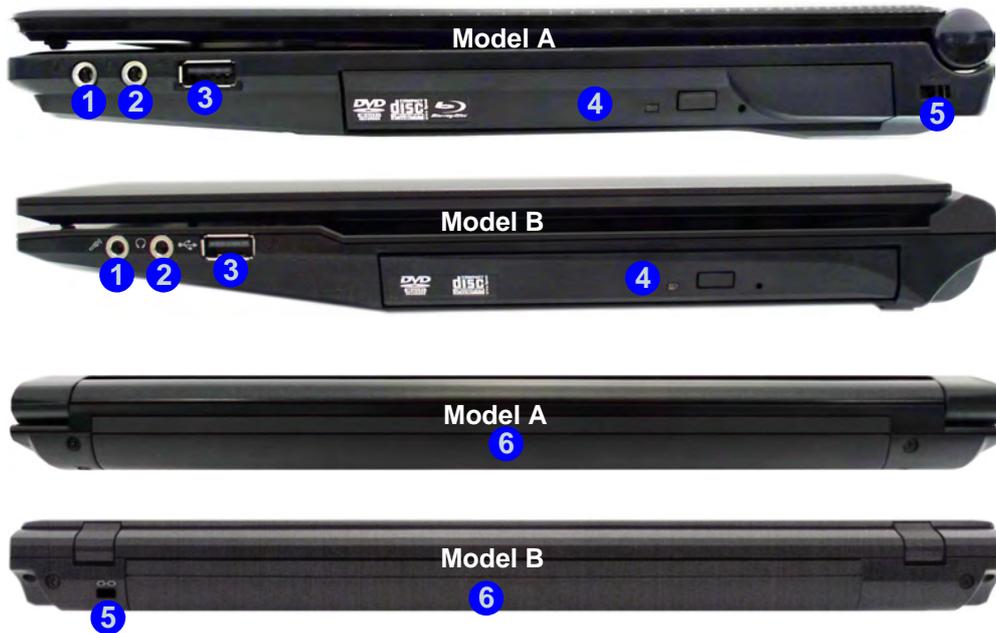


Figure 1 - 11
Right & Rear Views
Models A & B

1. Microphone-In Jack
2. Headphone-Out Jack
3. USB 2.0 Port
4. Optical Device Drive Bay (for CD/DVD Device)
5. Security Lock Slot
6. Battery



Battery Information

Always completely discharge, then fully charge, a new battery before using it. Completely discharge and charge the battery at least once every 30 days or after about 20 partial discharges. See ["Battery Information" on page 3 - 11](#) for full instructions.

Figure 1 - 12
**Right & Rear Views -
Model C**

1. Headphone-Out Jack
2. Microphone-In Jack
3. USB 2.0 Port
4. Optical Device Drive Bay
5. Security Lock Slot
6. Battery

System Map: Right & Rear Views - Model C



Battery Information

Always completely discharge, then fully charge, a new battery before using it. Completely discharge and charge the battery at least once every 30 days or after about 20 partial discharges. See [“Battery Information” on page 3 - 11](#) for full instructions.



Disk Eject Warning

Don't try to eject a CD/DVD while the system is accessing it. This may cause the system to "crash". Stop the disk first then eject it, or press the stop button twice.

CD/DVD Emergency Eject

If you need to manually eject a CD/DVD (e.g. due to an unexpected power interruption) you may push the end of a straightened paper clip into the emergency eject hole. Do not use a sharpened pencil or any object that may break and become lodged in the hole. Don't try to remove a floppy disk/CD/DVD while the system is accessing it. This may cause the system to "crash".



Changing DVD Regional Codes

Go to the **Control Panel** and double-click **Device Manager (Hardware and Sound)**, then click the **+** next to **DVD/CD-ROM drives**. Double-click on the DVD-ROM device to bring up the **Properties** dialog box, and select the **DVD Region** (tab) to bring up the control panel to allow you to adjust the regional code (see "[DVD Regional Codes](#)" on page 2 - 5).

DVD region detection is device dependent, not OS-dependent. You can select your module's region code **5** times. The fifth selection is permanent. This cannot be altered even if you change your operating system or you use the module in another computer.

Figure 1 - 13
Bottom View
Model A

1. Battery
2. Component Bay Cover
3. Vent/Fan Intake/Outlet
4. Hard Disk Bay Cover
5. 3G USIM Card Cover (Optional)



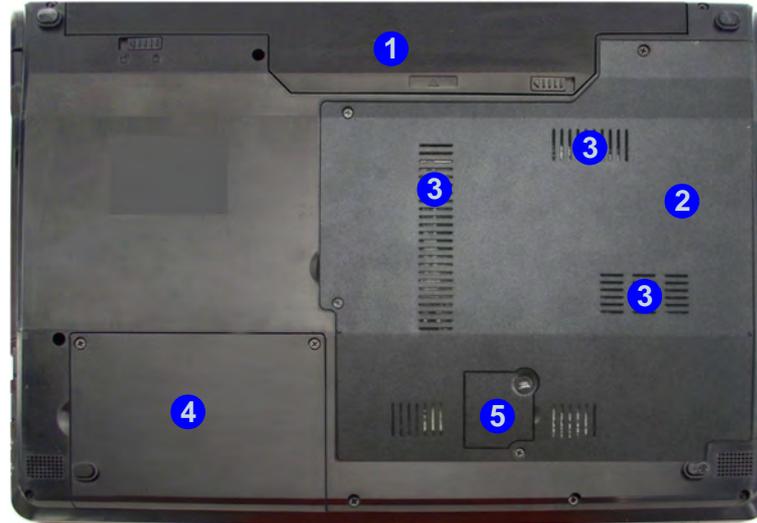
CPU

The CPU is not a user serviceable part.

Overheating

To prevent your computer from overheating make sure nothing blocks the Vent/Fan Intake while the computer is in use.

System Map: Bottom View - Model A



Bottom Covers

If your model includes the 3G option then a small cover **5** to enable you to access the module's USIM card will be included (see *"3G Module"* on page 7 - 44).

System Map: Bottom View - Model B

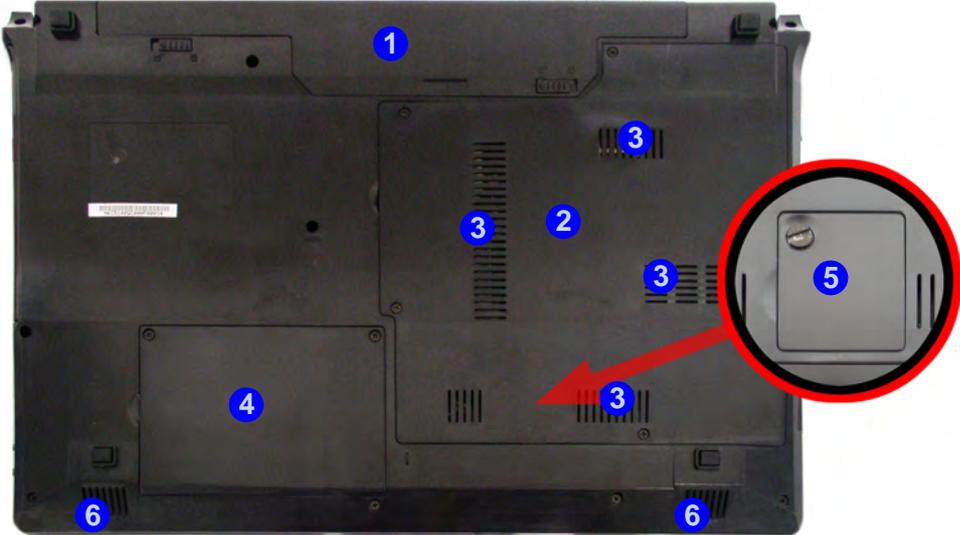


Figure 1 - 14
Bottom View - Model B

- 1. Battery
- 2. Component Bay Cover
- 3. Vent/Fan Intake/Outlet
- 4. Hard Disk Bay Cover
- 5. 3G USIM Card Cover (Optional)
- 6. Speakers


CPU

The CPU is not a user serviceable part.

Overheating

To prevent your computer from overheating make sure nothing blocks the Vent/Fan Intake while the computer is in use.


Bottom Covers

If your model includes the 3G option then a small cover **5** to enable you to access the module's USIM card will be included (see *"3G Module"* on page 7 - 44).

Figure 1 - 15
Bottom View
Model C

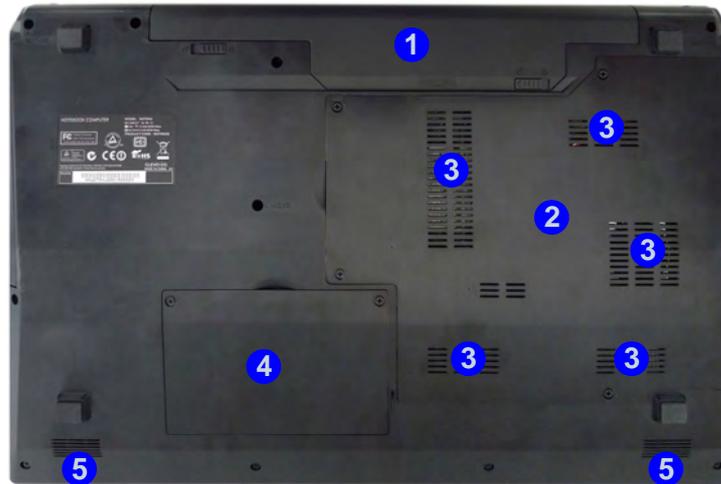
1. Battery
2. Component Bay Cover
3. Fan Intake/Vent
4. Hard Disk Bay Cover
5. Speakers



Battery Information

Always completely discharge, then fully charge, a new battery before using it. Completely discharge and charge the battery at least once every 30 days or after about 20 partial discharges.

System Map: Bottom View - Model C



CPU

The CPU is not a user serviceable part.

Overheating

To prevent your computer from overheating make sure nothing blocks the Vent/Fan Intake while the computer is in use.

Windows 7 Start Menu & Control Panel

Most of the control panels, utilities and programs within *Windows 7* are accessed from the **Start** menu (see [Appendix E](#) for information on the **Windows 8** OS). When you install programs and utilities they will be installed on your hard disk drive, and a shortcut will usually be placed in the **Start** menu and/or the desktop. Right-click the **Start menu** icon , and then select **Properties** to customize the appearance of the **Start** menu.

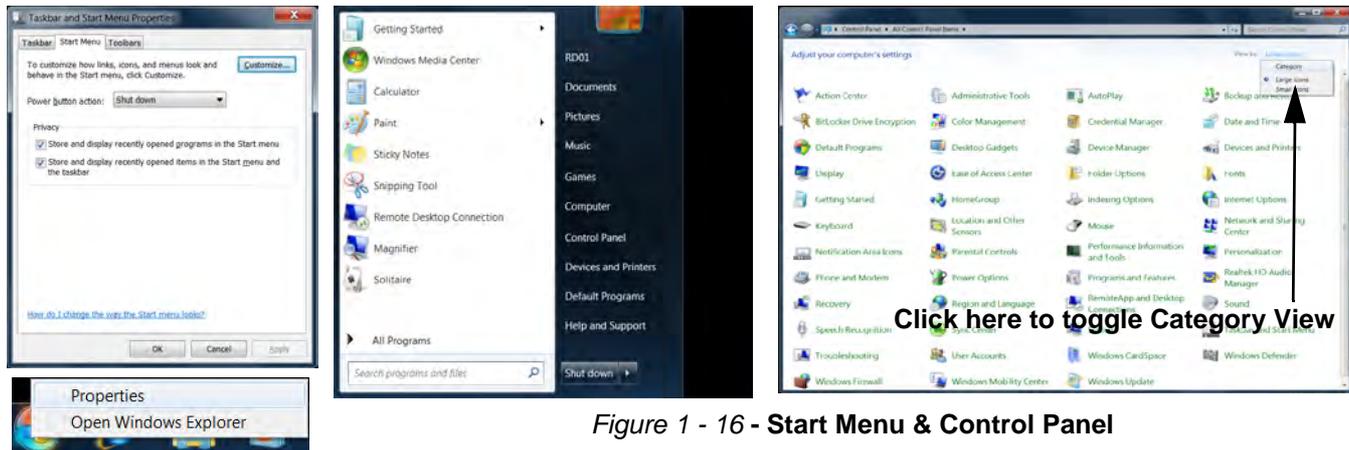


Figure 1 - 16 - Start Menu & Control Panel

In many instances throughout this manual you will see an instruction to open the **Control Panel**. The **Control Panel** is accessed from the **Start** menu, and it allows you to configure the settings for most of the key features in *Windows* (e.g. power, video, network, audio etc.). *Windows 7* provides basic controls for many of the features, however many new controls are added (or existing ones are enhanced) when you install the drivers. To see all controls it may be necessary to toggle off *Category View* to view the control panel icons.

Video Features

You can switch display devices, and configure display options, from the **Display** control panel (in **Appearance and Personalization**) in *Windows 7* (see over). For more detailed video information see “*Video Driver Controls*” on page C - 1. To access **Display (Control Panel)** and **Screen Resolution** in *Windows*:

1. Click **Start** and click **Control Panel**.
2. Click **Display** (icon) - In the **Appearance and Personalization** category.
3. Click **Adjust Screen Resolution/Adjust resolution**.
4. Alternatively you can right-click the desktop and select **Screen resolution**.
5. Use the dropbox to select the screen **Resolution** ① (*Figure 1 - 17*).
6. Click **Advanced settings** ② (*Figure 1 - 17*) to bring up the **Advanced** properties tabs.



Figure 1 - 17 - Screen Resolution

To access the *Intel(R) Graphics and Media Control Panel*:

1. Click **Advanced settings** ② (*Figure 1 - 17 on page 1 - 26*) in the **Display Settings** control panel in *Windows*.
 2. Click **Graphics Properties (button)** ③ (*Figure 1 - 18*) in the **Intel Graphics & Media Control Panel** tab.
- OR
3. Right-click the desktop and select **Graphics Properties** from the menu.
- OR
4. Click the icon ④ (*Figure 1 - 18*) in the taskbar and select **Graphics Properties** from the menu.
- OR
5. Access the **Intel(R) Graphics and Media Control Panel** from the *Windows* control panel in **Classic View**.

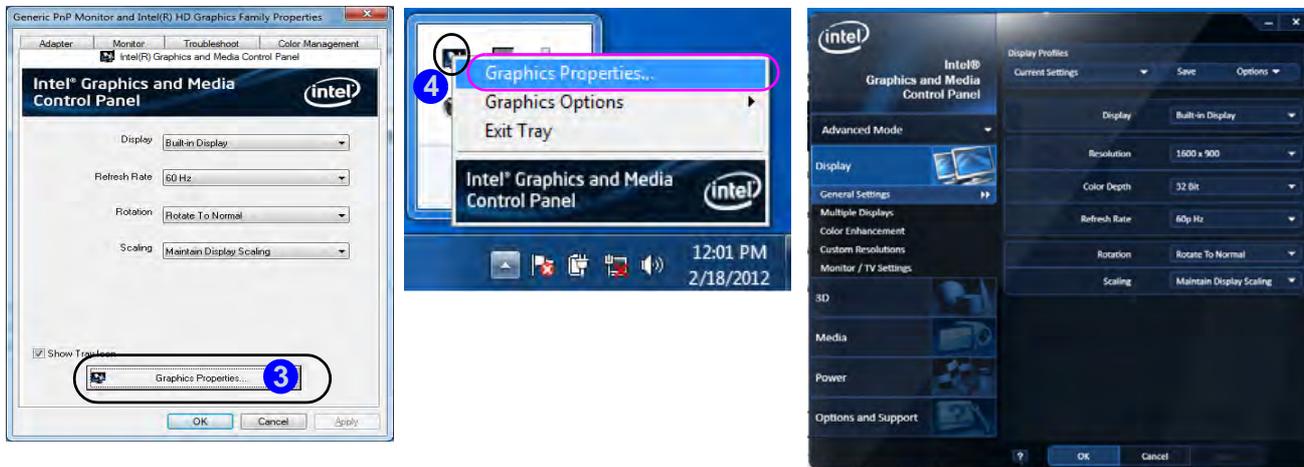


Figure 1 - 18 - Intel Graphics and Media Control Panel

Power Options

The **Power Options (Hardware and Sound menu)** control panel icon in *Windows* (see page *1 - 24* or see *Appendix E* for information on the **Windows 8 OS**) allows you to configure power management features for your computer. You can conserve power by means of **power plans** and configure the options for the **power button**, **sleep button**, **computer lid (when closed)**, **display** and **sleep** mode from the left menu. Note that the **Power saver** plan may have an affect on computer performance.

Click to select one of the existing plans, or click *Create a power plan* in the left menu and select the options to create a new plan. Click *Change plan settings* and click *Change advanced power settings* to access further configuration options. Pay attention to the instructions on battery care in *“Battery Information” on page 3 - 11*.

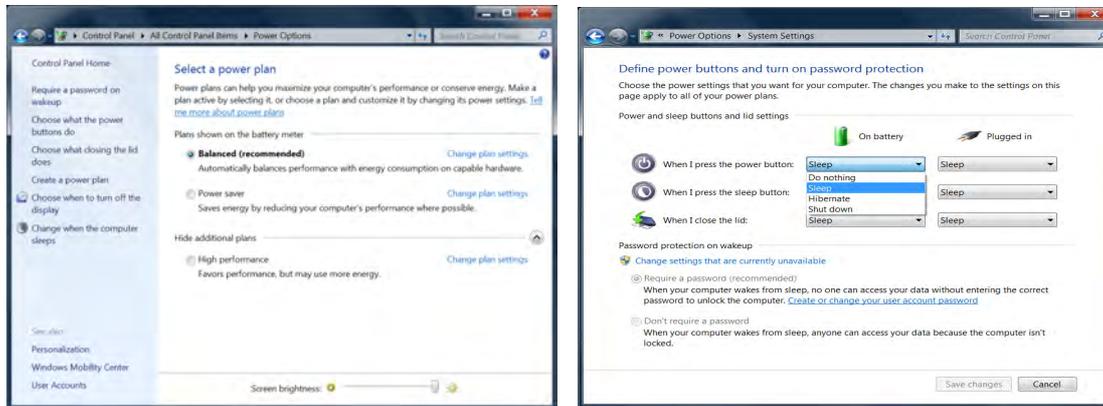


Figure 1 - 19 - Power Options

Chapter 2: Features & Components

Overview

Read this chapter to learn more about the following main features and components of the computer:

- Hard Disk Drive
- Optical (CD/DVD) Device
- Multi-In-1 Card Reader
- TouchPad and Buttons/Mouse
- Audio Features

For information on the *Windows 8* operating system see [Appendix E](#).



Power Safety

Before attempting to access any of the internal components of your computer please ensure that the machine is not connected to the AC power, and that the machine is turned off. Also ensure that all peripheral cables, including phone lines, are disconnected from the computer.

Hard Disk Drive

The hard disk drive is used to store your data in the computer. The hard disk can be taken out to accommodate other 2.5" serial (SATA) hard disk drives with a height of 9.5 mm.

The hard disk is accessible from the bottom of your computer as seen below. For further details see [“Upgrading the Hard Disk Drive” on page 6 - 5](#).

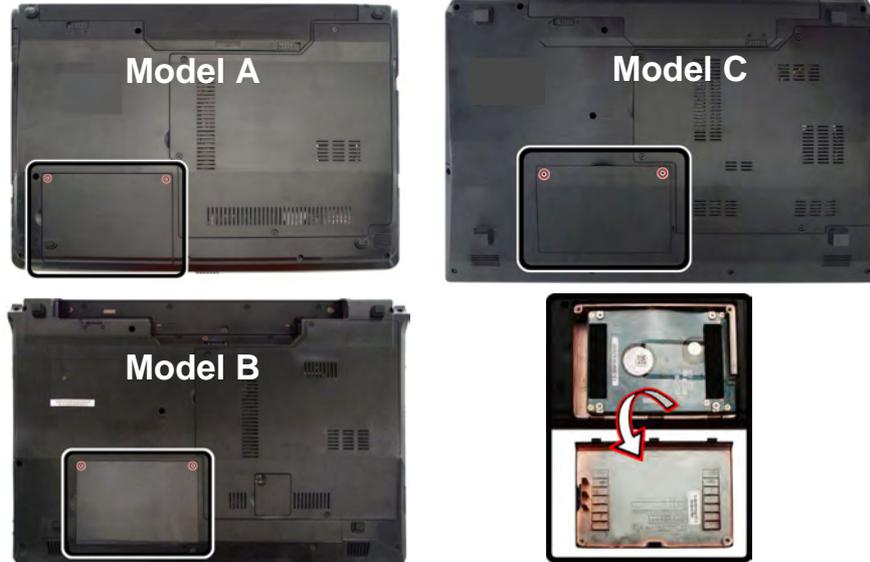


Figure 2 - 1
Hard Disk Location

Optical (CD/DVD) Device

There is a bay for a 5.25" optical (CD/DVD) device (12.7mm height). The actual device will depend on the module you purchased (see *“Storage” on page D - 4*). The optical device is usually labeled **“Drive D:”** and may be used as a boot device if properly set in the **BIOS** (see *“Boot Menu” on page 5 - 16*).

Loading Discs

To insert a CD/DVD, press the open button **1** and carefully place a CD/DVD onto the disc tray with label-side facing up (use just enough force for the disc to click onto the tray’s spindle). Gently push the CD/DVD tray in until its lock “clicks” and you are ready to start. The busy indicator **2** will light up while data is being accessed, or while an audio/video CD, or DVD, is playing. If power is unexpectedly interrupted, insert an object such as a straightened paper clip into the emergency eject hole **3** to open the tray.



Sound Volume Adjustment

How high the sound volume can be set depends on the setting of the volume control within **Windows**. Click the **Volume** icon on the taskbar to check the setting (see *“Audio Features” on page 2 - 12*).

Figure 2 - 2
Optical Device



CD Emergency Eject

If you need to manually eject a CD (e.g. due to an unexpected power interruption) you may push the end of a straightened paper clip into the emergency eject hole. However please do NOT use a sharpened pencil or similar object that may break and become lodged in the hole.

Disk Eject Warning

Don't try to remove a CD/DVD while the system is accessing it. This may cause the system to "crash".

Handling CDs or DVDs

Proper handling of your CDs/DVDs will prevent them from being damaged. Please follow the advice below to make sure that the data stored on your CDs/DVDs can be accessed.

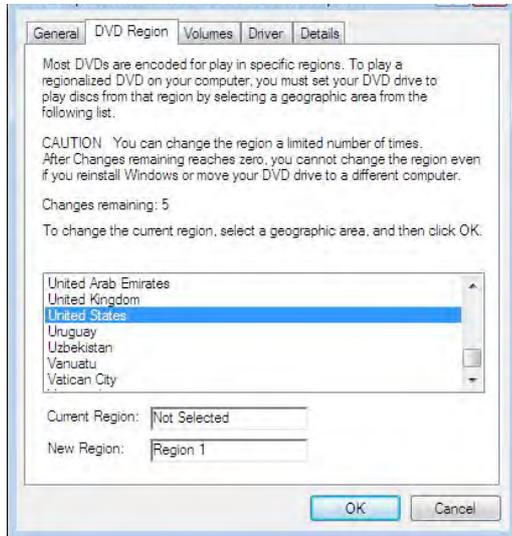
Note the following:

- Hold the CD or DVD by the edges; do not touch the surface of the disc.
- Use a clean, soft, dry cloth to remove dust or fingerprints.
- Do not write on the surface with a pen.
- Do not attach paper or other materials to the surface of the disc.
- Do not store or place the CD or DVD in high-temperature areas.
- Do not use benzene, thinner, or other cleaners to clean the CD or DVD.
- Do not bend the CD or DVD.
- Do not drop or subject the CD or DVD to shock.

DVD Regional Codes

To change the DVD regional codes:

1. Go to the **Control Panel**
2. Double-click **Device Manager (Hardware and Sound)**, then click the **+** next to **DVD/CD-ROM drives**.
3. Double-click on the DVD-ROM device to bring up the **Properties** dialog box, and select the **DVD Region** (tab) to bring up the control panel to allow you to adjust the regional code.



- **Region 1** - USA & Canada
- **Region 2** - Western Europe, Japan, South Africa, Middle East & Egypt
- **Region 3** - South-East Asia, Taiwan, South Korea, The Philippines, Indonesia, Hong Kong
- **Region 4** - South & Central America, Mexico, Australia, New Zealand
- **Region 5** - N Korea, Russia, Eastern Europe, India & Most of Africa
- **Region 6** - China



DVD Region Note

DVD region detection is device dependent, not OS-dependent. You can select your module's region code 5 times. The fifth selection is permanent. This cannot be altered even if you change your operating system or you use the module in another computer.

Figure 2 - 3
DVD Region Codes



Card Reader Cover

Make sure you keep the rubber cover provided in the card reader when not in use. This will help prevent foreign objects and/or dust getting in to the card reader.

Multi-In-1 Card Reader

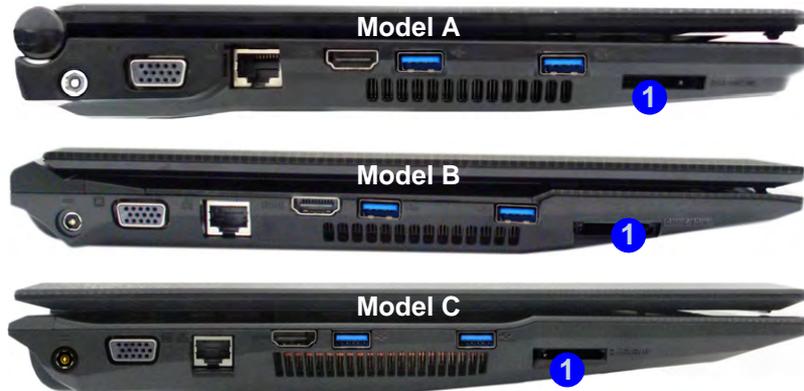
The card reader allows you to use some of the latest digital storage cards. Push the card into the slot and it will appear as a removable device, and can be accessed in the same way as your hard disk (s). Make sure you install the card reader driver (see *“CardReader” on page 4 - 6.*

- MMC (MultiMedia Card) / RS MMC
- SD (Secure Digital) / Mini SD / SDHC / SDXC
- MS (Memory Stick) / MS Pro / MS Duo

Note: Some of these cards require PC adapters that are usually supplied with the cards.

Figure 2 - 4
Left View

1. Card Reader



TouchPad and Buttons/Mouse

The TouchPad is an alternative to the mouse; however, you can also add a mouse to your computer through one of the USB ports. The TouchPad buttons function in much the same way as a two-button mouse.



Mouse Driver

If you are using an external mouse your operating system may be able to auto-configure your mouse during its installation or only enable its basic functions. Be sure to check the device's user documentation for details.

Features & Components

2



TouchPad Scrolling

This computer model series may feature different TouchPad versions.

These TouchPads may differ in their vertical scrolling function in most scrollable windows.

Some TouchPads require sliding the finger up and down on the right of the TouchPad to scroll the window. Other versions require tapping/holding down the finger at the top right or bottom right of the TouchPad to scroll the window.

Once you have installed the TouchPad driver (see *“Touchpad” on page 4 - 6*) you can configure the functions from the Mouse control panel in *Windows*, or by double-clicking the TouchPad driver icon  in the notification area. You may then configure the TouchPad tapping, buttons, scrolling, pointer motion and sensitivity options to your preferences. You will find further information at www.synaptics.com.

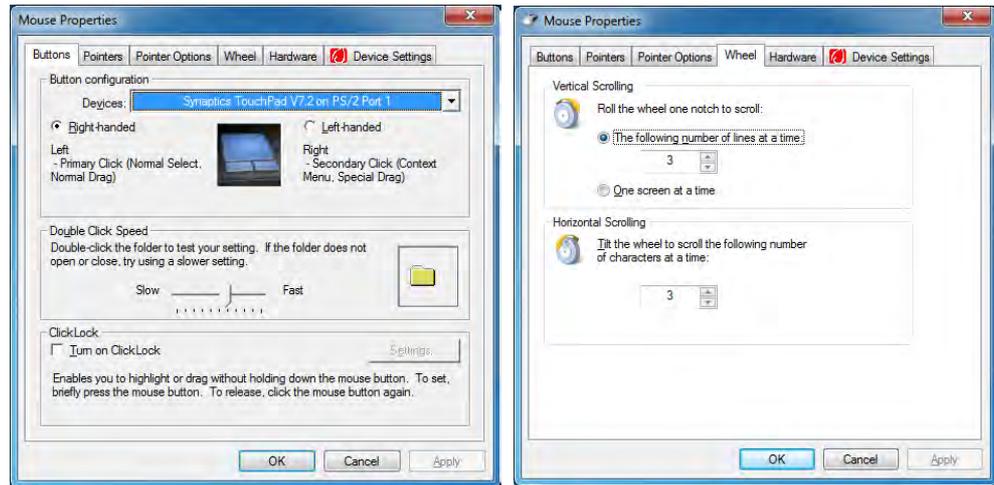


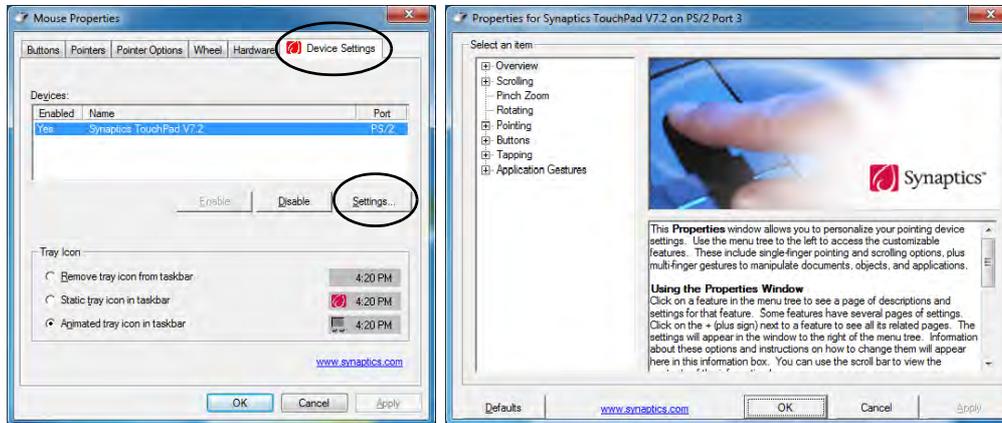
Figure 2 - 5
Mouse Properties

Gestures and Device Settings

The Synaptics Gestures Suite application allows you to use a specific gesture (action) on the surface of the TouchPad to perform specific actions to manipulate documents, objects and applications.

You can configure the settings from the Device Settings tab in **Mouse Properties**:

1. Click **Start**, and click **Control Panel** (or point to **Settings** and click **Control Panel**).
2. Click **Mouse (Hardware and Sound)**.
3. Click **Device Settings** (tab) and click **Settings**.
4. Use the menu tree on the left to access the user configurable settings.



Show Video

You can get a clearer view of the gestures involved by clicking the **Show Video** option for each gesture item.

Select the gesture (**Pinch Zoom, Rotating, Three Fingers Down and Three Finger Flick**) in the **Device Settings > Settings** left tree menu and click the **Show Video** button to see the demonstration video.

For more details on any of the gestures see the **help** in the lower part of the right menu window.

Figure 2 - 6
Mouse Properties - Device Settings

Scrolling

The Two-Finger scrolling feature works in most scrollable windows and allows you to scroll horizontally and vertically. Place two fingers, slightly separated, on the TouchPad surface and slide both fingers in the direction required (in a straight continuous motion).

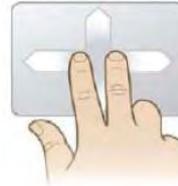


Figure 2 - 7
Scrolling Gesture

Zooming

The Pinch Zoom gesture can be used to perform the same function as a scroll wheel in *Windows* applications that support CTRL + scroll wheel zoom functionality. Place two fingers on the TouchPad (for best results use the tips of the fingers) and slide them apart to zoom in, or closer together to zoom out.

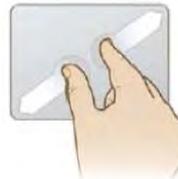


Figure 2 - 8
Zooming Gesture

Rotating

Use the Pivot Rotate gesture to rotate objects (e.g. photos) in 90 degree increments. Place a finger down on the left “target” zone and keep it stationary. Place another finger near the middle of the TouchPad and slide it in a circular motion around the stationary finger (clockwise or counterclockwise) to rotate the object.



Figure 2 - 9
Rotating Gesture

Three Finger-Flick/Three Fingers Down (Press)

The Three Finger-Flick gesture may be used to enhance navigation with a variety of applications such as browsing the Internet or scrolling through a photo viewer. The Three Fingers Down gesture may be used to launch user-selectable applications.

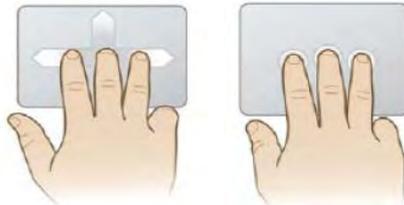


Figure 2 - 10
Flick/Press
Gesture

Sound Volume Adjustment

The sound volume level is set using the volume control within **Windows** (and the volume function keys on the computer). Click the volume icon in the taskbar to check the setting.

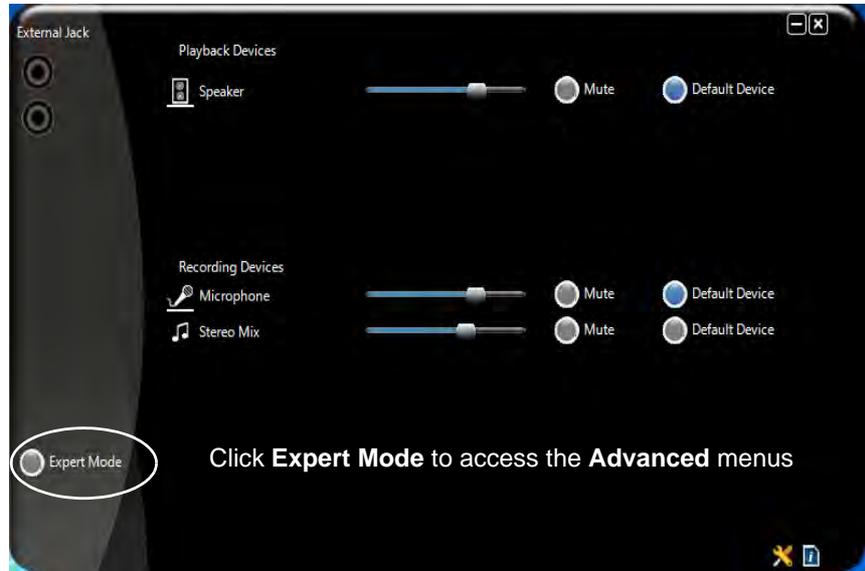


Figure 2 - 11
VIA HD Audio Deck

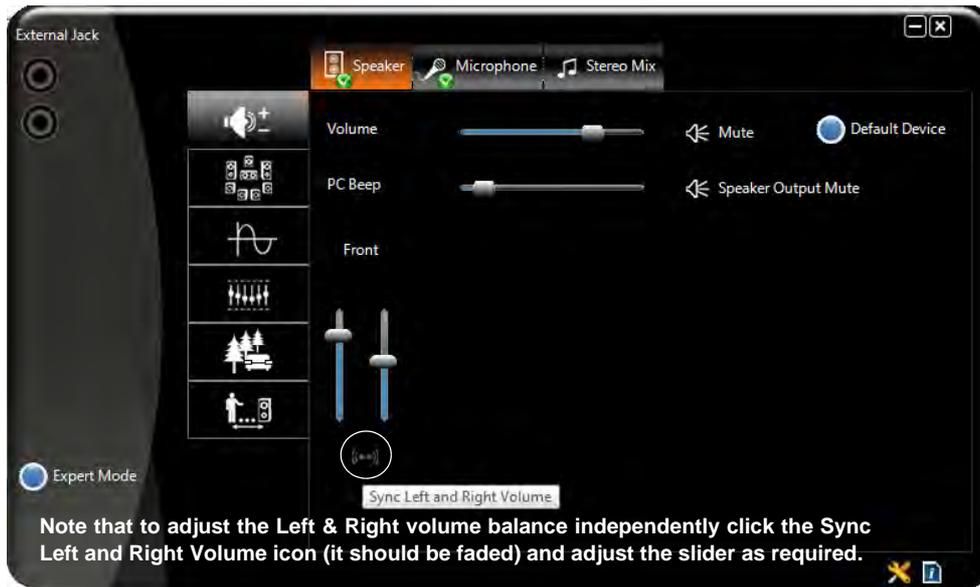
Audio Features

You can configure the audio options on your computer from the **Sound** control panel in **Windows**, from the **HD VDeck** icon on the desktop or **VIA HD Audio Deck** control panel  [VIA HD Audio Deck](#) .

The volume may also be adjusted by means of the **Fn + F5/F6** key combination.



Expert Mode will allow you to access more advanced configuration menus for **Speaker**, **Microphone** and **Stereo Mix**.



Syncing Left & Right Volume Balance

If you wish to adjust the left and right channel volume levels separately, you will need to adjust this from the **VIA HD Audio Deck in Expert Mode**.

Click **Speaker** in **VIA HD Audio Deck** (in Expert Mode) and click the **Sync Left and Right** volume button (see left). You can then adjust the volume sliders independently (this setting also controls the **Balance** setting in the Windows **Sound** control panel).

Figure 2 - 12
VIA HD Audio Deck
(Expert Mode)

Chapter 3: Power Management

Overview

To conserve power, especially when using the battery, your computer power management conserves power by controlling individual components of the computer (the LCD and hard disk drive) or the whole system. This chapter covers:

- The Power Sources
- Turning On the Computer
- Power Plans
- Power-Saving States
- Configuring the Power Buttons
- Power Conservation Modes
- Battery Information

The computer uses enhanced power saving techniques to give the operating system (OS) direct control over the power and thermal states of devices and processors. For example, this enables the OS to set devices into low-power states based on user settings and information from applications.

For information on the *Windows 8* operating system see [Appendix E](#).



OS Note

Power management functions will vary slightly depending on your operating system. For more information it is best to refer to the user's manual of your operating system.

(**Note:** All pictures used on the following pages are from the *Windows 7* OS.)



Silent Mode (For Some Model A Designs Only)

Use the  key to toggle **Silent Mode** to reduce fan noise and save power consumption. Note this may reduce computer performance.

The Power Sources

The computer can be powered by either an AC/DC adapter or a battery pack.

AC/DC Adapter

Use only the AC/DC adapter that comes with your computer. The wrong type of AC/DC adapter will damage the computer and its components.

1. Attach the AC/DC adapter to the DC-in jack on the left of the computer.
2. Plug the AC power cord into an outlet, and then connect the AC power cord to the AC/DC adapter.
3. Raise the lid/LCD to a comfortable viewing angle.
4. Press the power button to turn “On”.

Battery

The battery allows you to use your computer while you are on the road or when an electrical outlet is unavailable. Battery life varies depending on the applications and the configuration you're using. **To increase battery life, let the battery discharge completely before recharging** (see *“How do I completely discharge the battery?” on page 3 - 15*).

We recommend that you do not remove the battery. For more information on the battery, please refer to *“Battery Information” on page 3 - 11*.

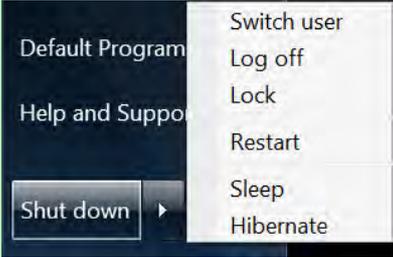
Turning On the Computer

Now you are ready to begin using your computer. To turn it on simply press the power button on the front panel.

When the computer is on, you can use the power button as a Stand by/Hibernate/Shutdown hot-key button when it is pressed for less than **4 seconds** (pressing and holding the power button for longer than this will shut the computer down). Use **Power Options** in the *Windows* control panel to configure this feature.


Shut Down

Note that you should always shut your computer down by choosing the **Shut Down** command from the bottom right of the **Start** menu in *Windows*. This will help prevent hard disk or system problems.




Forced Off

If the system “hangs”, and the **Ctrl + Alt + Del** key combination doesn’t work, press the power button for **4 seconds**, or longer, to force the system to turn itself off.

Power Button as Stand by or Hibernate Button

You can use the OS’s **Power Options** control panel to set the power button to send the system into Stand by or Hibernate mode (see your OS’s documentation, or *“Configuring the Power Buttons” on page 3 - 8* for details).



Resuming Operation

See [Table 3 - 1](#), on [page 3 - 9](#) for information on how to resume from a power-saving state.

Password

It is recommended that you enable a password on system resume in order to protect your data.

Power Plans

The computer can be configured to conserve power by means of **power plans**. You can use (or modify) an existing **power plan**, or create a new one.

The settings may be adjusted to set the **display** to turn off after a specified time, and to send the computer into **Sleep** after a period of inactivity.

Click *Change plan settings* and then click *Change advanced power settings* to access further configuration options in **Advanced Settings**.

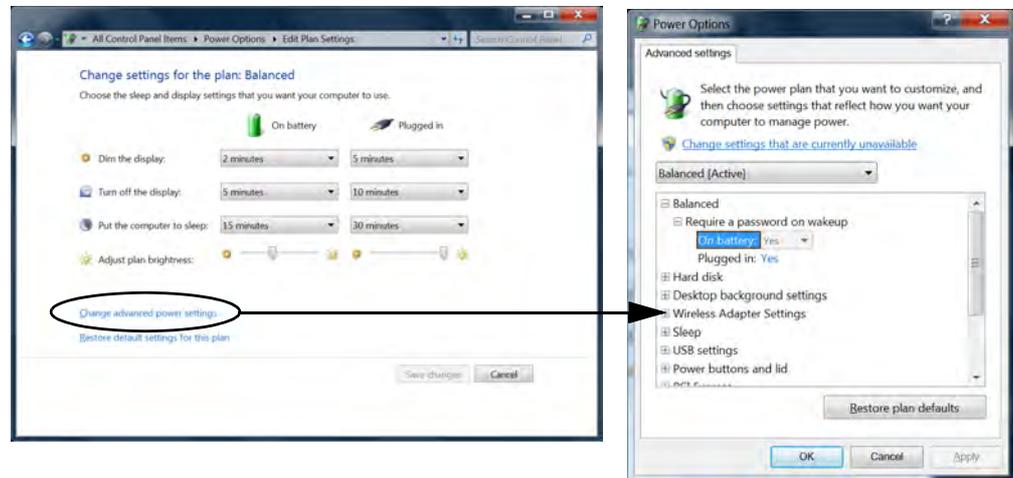


Figure 3 - 1
**Power Plan
Advanced Settings
(Win 7)**

Each **Windows power plan** will also adjust the processor performance of your machine in order to save power. This is worth bearing in mind if you are experiencing any reduced performance (especially under DC/battery power).

Choose **High performance** (you may need to click **Show additional plans** to view the High performance plan) for maximum performance when the computer is powered from an AC power source. Choose the **Power saver** (bear in mind that this scheme may slow down the overall performance of the computer in order to save power) for maximum power saving when the computer is battery (DC power) powered. The recommended **Balanced** power plan will balance power saving and performance.

Click to Show/Hide additional power plans

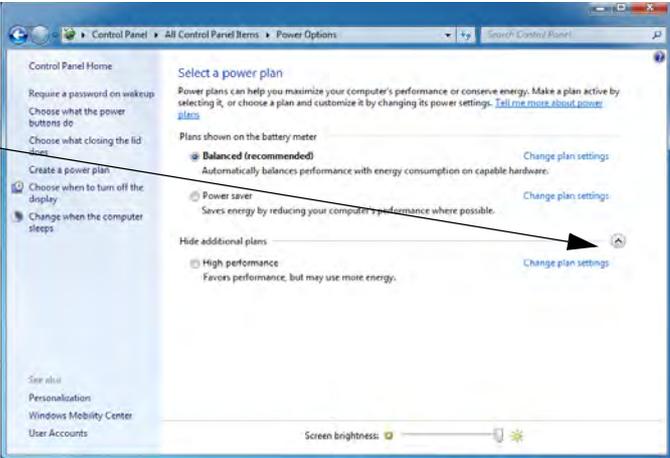


Figure 3 - 2
Power Plans

Power-Saving States

You can use power-saving states to stop the computer's operation and restart where you left off. *Win 7* uses the **Sleep**, **Hibernate** and **Shut Down** power-saving states.

Sleep

In **Sleep** all of your work, settings and preferences are saved to memory before the system sleeps. When you are not using your computer for a certain length of time, which you specify in the operating system, it will enter **Sleep** to save power.

The PC wakes from **Sleep within seconds** and will return you to where you last left off (what was on your desktop) without reopening the application(s) and file(s) you last used.

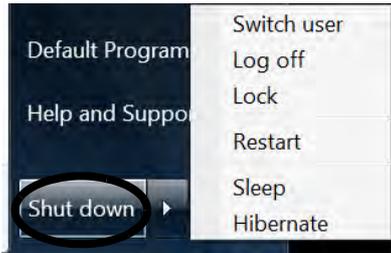
If your mobile PC in **Sleep** is running on battery power the system will use only a minimum amount of power. After an extended period the system will save all the information to the hard disk and shut the computer down before the battery becomes depleted.

Hibernate

Hibernate uses the least amount of power of all the power-saving states and saves all of your information on a part of the hard disk before it turns the system off. If a power failure occurs the system can restore your work from the hard disk; if a power failure occurs when work is saved only to memory, then the work will be lost. **Hibernate** will also return you to where you last left off within seconds. You should put your mobile PC into **Hibernate** if you will not use the computer for a period of time, and will not have the chance to charge the battery.

Shut down

You should **Shut down** the computer if you plan to install new hardware (don't forget to remove the battery and follow all the safety instructions in **Chapter 6**), plan to be away from the computer for several days, or you do not need it to wake up and run a scheduled task. Returning to full operation from **Shut down** takes longer than from **Sleep** or **Hibernate**.





**Silent Mode
(For Some Model A Designs Only)**

You can use **Silent Mode** to reduce power consumption and fan noise.

Use the **Silent Mode** hot key  to toggle this mode on/off.

On screen visual indicators will display the **Silent Mode** status (see [Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15](#)).

Note **Silent Mode** may reduce computer performance.

Figure 3 - 3
Lock Button menu

✍️ Password Protection

It is recommended that you enable a password on wake up in order to protect your data.

However you can disable this setting from the **Power Options** menu by clicking **Require a password on wakeup** in the left menu, and selecting the options (click **Change settings that are currently unavailable**).

Figure 3 - 4
Power Options
Define Power Buttons

Configuring the Power Buttons

The power/sleep button (**Fn + F4** key combo) and closed lid may be set to send the computer in to a power-saving state. Click **Choose what the power buttons do** on the left menu in **Power Options** to bring up the menu.



Resuming Operation

You can resume operation from power-saving states by pressing the power button, or in some cases pressing the sleep button (**Fn + F4** key combo).

Power Status	Icon  Color	To Resume
Power Off	Off	Press the Power Button
Sleep	Blinking Green	Press the Power Button Press the Sleep Button (Fn + F4 Key Combo)
Hibernate	Off (battery) Orange (AC/DC adapter)	Press the Power Button
Display Turned Off	Green	Press a Key or Move the Mouse/Touchpad



Closing the Lid

If you have chosen to send the computer to **Sleep** when the lid is closed, raising the lid will wake the system up.

Table 3 - 1
Resuming Operation



Power Button

When the computer is on, you can use the power button as a Sleep/Hibernate/Shut Down hot key button when it is pressed for less than **4 seconds** (pressing and holding the power button for longer than this will force the computer to shut down).



Power Conservation Modes

The **Energy Star** setting will result in maximum power saving, but with the possible loss of some performance.

Setting the mode to **Bal-ance** will give power saving matched with performance.

Performance will give optimum computer performance but with less power conservation.

Power Conservation Modes

This system supports **Energy Star** power management features that place computers (CPU, hard drive, etc.) into a low-power sleep modes after a designated period of inactivity. Adjust **Power Conservation Modes** from the **Control Center**:

1. Press the **Fn + Esc** key combination to toggle the **Control Center** on/off.
2. Click either the **Performance**, **Balanced** or **Energy Star** button.
3. Click in a blank area of the icon or press a key on the keyboard to exit **Power Conservation Mode** without making any changes.



Figure 3 - 5
Control Center

Battery Information

Follow these simple guidelines to get the best use out of your battery.

Battery Power

Your computer's battery power is dependent upon many factors, including the programs you are running, and peripheral devices attached. You can set actions to be taken (e.g. Shut down, Hibernate etc.), and set critical and low battery levels from power plan **Change plan settings > Change advanced power settings** (see *Figure 3 - 1 on page 3 - 4*).

Click the battery icon  in the taskbar to see the current battery level and charge status.


Low Battery Warning

When the battery is critically low, immediately connect the AC/DC adapter to the computer or save your work, otherwise, the unsaved data will be lost when the power is depleted.

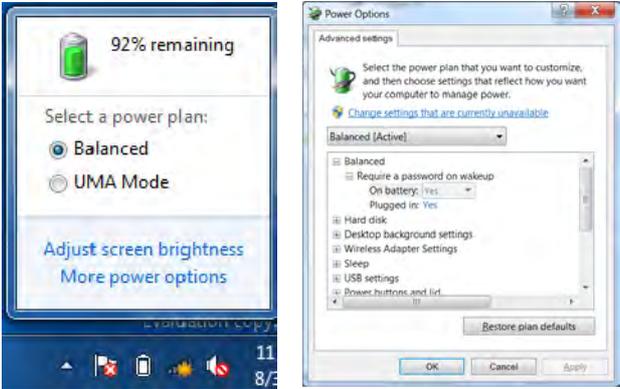


Figure 3 - 6
Battery Icon (Taskbar) & Battery Advanced Settings



Windows Mobility Center

The **Windows Mobility Center** control panel provides an easy point of access for information on battery status, power plans used and wireless device status etc.

Conserving Battery Power

- Use a **power plan** that conserves power (e.g **Power saver**), however note that this may have an affect on computer performance.
- Lower the brightness level of the LCD display. The system will decrease LCD brightness slightly to save power when it is not powered by the AC/DC adapter.
- Reduce the amount of time before the display is turned off.
- Close wireless, Bluetooth, modem or communication applications when they are not being used.
- Disconnect/remove any unnecessary external devices e.g. USB devices, ExpressCards etc.



Figure 3 - 7
Windows Mobility Center

Battery Life

Battery life may be shortened through improper maintenance. **To optimize the life and improve its performance, fully discharge and recharge the battery at least once every 30 days.**

We recommend that you do not remove the battery yourself. If you do need to remove the battery for any reason (e.g. long term storage) see *“Removing the Battery” on page 6 - 4.*

New Battery

Always completely discharge, then fully charge, a new battery (see *“Battery FAQ” on page 3 - 15* for instructions on how to do this).

Recharging the Battery with the AC/DC Adapter

The battery pack automatically recharges when the AC/DC adapter is attached and plugged into an electrical outlet. If the computer is powered on, and in use, it will take several hours to fully recharge the battery. When the computer is turned off but plugged into an electrical outlet, battery charge time is less. (Refer to *“LED Indicators” on page 1 - 11* for information on the battery charge status, and to *“Battery Information” on page 3 - 11* for more information on how to maintain and properly recharge the battery pack.)



Caution

Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced.

Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Discard used battery according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Proper handling of the Battery Pack

- DO NOT disassemble the battery pack under any circumstances
- DO NOT expose the battery to fire or high temperatures, it may explode
- DO NOT connect the metal terminals (+, -) to each other



Damaged Battery Warning

Should you notice any physical defects (e.g. the battery is bent out of shape after being dropped), or any unusual smells emanating from the notebook battery, shut your computer down immediately and contact your service center. If the battery has been dropped we do not recommend using it any further, as even if the computer continues to work with a damaged battery in place, it may cause circuit damage, which may possibly result in fire. It is recommended that you replace your computer battery every two years.

Battery FAQ

How do I completely discharge the battery?

Use the computer with battery power until it shuts down due to a low battery. Don't turn off the computer even if a message indicates the battery is critically low, just let the computer use up all of the battery power and shut down on its own.

1. Save and close all files and applications.
2. **Create a power plan** for discharging the battery and set all the options to **Never**.

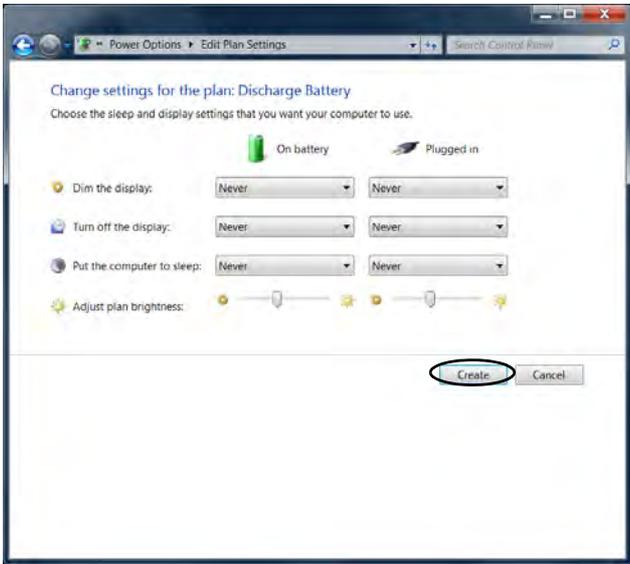
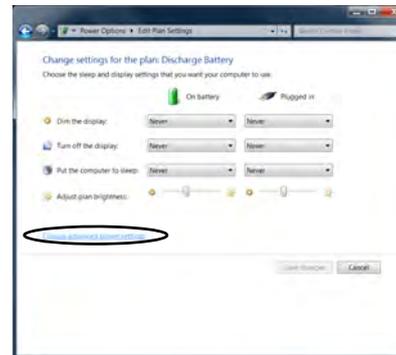
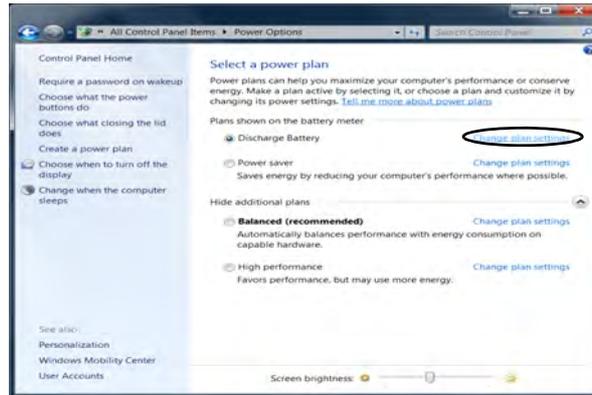


Figure 3 - 8
Power Plan Create

Power Management

3. Click **Change plan settings** (after creating it) and click **Change plan settings > Change advanced power settings**.

Figure 3 - 9
Change Plan Settings / Change Advanced Power Settings



- 4. Scroll down to **Battery** and click **+** to expand the battery options.
- 5. Choose the options below (click **Yes** if a warning appears):

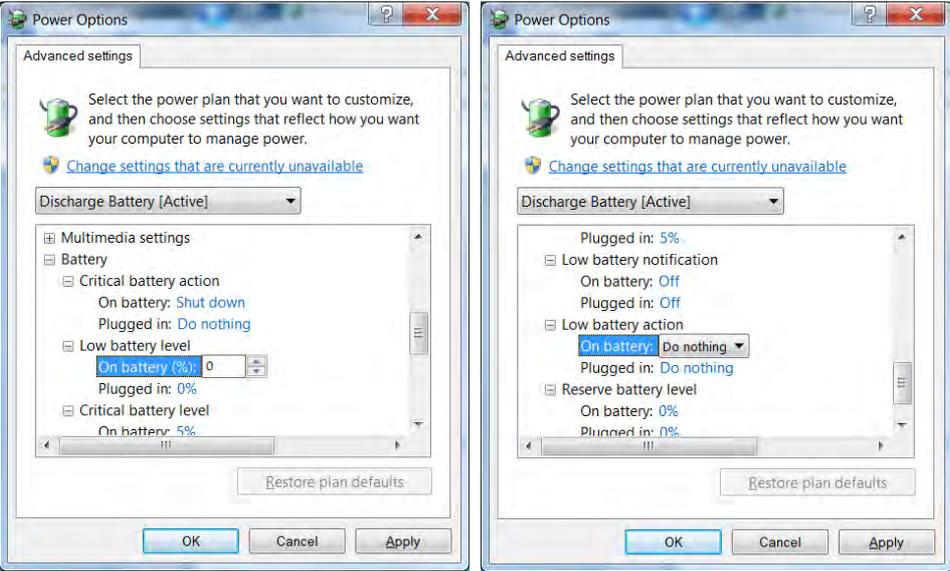


Figure 3 - 10
Power Options
Advanced Settings -
Battery

- Low battery levels = 0%
- Critical battery Levels = 1%
- Low battery action = Do Nothing
- Critical battery action (On battery) = Shut Down
- Critical battery action (Plugged in) = Do Nothing

How do I fully charge the battery?

When charging the battery, don't stop until the LED charging indicator light changes from orange to green.

How do I maintain the battery?

Completely discharge and charge the battery at least once every 30 days or after about 20 partial discharges.

Chapter 4: Drivers & Utilities

This chapter deals with installing the drivers and utilities essential to the operation or improvement of some of the computer's subsystems. The system takes advantage of some newer hardware components for which the latest versions of most available operating systems haven't built in drivers and utilities. Thus, some of the system components won't be auto-configured with an appropriate driver or utility during operating system installation. Instead, you need to manually install some system-required drivers and utilities.

See [Appendix E](#) for specific information on the **Windows 8** operating system.

What to Install

The *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc contains the drivers and utilities necessary for the proper operation of the computer. [Table 4 - 1, on page 4 - 3](#) lists what you need to install and **it is very important that the drivers are installed in the order indicated.**

Module Driver Installation

The procedures for installing drivers for the **PC Camera, Wireless LAN, Bluetooth & WLAN Combo** and **3G** modules are provided in [“Modules & Options” on page 7 - 1.](#)



Driver Installation & Power

When installing drivers make sure your computer is powered by the AC/DC adapter connected to a working power source. Some drivers draw a significant amount of power during the installation procedure, and if the remaining battery capacity is not adequate this may cause the system to shut down and cause system problems (note that there is no safety issue involved here, and the battery will be rechargeable within 1 minute).

Driver Installation

Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc and click **Install Drivers** (button), or **Option Drivers** (button) to access the **Optional** driver menu.

4



Figure 4 - 1 - Drivers Installer Screen 1

1. Check the driver installation order from **Table 4 - 1, on page 4 - 3** (the drivers must be installed in **this order**) which is the same as that listed in the **Drivers Installer** menu below.
2. Click to select the driver you wish to install, (you should note down the drivers as you install them).
3. Follow the instructions for each individual driver installation procedure as listed on the following pages.



Figure 4 - 2 - Install Drivers

Win 7 SP1/Win 8 Driver	Page #	Win 7 SP1/Win 8 Driver	Page #
<i>Chipset</i>	<i>Page 4 - 6</i>	<i>PC Camera Module (Only 14.0" / 35.56cm Model A computers require a camera driver for Windows 8)</i>	<i>Page 7 - 3</i>
<i>Video (VGA)</i>	<i>Page 4 - 6</i>	<i>Wireless LAN Module</i>	<i>Page 7 - 11</i>
<i>LAN</i>	<i>Page 4 - 6</i>	<i>Intel® Wireless Display Application</i>	<i>Page 7 - 32</i>
<i>CardReader</i>	<i>Page 4 - 6</i>	<i>Bluetooth & WLAN Combo Module</i>	<i>Page 7 - 37</i>
<i>Touchpad</i>	<i>Page 4 - 6</i>	<i>3G Module</i> (for Models A & B only) No driver required for Windows 8	<i>Page 7 - 44</i>
<i>Hot Key</i>	<i>Page 4 - 7</i>	<i>Trusted Platform Module</i>	<i>Page 7 - 91</i>
<i>USB 3.0 (Win 7 Only) (Not required for Windows 8)</i>	<i>Page 4 - 7</i>	<i>Intel Rapid Storage Technology</i> (required for hard disks in AHCI mode)	<i>Page 7 - 105</i>
<i>MEI Driver</i>	<i>Page 4 - 7</i>	<i>Intel® Smart Connect Technology</i>	<i>Page 7 - 106</i>
<i>Audio</i>	<i>Page 4 - 7</i>		

Table 4 - 1 - Driver Installation

All drivers provided are for Windows 7 with Service Pack 1 or Windows 8 (see [Appendix E](#) for Win 8 information).

Note that you need to install both the WLAN & Bluetooth drivers for the Intel and 3rd party WLAN & Bluetooth Combo modules.

Manual Driver Installation

Click **Browse CD/DVD** (button) in the *Drivers Installer* application and browse to the executable file in the appropriate driver folder.

4

Windows Update

After installing all the drivers make sure you enable **Windows Update** in order to get all the latest security updates etc. (all updates will include the latest **hotfixes** from Microsoft). See *“Windows Update” on page 4 - 8* for instructions.

Updating/Reinstalling Individual Drivers

If you wish to update/reinstall individual drivers it may be necessary to uninstall the original driver. To do this go to the **Control Panel** in the *Windows OS* and double-click the **Programs and Features** icon (**Programs > Uninstall a program**). Click to select the driver (if it is not listed see below) and click **Uninstall**, and then follow the on screen prompts (it may be necessary to restart the computer). Reinstall the driver as outlined in this chapter.

If the driver is not listed in the **Programs and Features** menu:

1. Click **Start**, and click **Control Panel** (or point to **Settings** and click **Control Panel**).
2. Double-click **Device Manager (Hardware and Sound > Device Manager)**.
3. Double-click the **device** you wish to update/reinstall the driver for (you may need to click “+” to expand the selection).
4. Click **Driver** (tab) and click the **Update Driver** or **Uninstall** button and follow the on screen prompts.

User Account Control

If a **User Account Control** prompt appears as part of the driver installation procedure, click **Continue** or **Allow**, and follow the installation procedure as directed.

Windows Security Message

If you receive a *Windows* security message as part of the driver installation process. Just click *“Install this driver software anyway”* or *“Install”* to continue the installation procedure.

You will receive this message in cases where the driver has been released after the version of *Windows* you are currently using. All the drivers provided will have already received certification for *Windows*.

New Hardware Found

If you see the message **“New Hardware Found”** during the installation procedure (**other than when outlined in the driver install procedure**), click **Cancel** to close the window, and follow the installation procedure.



Driver Installation General Guidelines

The driver installation procedure outlined in this Chapter (and in **Chapter 7 Options & Modules**), are accurate at the time of going to press.

Drivers are always subject to upgrade and revision so the exact procedure for certain drivers may differ slightly. As a general guide follow the default on screen instructions for each driver (e.g. **Next > Next > Finish**) unless you are an advanced user. In many cases a restart is required to install the driver.

Make sure any modules (e.g. PC Camera, WLAN or 3G) are **ON** before installing the appropriate driver.

Driver Installation Procedure

Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual disc* and click **Install Drivers** (button).

Chipset

1. Click **1.Install Chipset Driver > Yes**.
2. Click **Next > Yes > Next > Next**.
3. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.

Video (VGA)

1. Click **2.Install VGA Driver > Yes**.
2. Click **Next > Yes > Next > Next**.
3. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.

Note: After installing the video driver go to the **Display/Display Settings** control panel to adjust the video settings to the highest resolution.

LAN

1. Click **3.Install LAN Driver > Yes**.
2. Click **Next > Install**.
3. Click **Finish**.

CardReader

1. Click **4.Install Cardreader Driver > Yes**.
2. Click **Finish**.

Touchpad

1. Click **5.Install Touchpad Driver > Yes**.
2. Click **Next**.
3. Click the button to accept the license agreement and click **Next**.
4. Click **Finish > Restart Now** to restart the computer.

Hot Key

1. Click **6.Install Hotkey AP > Yes**.
2. Click **Next > Next**.
3. Click **Finish > Finish** to restart the computer.

USB 3.0 (Win 7 Only)

(Not required for Windows 8)

1. Click **7.Install USB 3.0 Driver > Yes**.
2. Click **Next > Yes > Next > Next**.
3. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.

MEI Driver

1. Click **8.Install MEI Driver > Yes**.
2. Click **Next > Yes > Next**.
3. Click **Finish**.

Audio

1. Click **9.Install Audio Driver > Yes**.
2. Click **Next**.
3. Click the button to agree to the license and click **Next**.
4. Click **Next > Next > Next**.
5. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.

Note that after installing the audio driver the system will not return to the *Drivers Installer* screen. To install any of the optional drivers listed overleaf, eject the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc and then reinsert it (or double-click the disc icon in **My Computer**), and click *Option Drivers* (button) to access the optional driver menu.

It is recommended you now also install the **Intel Rapid Storage Technology** driver (see "*IRST Driver Installation*" on page 7 - 105 - required for AHCI mode hard disks).

(see over)



Windows Update

After installing all the drivers make sure you enable **Windows Update** in order to get all the latest security updates etc. (all updates will include the latest **hotfixes** from Microsoft).

To enable **Windows Update** make sure you are **connected to the internet**:

1. Click **Start**, and click **Control Panel** (or point to **Settings** and click **Control Panel**).
2. Click **Windows Update** (System and Security/ Security).
3. Click **Check for updates** (button).
4. The computer will now check for updates (you need to be connected to the internet).
5. Click **Install now** (button) to begin checking for the updates.
6. Click **Install updates** (button) to install the updates.

Windows Experience Index

After the drivers are installed follow this procedure to ensure an accurate rating from the *Windows Experience Index* (make sure the AC/DC adapter is plugged in):

1. Click **Start**, and click **Control Panel**.
2. Click **Performance Information and Tools** (**System and Security > System > Check the Windows Experience Index**).
3. Click “**Rate this computer/Refresh Now/Rerun the assessment**”.
4. The computer will take a few minutes to assess the system performance.
5. Close the control panel.

Optional Drivers

See the pages indicated for the driver installation procedures for any modules included in your purchase option.



Figure 4 - 3 - Option Drivers

Note that you need to install both the WLAN & Bluetooth drivers for the Intel and 3rd party WLAN & Bluetooth Combo modules.

Chapter 5: BIOS Utilities

Overview

This chapter gives a brief introduction to the computer's built-in software:

If your computer has never been set up, or you are making important changes to the system (e.g. hard disk setup), then you should review this chapter first and note the original settings found in *Setup*. Even if you are a beginner, keep a record of the settings you find and any changes you make. This information could be useful if your system ever needs servicing.

There is one general rule: *Don't make any changes unless you are sure of what you are doing*. Many of the settings are required by the system, and changing them could cause it to become unstable or worse. If you have any doubts, consult your service representative.



BIOS Screens

Note that the BIOS screens pictured on these pages are intended for guidance in setting up your system's BIOS.

BIOS versions are subject to constant change and revision, therefore your computer's actual screens may appear slightly different from those pictured on these pages.



BIOS Settings Warning

Incorrect settings can cause your system to malfunction. To correct mistakes, return to *Setup* and restore the *Previous Values* with <F2>, or *Optimized Defaults* with <F3>.

UEFI Boot & POST

When UEFI Boot is enabled, then the prompts to press **F2** or **F7** will **not appear**. However you can still press **F2** to enter the setup, or **F7** to choose the preferred boot device, if you press the key immediately the system boots up.

The Setup Utility

Each time you turn on the computer the system takes a few seconds to conduct a **POST**, including a quick test of the on-board RAM (memory).

As the **POST** proceeds, the computer will tell you if there is anything wrong. If there is a problem that prevents the system from booting, it will display a system summary and prompt you to run *Setup*.

If there are no problems, the *Setup* prompt will disappear and the system will load the operating system. Once that starts, you can't get into *Setup* without rebooting.

The **Aptio Setup Utility** tells the system how to configure itself and manage basic features and subsystems (e.g. port configuration).

To enter *Setup*, turn on the computer and press **F2** (give the system a few seconds to enter *Setup*). If the **Boot Logo** is enabled the **F2** on screen will be **highlighted** to illustrate that the system is processing the request during the **POST** (or press **F7** for boot options). If you get a "Keyboard Error", (usually because you pressed **F2** too quickly) just press **F2** again.

If the computer is already on, reboot using the **Ctrl + Alt + Delete** combination and then hold down **F2** when prompted. The *Setup* main menu will appear.

To see the boot options press **F7** and choose your preferred boot device.

Failing the POST

Errors can be detected during the **POST**. There are two categories, “fatal” and “non-fatal”.

Fatal Errors

These stop the boot process and usually indicate there is something seriously wrong with your system. Take the computer to your service representative or authorized service center as soon as possible.

Non-Fatal Errors

This kind of error still allows you to boot. You will get a message identifying the problem (make a note of this message!) and you can then press **F7** (the **F7** on screen will be **highlighted** to illustrate that the system is processing the request) for boot options.

Press **F2** (give the system a few seconds to enter *Setup*; the **F2** on screen will be highlighted to illustrate that the system is processing the request) to run the **Setup** program and try to correct the problem. If you still get an error message after you change the setting, or if the “cure” seems even worse, call for help.



Setup Menu

The **Setup** menus shown in this section are for **reference** only. Your computer's menus will indicate the configuration appropriate for your model and options.

Figure 5 - 1
Navigation Menu

Setup Screens

The following pages contain additional advice on portions of the *Setup*. Along the top of the screen is a menu bar with menu headings. When you select a heading, a new screen appears. Scroll through the features listed on each screen to make changes to *Setup*.

Instructions on how to navigate each screen are in the box at the bottom right side of the screen.

```
→←: Select Screen  
↑↓: Select Item  
Enter: Select  
+/-: Change Opt.  
F1: General Help  
F3: Optimized Defaults  
F4: Save Changes & Exit  
ESC: Exit
```

If these tools are confusing, press **F1** to call up a **General Help** screen, and then use the arrow keys to scroll up or down the page.

The **Item Specific Help** on the upper right side of each screen explains the highlighted item and has useful messages about its options.

If you see an arrow ► next to an item, press **Enter** to go to a sub-menu on that subject. The sub-menu screen that appears has a similar layout, but the **Enter** key may execute a command.

Main Menu

```

Aptio Setup Utility - Copyright (C) 2012 American Megatrends Inc.
Main  Advanced  Security  Boot  Exit

System Date           [Mon 22/08/2012]
System Time           [09:56:26]
Set the Date. Use Tab to
switch between Date elements.

▶ SATA Port 0 WDC WD6400BPVT (640.1GB)
▶ SATA Port 2 MATSHITABD-CMB ATAPI
▶ SATA Port 4 Not Present

System Memory:        640 KB
Extended Memory:     2048 MB (DDR3)

MB Series:            *****
BIOS Revision:        *****
KBC/EC firmware Revision: *****

→←: Select Screen
↑↓: Select Item
Enter: Select
+/-: Change Opt.
F1: General Help
F3: Optimized Defaults
F4: Save Changes & Exit
ESC: Exit

Version ***** Copyright (C) 2012 American Megatrends, Inc.

```

Figure 5 - 2
Main Menu

System Time & Date (Main Menu)

The hour setting uses the 24-hour system (i.e., 00 = midnight; 13 = 1 pm). If you can change the date and time settings in your operating system, you will also change these settings. Some applications may also alter data files to reflect these changes.

SATA Port # (Main Menu)

Pressing **Enter** opens the sub-menu to show the configuration of a optical Device/HDD on the computer's SATA Ports.

System/Extended Memory: (Main Menu)

This item contains information on the system memory, and is not user configurable. The system will auto detect the amount of memory installed.

MB Series / BIOS Revision / KBC/EC firmware Revision

This item contains information on the BIOS version etc., and is not user configurable.

Advanced Menu

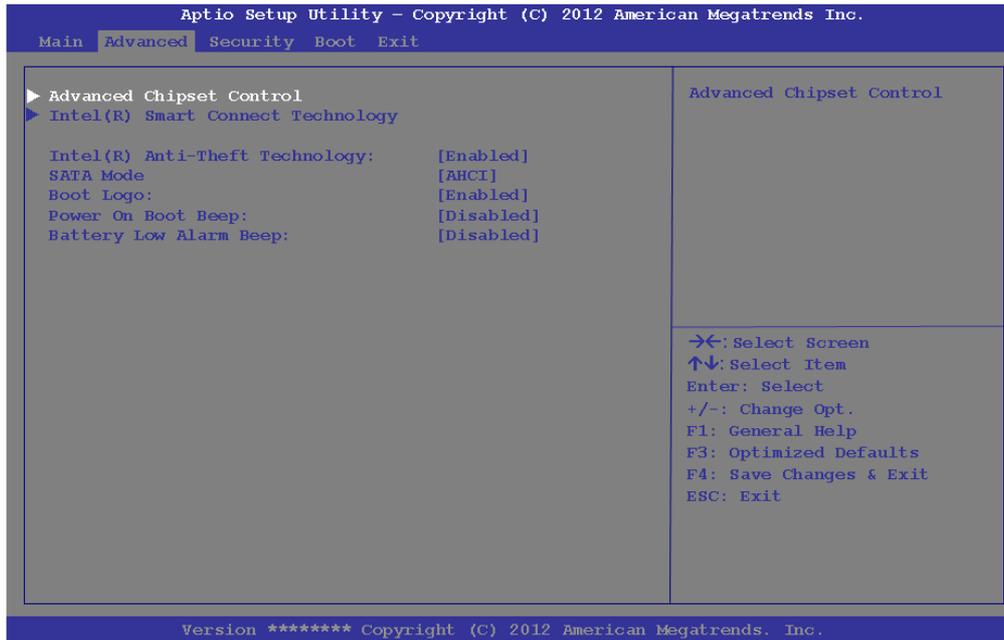


Figure 5 - 3
Advanced Menu

Advanced Chipset Control (Advanced Menu)

The sub-menu here allows you to adjust the **Bluetooth Power Setting**.

Bluetooth Power Setting (Advanced Menu > Advanced Chipset Control)

You can adjust the Bluetooth module power setting to your preference. The default setting (**Disabled**) will see the Bluetooth module powered off when the system is started up or restarted. Enabling the power setting will have the module retain the last power status (on or off) before any restart or shut down.

Intel Smart Connect Technology (Advanced Menu)

Smart Connect is a technology that makes checks on web applications that are open, when the computer is in **Sleep** mode, and thus allows updates to be made without the need to turn the computer on. The sub-menus here allow you to enable/disable the technology. See *“Intel® Smart Connect Technology” on page 7 - 106*.

Intel Anti-Theft Technology (Advanced Menu)

Anti-Theft Technology, which is built-in to the processor of the computer, allows system administrators to render your computer useless to thieves by sending a poison pill encrypted SMS message over a 3G network etc. Administrators can also remotely unlock a recovered computer quickly, or direct the system to send location information (GPS coordinates) back to a central server.

SATA Mode Selection (Advanced Menu)

You can configure SATA (Serial ATA) control to operate in **IDE** (native/compatible), **AHCI** (Advanced Host Controller Interface) modes from this menu. The **SATA Mode** should be set **BEFORE installing an operating system**, and after you have backed up all necessary files and data (see sidebar).

Boot Logo (Advanced Menu)

Use this menu item to enable/disable the **Boot Logo** screen at system startup. If you disable the **Boot Logo** you will not see the **F2 Enter Setup** or **F7 Boot Options** prompts on the screen, however you can still press these keys, while the boot screen is displayed, to perform the Enter Setup or Boot Option functions.

Power On Boot Beep (Advanced Menu)

Use this menu item to enable/disable the beep as the computer starts up.

Battery Low Alarm Beep: (Advanced Menu)

Use this menu item to enable/disable the battery low alarm beep.



SATA Mode Selection

If you have installed the **Windows 7** operating system with either **IDE** or **AHCI** mode enabled, **DO NOT** disable the set mode (if you wish to disable the set mode you will need to reinstall the **Windows 7 OS**).

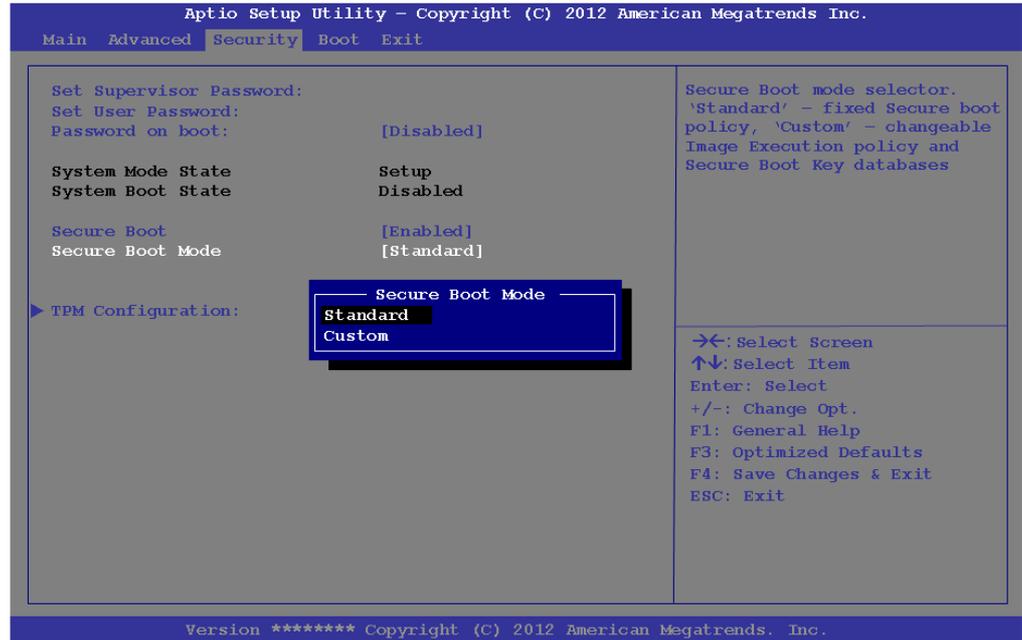
Security Menu



Security Menu

The changes you make here affect the access to the **Setup** utility itself, and also access to your machine as it boots up after you turn it on. These settings do not affect your machine or network passwords which will be set in your software OS.

5



Set Supervisor Password (Security Menu)

You can set a password for access to the **Aptio Setup Utility**. This will not affect access to the computer OS (only the **Aptio Setup Utility**).

Figure 5 - 4
Security Menu
(With Windows 8 as
Selected OS & UEFI
Boot Enabled)

Note: To clear existing passwords press **Enter** and type the existing password, then press **Enter** for the new password (without typing any password entry) and **Enter** again to confirm the password clearance.

Set User Password (Security Menu)

You can set a password for user mode access to the **Aptio Setup Utility**. This will not affect access to the computer OS, (only the *Setup* utility) unless you choose to set a **Password on Boot** (see below). Many menu items in the **Aptio Setup Utility** cannot be modified in user mode.

Note: *You can only set the user password after you have set the supervisor password.*

Password on boot: (Security Menu)

Specify whether or not a password should be entered to boot the computer (**you may only set a password on boot if a supervisor password is enabled**). If “*Enabled*” is selected, only users who enter a correct password can boot the system (**see the warning in the sidebar**). The default setting is “*Disabled*”.

Note: To clear existing passwords press **Enter** and type the existing password, then press **Enter** for the new password (without typing any password entry) and **Enter** again to confirm the password clearance.



Password Warning

If you set a boot password (Password on boot is “Enabled”), **NEVER** forget your password.

The consequences of this could be serious. If you cannot remember your boot password you must contact your vendor and you may lose all of the information on your hard disk.

Secure Boot (Security Menu)

Secure Boot prevents unauthorized operating systems and software from loading during the startup process. **Secure Boot** is available as a menu option if you have **Windows 8** set as your operating system, and have **enabled UEFI Boot** (see **“Boot Menu” on page 5 - 16**). Enabling Secure Boot will bring up the **Secure Boot Mode** menu to enable you to configure Secure Boot as **Standard** (with a fixed secure boot policy), or **Custom** (which enables you to make changes to the **Image Execution Policy** and **Key Management** database).

TPM Configuration (Security Menu)

This sub-menu will allow you to enable/disable Trusted Platform Module (TPM) support, and to configure the TPM State. Select **TPM Configuration** and press Enter to access the sub-menu. Press Enter to access the **TPM Support** menu and select **Enable** to display the full TPM configuration menu (see *“Trusted Platform Module” on page 7 - 77* for details).

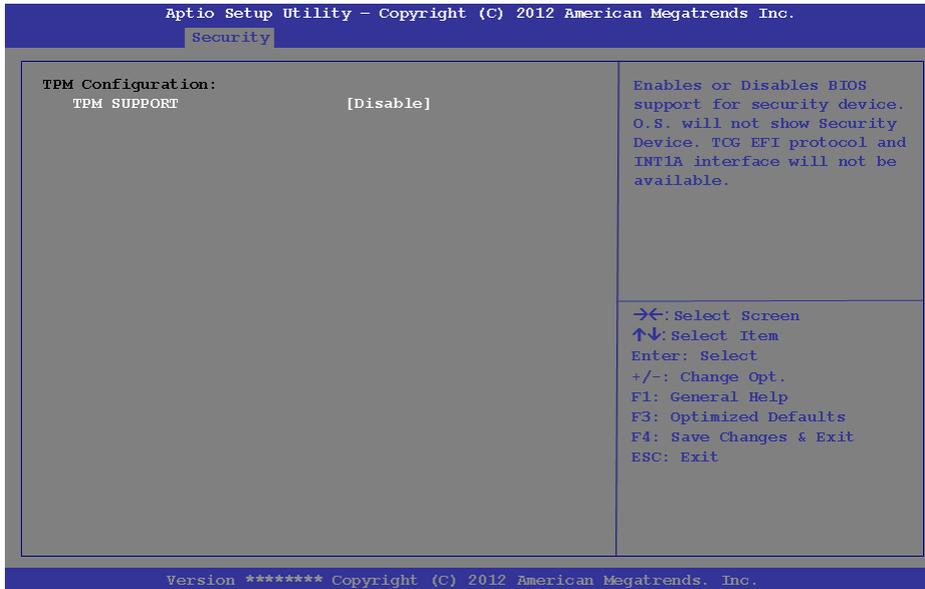


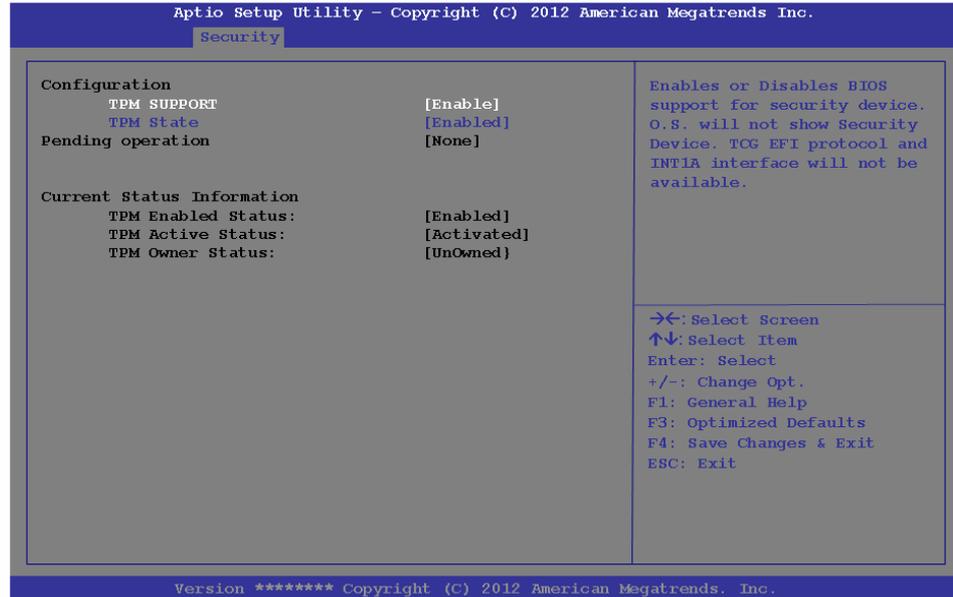
Figure 5 - 5
TPM Support

TPM State (Security Menu > TPM Support Enabled)

Select **TPM State**, press Enter and select **Enable** to change the TPM state to enabled. You will then need to press **F4** to save the changes and restart the computer.

5

Figure 5 - 6
TPM State (Enabled)



As the computer restarts press **F2** to enter the BIOS again and go to the **TPM Configuration** menu.

Pending TPM operation (Security Menu > TPM Support & TPM State Enabled)
 Select **Pending TPM operation**, press Enter and select the option you require (if you are initializing TPM you should select **Enable Take Ownership**). You will then need to press **F4** to save the changes and restart the computer. You can now install the TPM driver (see *“Trusted Platform Module (TPM) Driver Installation”* on *page 7 - 80*) and then initialize the TPM.

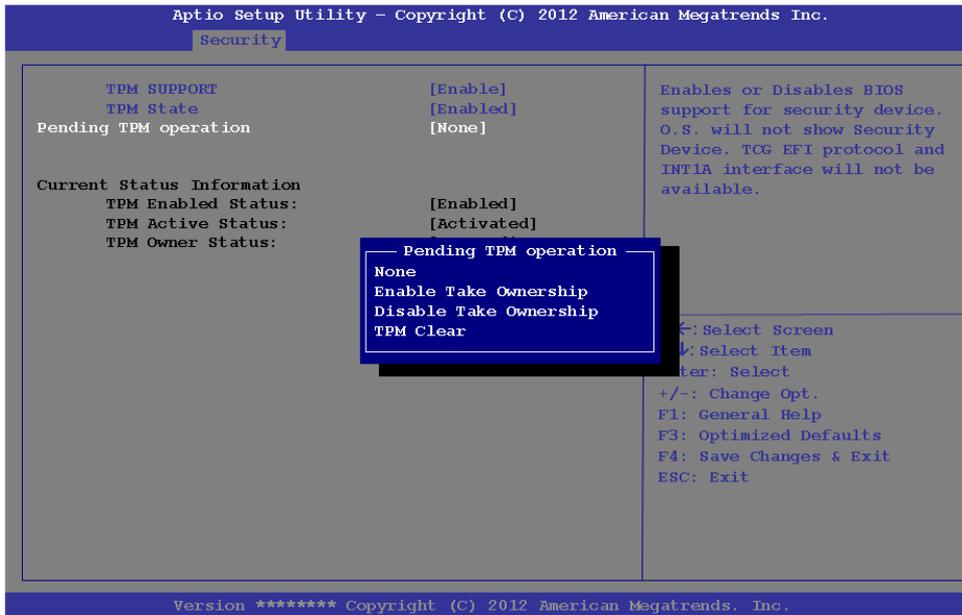


Figure 5 - 7
Pending TPM operation (Enable Take Ownership)

Boot Menu

Figure 5 - 8
Boot Menu

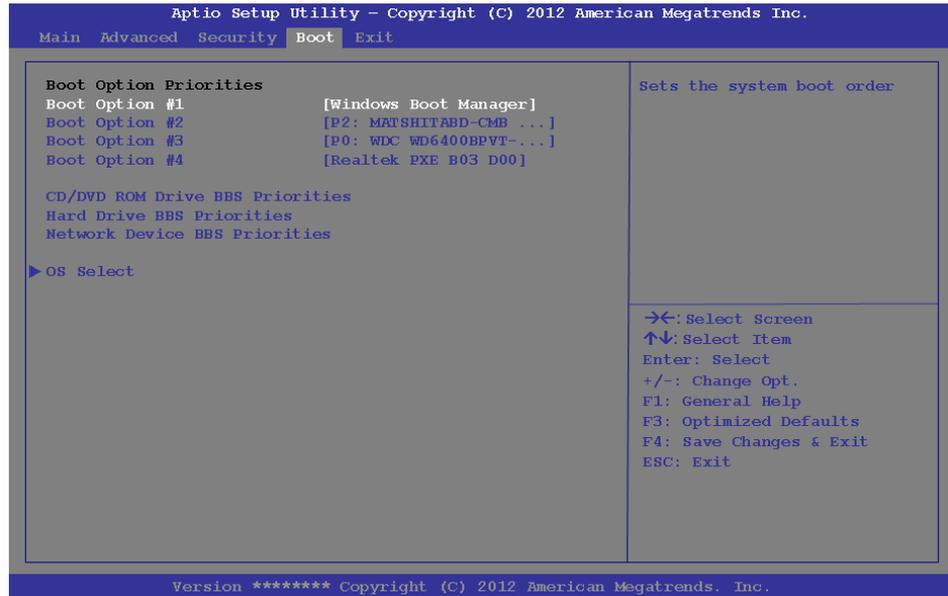
5



BIOS Screens

Note that the BIOS screens pictured on these pages are intended for guidance in setting up your system's BIOS.

BIOS versions are subject to constant change and revision, therefore your computer's actual screens may appear slightly different from those pictured on these pages.



When you turn the computer on it will look for an operating system (e.g. *Windows 7*) from the devices listed in this menu, and **in this priority order**. If it cannot find the operating system on that device, it will try to load it from the next device in the order specified in the **Boot Option Priorities**. Item specific help on the right is available to help you move devices up and down the order.

Boot Option Priorities (Boot Menu)

Use the arrow keys to move up and down the menu, and press Enter to select a device from the **Boot Option #** list. You can go to either **Network Device BBS Priorities**, **CD/DVD ROM Drive Priorities** or **Hard Drive BBS Priorities** and use the + and - keys to move the device's boot priority up and down the list (the selected device will be highlighted in white).

OS Select (Boot Menu)

This item tells allows you to set the operating system you intend to use. This item should be set before you install an operating system.

UEFI Boot (Boot Menu)

Enable/disable UEFI Boot from this menu. The Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) specification provides a clean interface between operating systems and platform firmware at boot time. In contrast to BIOS, UEFI defines a set of standard boot and runtime services (you can configure the UEFI Secure Boot options from the Security Menu - see [“Secure Boot \(Security Menu\)” on page 5 - 12](#)).

Exit Menu

Figure 5 - 9
Exit Menu



Click ***Save Changes and Reset*** to save all changes made. Choosing to ***Discard Changes***, or ***Exit Discarding Changes***, will wipe out any changes you have made to the ***Setup***. You can also choose to restore the original ***Setup*** defaults that will return the ***Setup*** to its original state, and erase any previous changes you have made in a previous session.

Chapter 6: Upgrading The Computer

Overview

This chapter contains information on upgrading the computer. Follow the steps outlined to make the desired upgrades. If you have any trouble or problems you can contact your service representative for further help. Before you begin you will need:

- A small crosshead or Phillips screwdriver
- A small regular slotted (flathead) screwdriver
- An antistatic wrist strap

Before working with the internal components you will need to wear an antistatic wrist strap to ground yourself because static electricity may damage the components.

The chapter includes:

- Removing the Battery
- Upgrading the Hard Disk Drive
- Upgrading the Optical (CD/DVD) Device
- Upgrading the System Memory (RAM)

Please make sure that you review each procedure before you perform it.



Warranty Warning

Please check with your service representative before undertaking any upgrade procedures to find out if this will VOID your warranty.



Power Safety Warning

Before you undertake any upgrade procedures, make sure that you have turned off the power, and disconnected all peripherals and cables (including telephone lines and power cord).

You must also remove your battery in order to prevent accidentally turning the machine on.

Before removing the battery disconnect the AC/DC adapter from the computer.

When Not to Upgrade

These procedures involve opening the system's case, adding and sometimes replacing parts.

You should **not** perform any of these upgrades if:

- Your system is still under warranty or a service contract
- You don't have all the necessary equipment
- You're not in the correct environment
- You doubt your abilities

Under any of these conditions, contact your service representative to purchase or replace the component(s).



Removal Warning

When removing any cover(s) and screw(s) for the purposes of device upgrade, remember to replace the cover(s) and screw(s) before restoring power to the system.

Also note the following when the cover is removed:

- Hazardous moving parts.
- Keep away from moving fan blades.

Upgrading the Processor

If you want to upgrade your computer by replacing the existing processor with a faster/new one you will need to contact your customer service representative. We recommend that you do not do this yourself, since if it is done incorrectly you may damage the processor or mainboard.



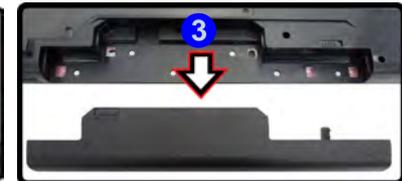
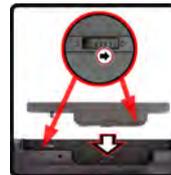
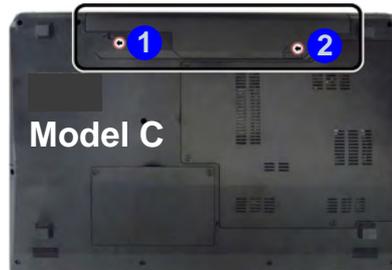
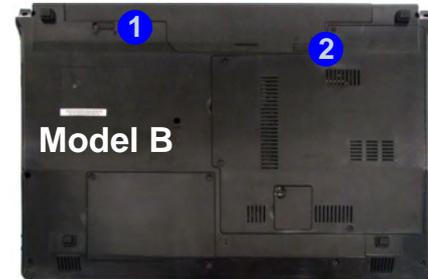
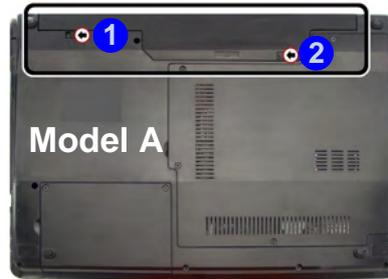
Warranty Warning

Please check with your service representative before undertaking any upgrade procedures to find out if this will VOID your warranty.

Removing the Battery

If you are confident in undertaking upgrade procedures yourself, for safety reasons it is best to remove the battery.

1. Turn the computer **off**, and turn it over.
2. Slide the latch **1** in the direction of the arrow.
3. Slide the latch **2** in the direction of the arrow, and hold it in place.
4. Slide the battery out in the direction of the arrow **3**.



Upgrading the Hard Disk Drive

The hard disk drive can be taken out to accommodate other 2.5" serial (SATA) hard disk drives with a height of 9.5mm (h) (see *“Storage” on page D - 4*). Follow your operating system’s installation instructions, and install all necessary drivers and utilities (see *“Driver Installation” on page 4 - 2*), when setting up a new hard disk.



HDD System Warning

New HDD’s are blank. Before you begin make sure:
You have backed up any data you want to keep from your old HDD.
You have all the discs required to install your operating system and programs.
If you have access to the internet, download the latest application and hardware driver updates for the operating system you plan to install. Copy these to a removable medium.

Upgrading The Computer

1. Turn **off** the computer, and turn it over and remove the battery.
2. Locate the hard disk bay cover and remove screws **1** & **2**.
3. Remove the hard disk bay cover **3**.

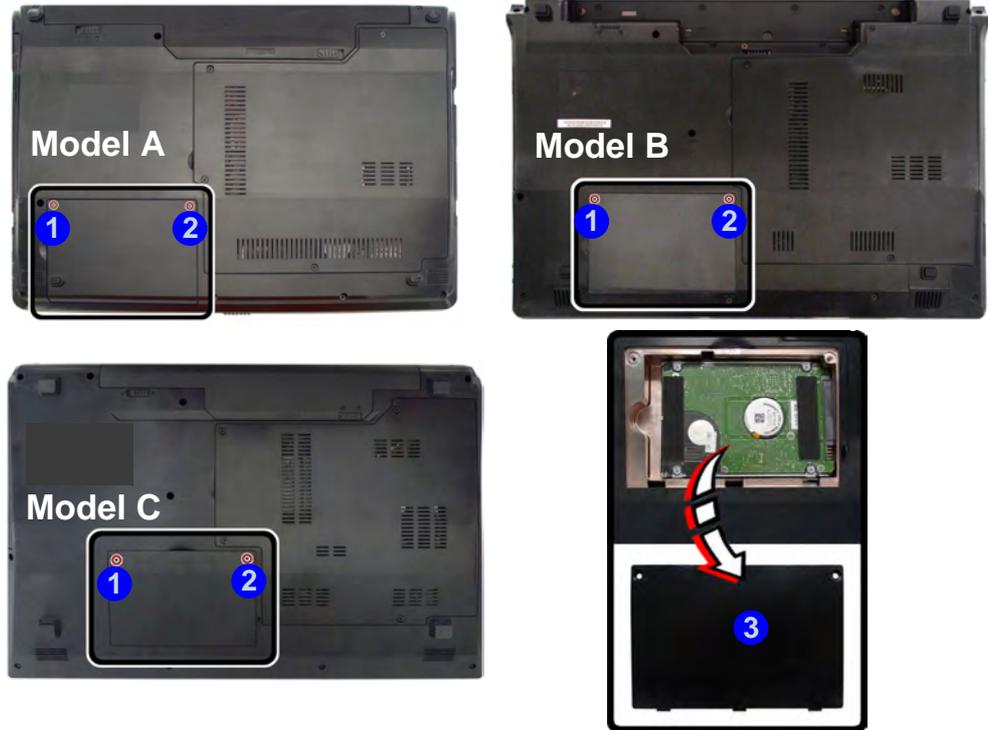
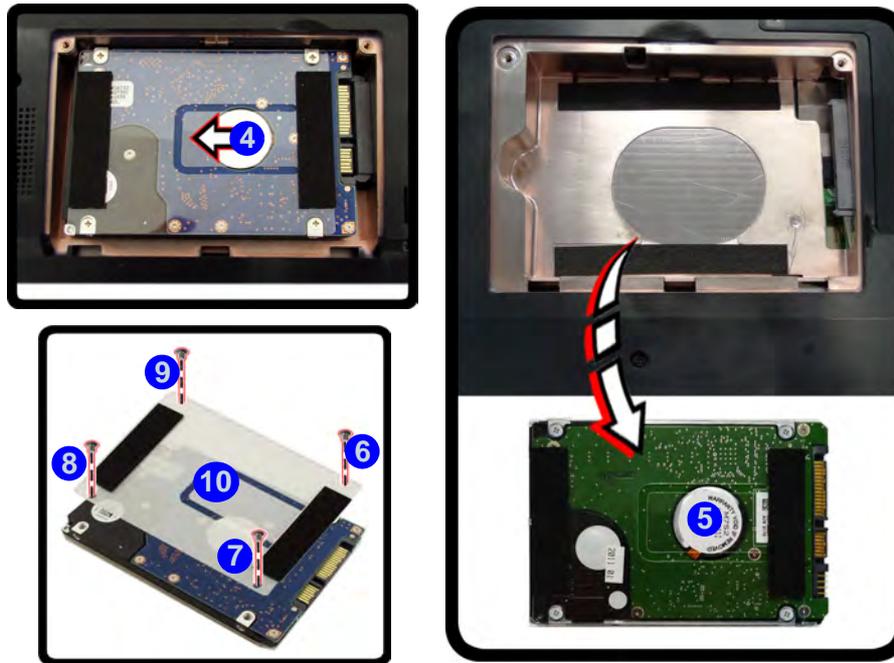


Figure 6 - 2
Hard Disk Bay
Cover Removal

- Slide the hard disk in the direction of arrow 4.
- Lift the hard disk out of the bay 5.
- Remove the screw(s) 6 - 9 and the adhesive cover 10.
- Reverse the process to install a new hard disk drive (do not forget to replace all the screws and covers).



Hard Disk Screws & Cover

The hard disks and covers pictured here may appear slightly different from your model design (these designs are subject to change and upgrade without notice). Pay careful attention to the screws (if included) and cover orientation.

6

Figure 6 - 3
Hard Disk Removal

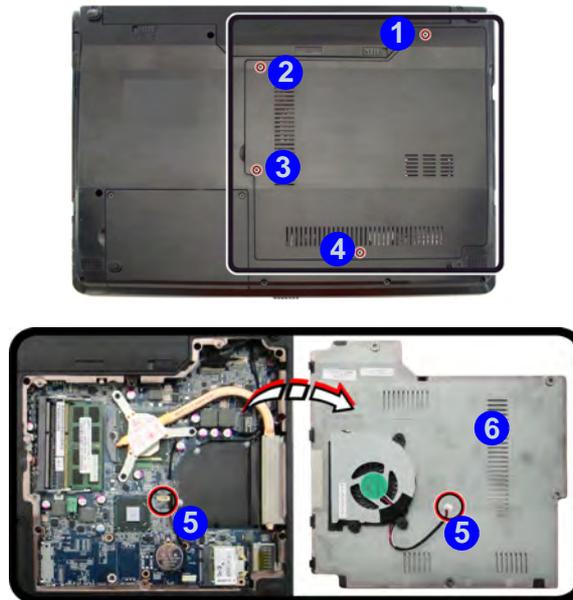
Upgrading the Optical (CD/DVD) Device

The procedure for removing the optical device will depend upon your particular computer model:

- See *“Removing the Optical Device for Model A Computers” on page 6 - 9.*
- See *“Removing the Optical Device for Model B & C Computers” on page 6 - 11.*

Removing the Optical Device for Model A Computers

1. Turn **off** the computer, and turn it over and remove the battery.
2. Locate the component bay cover and remove screws **1** - **4**.
3. Carefully (**a fan and cable are attached to the under side of the cover**) lift up the bay cover.
4. Carefully disconnect the fan cable **5**, and remove the cover **6**.



Fan Cable & Cover

Make sure you reconnect the fan cable **5** before screwing down the bay cover. Note the information on replacing the RAM & CPU bay cover in *“Cover Pins”* on page 6 - 15.

6

Figure 6 - 4
Removing the
Component Bay
Cover
(Model A
Computers)

Upgrading The Computer

5. Remove the screw at point **7**, and use a screwdriver to carefully push out the optical device at point **8**.
6. Reverse the process to install the new device.

Figure 6 - 5
**Removing the
Optical Device
(Model A
Computers)**



Removing the Optical Device for Model B & C Computers

1. Turn **off** the computer, and turn it over and remove the battery.
2. Remove the hard disk (see page 6 - 5)
3. Remove the screw at point ①, and use a screwdriver to carefully push out the optical device at point ②.
4. Reverse the process to install the new device.
5. Replace the hard disk bay cover.

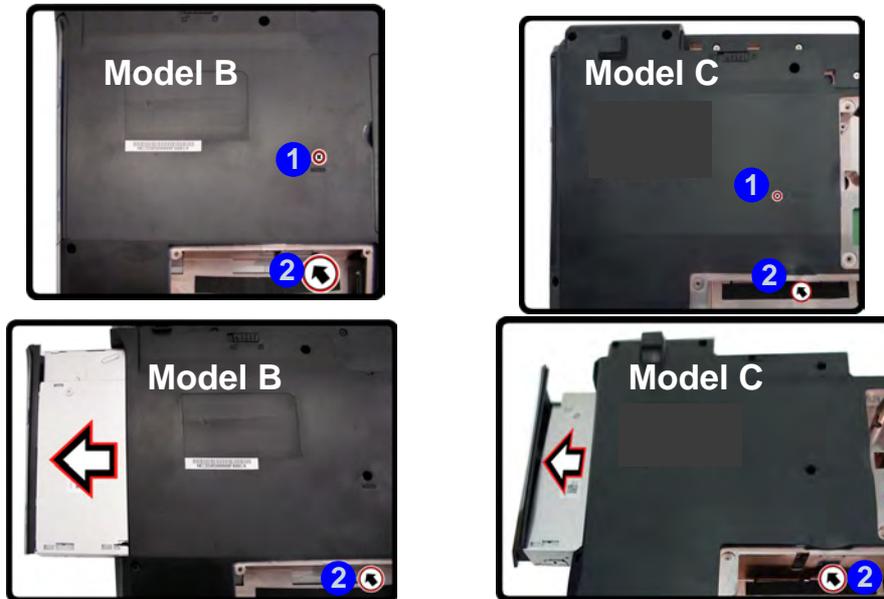


Figure 6 - 6
**Removing the
 Optical Device
 (Model B & C
 Computers)**

Upgrading the System Memory (RAM)

The computer has **two** memory sockets for 204 pin Small Outline Dual In-line (SO-DIMM) **DDRIII (DDR3)** type memory modules (see *“Memory” on page D - 3* for details of supported module types).

1. Turn **off** the computer, and turn it over and remove the battery.
2. Locate the component bay cover and remove screws **1** - **4**.

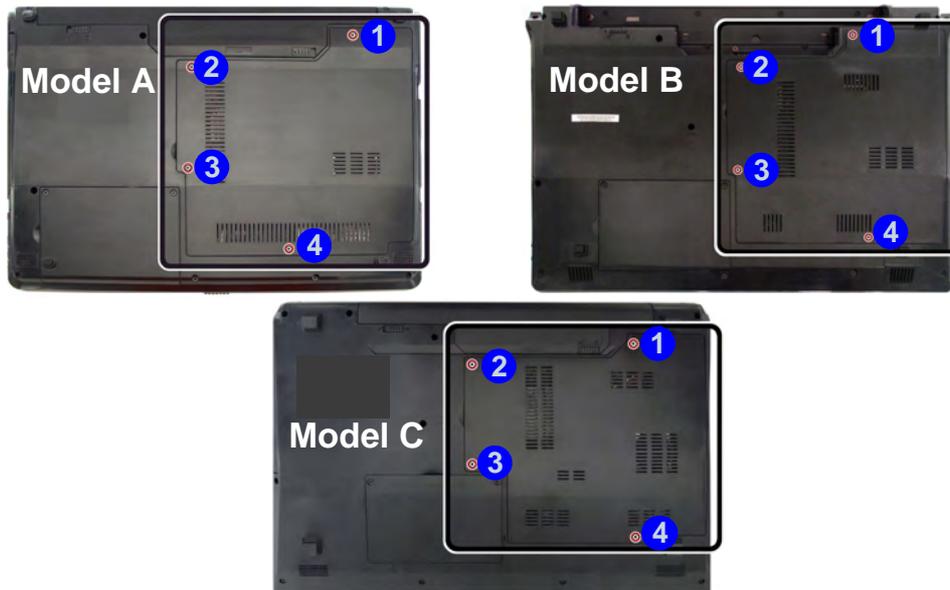
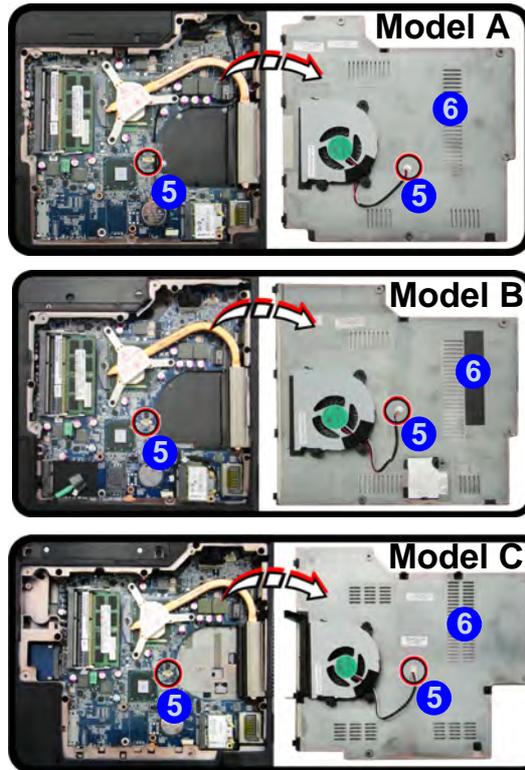


Figure 6 - 7
**Component Bay
Cover Screws**

3. Raise the bottom cover up and carefully (a fan and cable 5 are attached to the under side of the cover) lift up the bay cover 6.



Fan Cable

Make sure you reconnect the fan cable 5 before screwing down the bay cover.

Figure 6 - 8
Component Bay
Cover Removal

Upgrading The Computer

- Gently pull the two release latches on the sides of the memory socket in the direction indicated by the arrows (7 & 8) in *Figure 6 - 9*.

Figure 6 - 9
**RAM Module
Release Latches**



- The RAM module will 9 pop-up, and you can remove it.



Contact Warning

Be careful not to touch the metal pins on the module's connecting edge. Even the cleanest hands have oils which can attract particles, and degrade the module's performance.

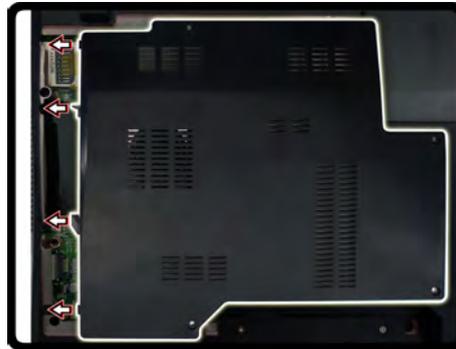
Figure 6 - 10
**RAM Module
Removal**

Single Memory Module Installation

If your computer has a single memory module, then insert the module into the **Channel 0 (JDIMM1)** socket. In this case this is the **lower memory socket** (the socket closest to the mainboard).



- Pull the latches to release the second module if necessary.
- Insert a new module holding it at about a 30° angle and fit the connectors firmly into the memory slot.
- The module's pin alignment will allow it to only fit one way. Make sure the module is seated as far into the slot as it will go. **DO NOT FORCE** the module; it should fit without much pressure.
- Press the module in and down towards the mainboard until the slot levers click into place to secure the module.
- Replace the bay cover by inserting it at an angle and aligning the cover pins (see sidebar).
- Make sure you reconnect the fan cable before replacing all the screws and screwing down the bay cover.**



- Restart the computer to allow the BIOS to register the new memory configuration as it starts up.



Cover Pins

Note that the computer has **four** cover pins. These pins need to be aligned with slots in the case to insure a proper cover fit, before screwing down the bay cover.

Figure 6 - 11
**Cover Pin
Alignment
(One Model
Pictured)**

Chapter 7: Modules & Options

Overview

This chapter contains information on the following modules, which may come with your computer, depending on the configuration purchased. If you are unsure please contact your service representative.

- PC Camera Module
- Wireless LAN Module
- Intel® Wireless Display Application
- Bluetooth & WLAN Combo Module
- 3G Module
- Trusted Platform Module
- Intel Rapid Storage Technology
- Intel® Smart Connect Technology

For information on the *Windows 8* operating system see [Appendix E](#).



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are **OFF** if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.



Driver Installation & Module Power

Make sure any modules (e.g. WLAN, PC Camera & Bluetooth modules) are **ON** before installing the appropriate driver.



Important Notice

If your purchase option includes both Wireless LAN and 3G modules, then the appropriate antennas will be installed. Note that In order to comply with FCC RF exposure compliance requirements, the antenna must not be co-located or operate in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Important Notice - 3G & Bluetooth/Wireless LAN Modules

In order to comply with FCC regulations you should NOT operate the 3G module and the Bluetooth/Wireless LAN modules at the same time as this may disrupt radio frequency, and cause interference. When the 3G module is powered on, make sure that the Bluetooth/Wireless LAN modules are powered off.

PC Camera Module

Before installing the **PC Camera** driver, make sure that the optional PC Camera is on. Use the **Fn + F10** key combination (see *“Function/Hot Key Indicators” on page 1 - 15*) or Control Center button to toggle power to the PC Camera module.

Note that only 14.0" / 35.56cm Model A computers require a camera driver for Windows 8. See *“PC Camera (Windows 8)” on page E - 25* for Windows 8 configuration information.

When the **14"/35.56cm screen Model A** PC Camera is in use the power LED indicator will blink orange (see *Table 1 - 2, on page 1 - 11*).

When the **Model B/C** PC Camera is in use the LED indicator to the left of the camera will be illuminated in red (see *2 Figure 1 - 4 on page 1 - 9/Figure 1 - 4 on page 1 - 9*).

Make sure you install the drivers in the order indicated in *Table 4 - 1, on page 4 - 3*. **Make sure you access the application via the desktop shortcut.**



PC Camera Application and Power-Saving States

If the computer enters **Sleep** or **Hibernate** mode while running the camera application, the program will stop running, and will need to be restarted when the system resumes from the power-saving state.



Latest PC Camera Driver Information

Check the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual disc*, and any accompanying insert pages, for the latest updated information on the PC Camera driver, which may override the information provided here.

PC Camera Driver Uninstallation

If you need to uninstall the driver, then uninstall the **WebCam Installer** item from the *Programs and Features* control panel in *Windows*.



PC Camera Screen Refresh

The PC Camera module supports a frame rate of 12 fps. If you find that the screen refresh rate is subject to lag or stuttering, then **reduce the window size**, or adjust the **Output Size** and/or **Color Space Compression**.

To reduce **Output Size** and/or **Color Space Compression** run the camera application, click **Options** and select **Video Capture Pin**. Adjust the settings from the appropriate pull-down menu.

PC Camera Driver Installation

1. Make sure the module is powered on, and then insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc into the DVD drive.
2. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
3. Click **1.Install Webcam Driver > Yes**.
4. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.
OR
4. Click **Next > Finish**.
5. Run the camera application program from the desktop shortcut (if the hardware is turned off use the **Fn + F10** key combination to turn it on again). See "*PC Camera (Windows 8)*" on page *E - 25* for information on the camera application used in *Windows 8*

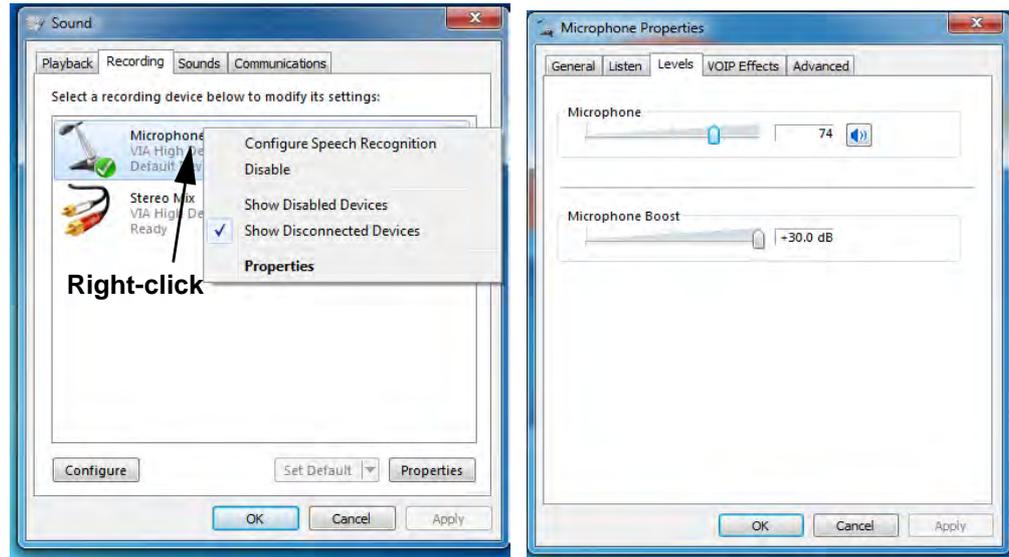
PC Camera Audio Setup

If you wish to capture video & **audio** with your camera, it is necessary to setup the audio recording options in *Windows*.

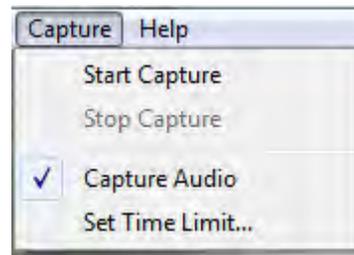
1. Click **Start**, and click **Control Panel** (or point to **Settings** and click **Control Panel**).
2. Click **Sound**  (**Hardware and Sound**).
3. Click **Recording** (tab).
4. Right-click **Microphone** (VIA High Definition Audio) and make sure the item is not disabled.
5. Double-click **Microphone** (or select **Properties** from the right-click menu).
6. Click **Levels** (tab), and adjust the **Microphone** and **Microphone Boost** sliders to the level required.
7. Click **OK** and close the control panels.
8. Run the camera application program from the desktop shortcut.
9. Go to the **Devices** menu heading and select **Microphone (VIA....)** (it should have a tick alongside it).
10. Go to the **Capture** menu heading and select **Capture Audio** (it should have a tick alongside it).

Modules & Options

Figure 7 - 1
**Audio Setup for PC
Camera**



7



Camera Application

The camera application is a video viewer for general purpose video viewing and testing, and for capturing video files to .avi format.

1. Run the camera application from the desktop shortcut (it is recommended that you **set the capture file** before the capture process - **see Set Capture File below**).
2. Go to the **Capture** menu heading (if you wish to capture audio check **“PC Camera Audio Setup” on page 7 - 5**) and select **Start Capture**.
3. Click **OK** (the file location will be displayed in the pop-up box) to start capturing the video, and press **Esc** to stop the capture (you can view the file using the **Windows Media Player**).

Set Capture File

Prior to capturing video files you may select the **Set Capture File...** option in the **File** menu, and set the file name and location before capture (this will help avoid accidentally overwriting files). Set the name and location then click **Open**, then set the **“Capture file size:”** and click **OK**. You can then start the capture process as above.

Note the important information in **“Reducing Video File Size” on page 7 - 8** in order to save file space, and help prevent system problems.

Reducing Video File Size

Note that capturing high resolution video files requires a substantial amount of disk space for each file. After recording video, check the video file size (right-click the file and select **Properties**) and the remaining free space on your hard disk (go to **My Computer**, right-click the hard disk, and select **Properties**). If necessary you can remove the recorded video file to a removable medium e.g. CD, DVD or USB Flash drive.

Note that the *Windows* system requires a minimum of **15GB** of free space on the **C: drive** system partition. In order to prevent system problems it is recommended that you save the captured video file to a location other than the **C: drive** (see “*Set Capture File*” on page 7 - 7), limit the file size of the captured video or reduce video resolution (see below).

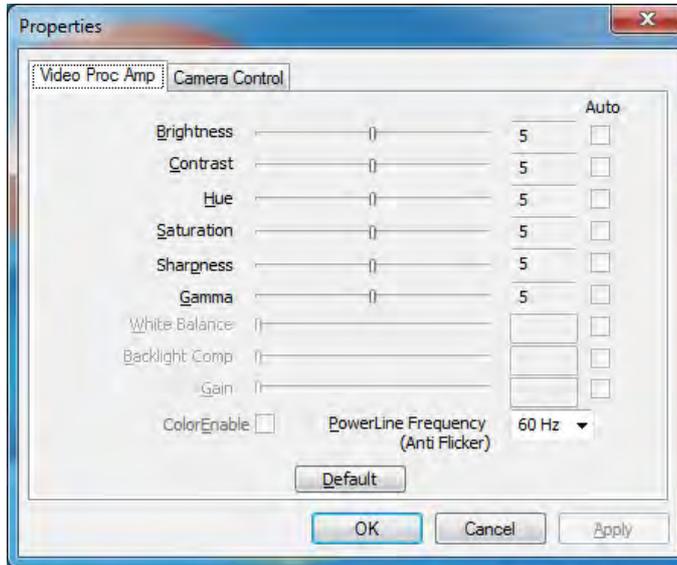
To Reduce Video Resolution Output Size:

1. Run the camera application program from the desktop shortcut.
2. Go to **Options** and scroll down to select **Video Capture Pin....**
3. Click the **Output Size** drop box and select a lower resolution size in order to reduce the captured file size.
4. Click **OK**.

Eliminating Screen Flicker

If you find that the video screen in the camera program is flickering, you can try to adjust the setting in the **Video Capture Filter** options.

1. Run the camera application from the desktop shortcut.
2. Go to **Options** and scroll down to select **Video Capture Filter....**
3. Click either **50Hz** or **60Hz** under **PowerLine Frequency**.





Camera Options

The video capture filter figure pictured here may appear slightly different for some camera modules. To adjust the anti flicker properties look under the headings **Anti Flicker/Frequency/PowerLine Frequency**.



Latest PC Camera Driver Information

Check the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual disc*, and any accompanying insert pages, for the latest updated information on the PC Camera driver, which may override the information provided here, including the figures pictured.

Figure 7 - 2
Video Capture Filter



Snapshot Folder

The Snapshot folder's default location is on the desktop. Do not move this folder or an error may appear when you try to take a still picture.

If you accidentally delete or move the folder, you can create a new Snapshot folder on the desktop in order to capture the files.

Taking Still Pictures

The camera application allows you to take still pictures.

1. Run the camera application from the desktop shortcut.
2. Go to **Options** and select **Take Picture**.
3. The picture (in JPEG format) will be placed in the **Snapshot** folder  on the desktop.

Wireless LAN Module

If you have included an **Intel® or 3rd Party** Wireless LAN (or WLAN & Bluetooth combo) module in your purchase option, make sure that the WLAN module is on before installing the driver. See *“Wireless LAN Settings (Windows 8)” on page E - 30* for *Windows 8* configuration information.

Use the **Fn + F11 key combination** (see *“Function/Hot Key Indicators” on page 1 - 15*) or **Control Center button** to toggle power to the Wireless LAN module. Make sure you install the drivers in the order indicated in *Table 4 - 1, on page 4 - 3*.

Note that you need to install both the WLAN & Bluetooth drivers for the Intel and 3rd party WLAN & Bluetooth Combo modules.



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the **Fn + F11** key combination or hot key button to toggle power to the WLAN module, and check the indicator to see if the module is powered on or not (see *Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15* / *Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11*).

3rd Party 802.11b/g/n Driver Installation

If you see the message “**Found New Hardware**” click **Cancel** to close the window.

1. **Make sure the module is powered on**, and then insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User’s Manual* disc into the DVD drive.
2. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
3. Click **2.Install WLAN Driver > Yes**.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.

Note: The operating system is the default setting for Wireless LAN control in *Windows* (see page [7 - 14](#)). See “*Wireless LAN Settings (Windows 8)*” on page [E - 30](#) for *Windows 8* configuration information.

Intel® WLAN Driver Installation

If you see the message “**Found New Hardware**” click **Cancel** to close the window.

1. **Make sure the module is powered on**, and then insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User’s Manual* disc into the DVD drive.
2. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
3. Click **2.Install WLAN Driver > Yes**.
4. Click **Next > Next**.
5. Click the button to accept the license and click **Next**.
6. Click (for some driver versions you will need to select *Typical* or *Custom*) **Next/Install > Next > Finish**.

Note: The operating system is the default setting for Wireless LAN control in *Windows* (see overleaf). See “*Wireless LAN Settings (Windows 8)*” on page E - 30 for *Windows 8* configuration information.



Network and Sharing Center

You can also use the **Network and Sharing Center** control panel in Windows (**Network and Internet**) to connect to any available wireless networks.

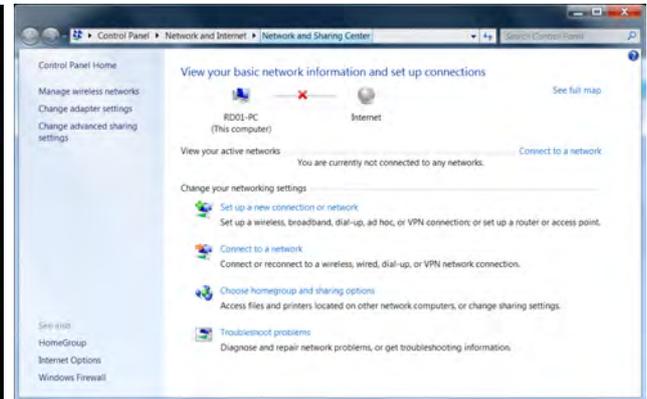
7

Figure 7 - 3
**Click Taskbar Icon
Menu & Network
and Sharing Center**

Connecting to a Wireless Network in Windows 7

Make sure the Wireless LAN module is turned on.

1. **Click** the taskbar wireless icon , and then double-click an access point to connect to or click to **Open Network and Sharing Center** if you do not see a network you want to connect to in the taskbar menu (a list of options will appear allowing setting changes, and creating a new network).



2. You may need to enter a security key for any access point to which you are trying to connect.
3. Click to select a network location (e.g. **Home, Work or Public**).
4. Click “**View or change settings in Network and Sharing Center**” to access further options for the connection.

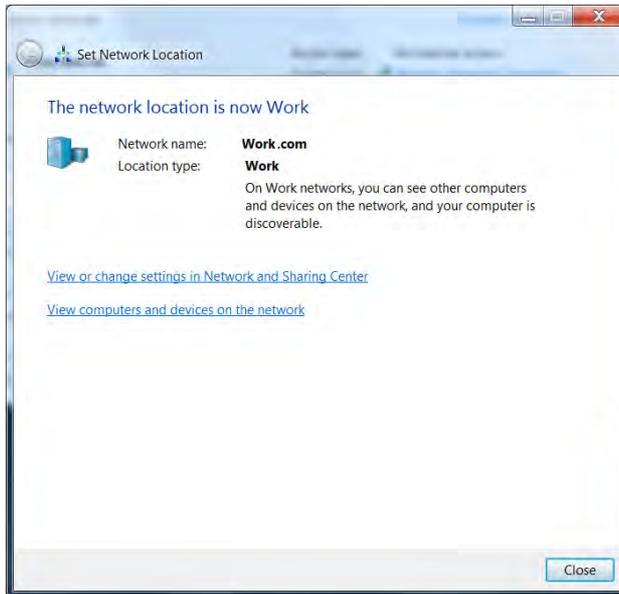


Figure 7 - 4
Network Location Set

Modules & Options



Security Enabled Networks

You should try to make sure that any network you are connecting to is a secure network.

Connecting to unsecure networks may allow unauthorized access to your computer, documents, websites and files etc.

5. Click the taskbar icon  to see any currently connected networks.
6. To disconnect from the wireless network you can click the taskbar wireless icon , click the active connection and then click **Disconnect** (button).



Figure 7 - 5

**Click Taskbar Icon
Menu - Disconnect**

Intel® My WiFi Configuration

Intel® My WiFi Technology uses your WLAN (**for Intel WLAN modules only**) module to allow you to connect up to eight other WiFi enabled devices (e.g. digital cameras, other computers, cell phones, handheld devices etc.) to your computer (similar to Bluetooth), while still connecting to the Internet through your WiFi wireless connection. Intel® My WiFi Technology offers greater range and speed than other personal area networks, and does not require an access point.



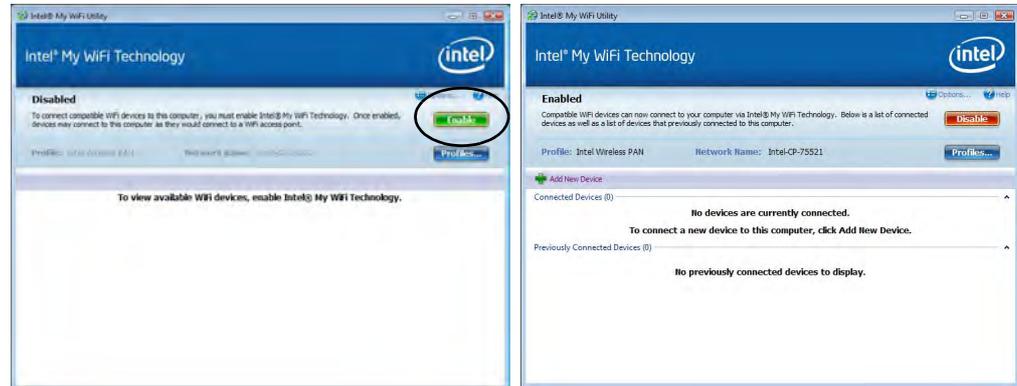
Intel® My WiFi Help

To get help on **Intel® My WiFi** configuration and settings, access the **Intel® My WiFi Utility** from the **Start** menu (Start > Programs/All Programs > Intel PRO-Set Wireless > Intel My WiFi Technology), or by clicking the taskbar icon . Click the **Help** icon  and select a help topic from the **Contents** menu.

Intel® My WiFi Configuration

You can configure the My WiFi settings as follows.

1. Access the **Intel® My WiFi Utility** from the **Start** menu (**Start > Programs/All Programs > Intel PROSet Wireless > Intel My WiFi Technology**), or by double-clicking the taskbar icon .
2. Click **Enable**  (on the first run of the program there will be no connected devices listed).



7
Figure 7 - 6
Intel® My WiFi Utility

3. Click **Start** and click **Control Panel**.
4. Click **Network and Sharing Center (Network and Internet)**.
5. Click **Change adapter settings**.

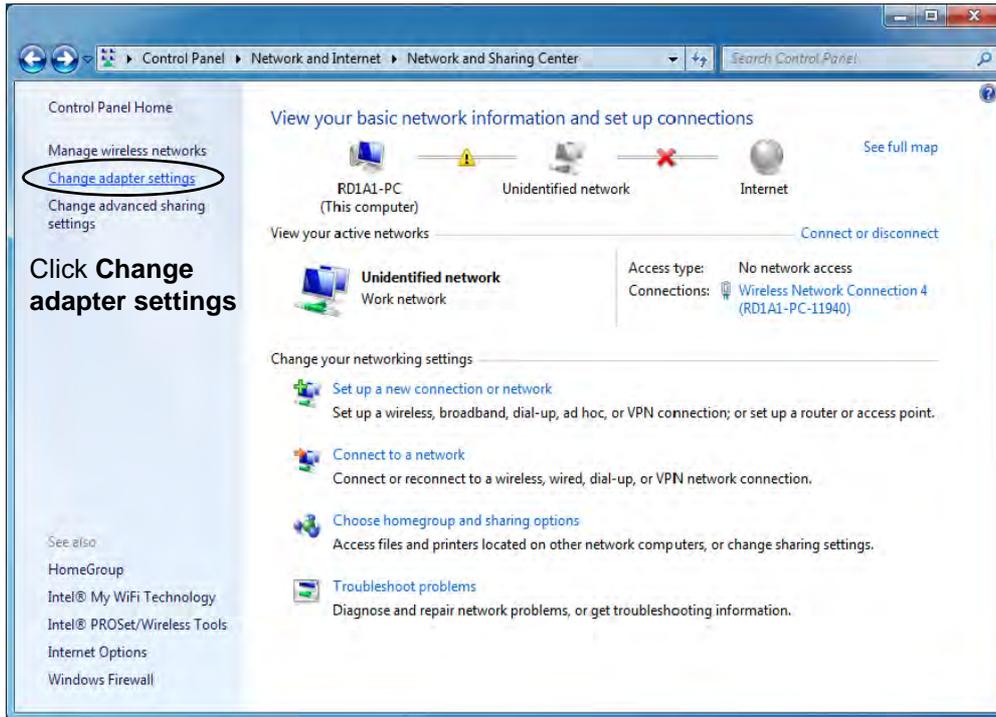
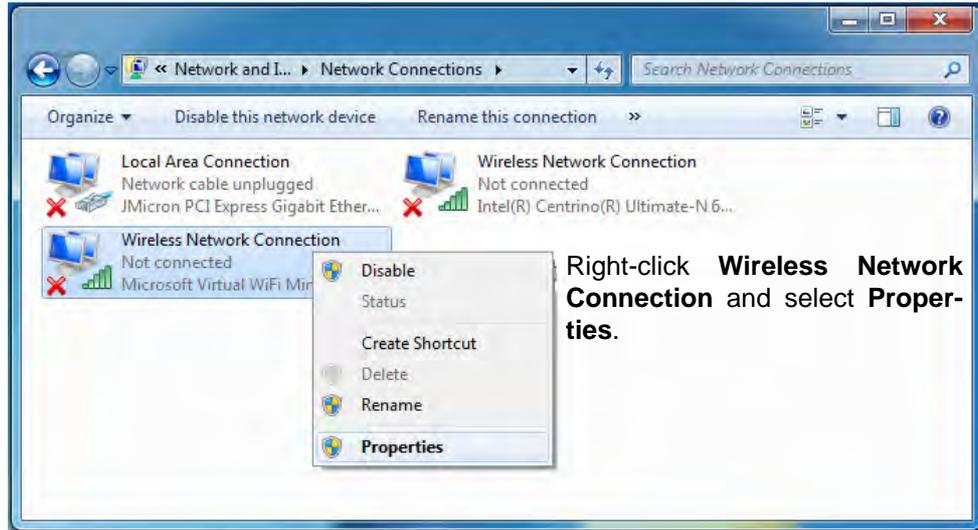


Figure 7 - 7
Network and Sharing Center

6. Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

Figure 7 - 8
Network Connections



7. Click **Sharing (tab)** and select “**Allow other network users to connect through this computer’s Internet connection**”.
8. Select **Wireless Network Connection** under **Home networking connection**.
9. Click **OK**.

Click “**Allow other network users to connect through this computer’s Internet connection**”.

Select **Wireless Network Connection**.

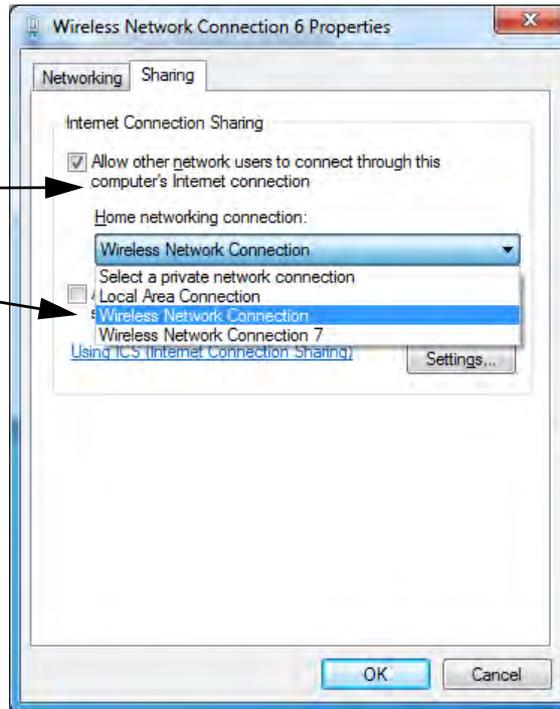
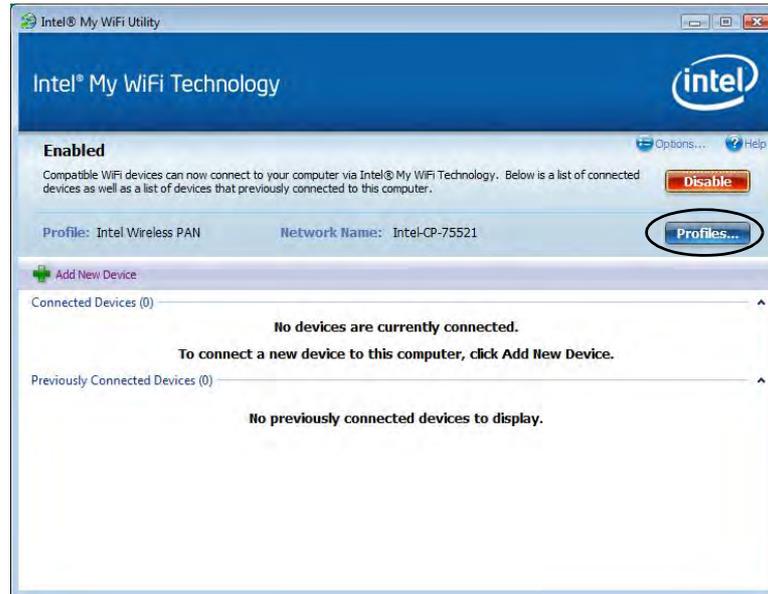


Figure 7 - 9
Wireless Network Connection Properties - Sharing

Modules & Options

10. Access the **Intel® My WiFi Utility** from the **Start** menu (**Start > Programs/All Programs > Intel PROSet Wireless > Intel My WiFi Technology**), or by double-clicking the taskbar icon .
11. Click **Profiles** .



7

Figure 7 - 10
Intel® My WiFi
Utility - Profiles

- Click **Profiles**, click **Intel Wireless PAN** and click **Edit** or **New** (Note that all preset settings may not be editable - see sidebar).



Figure 7 - 11
Profiles

- You can change the **Profile Name** and **Network Name** to your personal preferences in **General** (tab).



Profile and Network Names

The **Profile Name** is the name as displayed on your computer in the **Network Connections** control panel (see [Figure 7 - 13 on page 7 - 24](#)).

The **Network Name (SSID)** is the name the devices see when they try to connect to your computer.

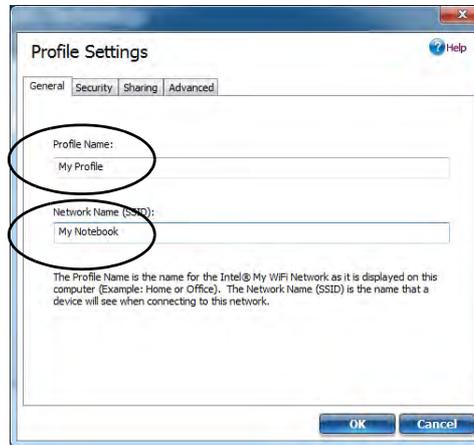


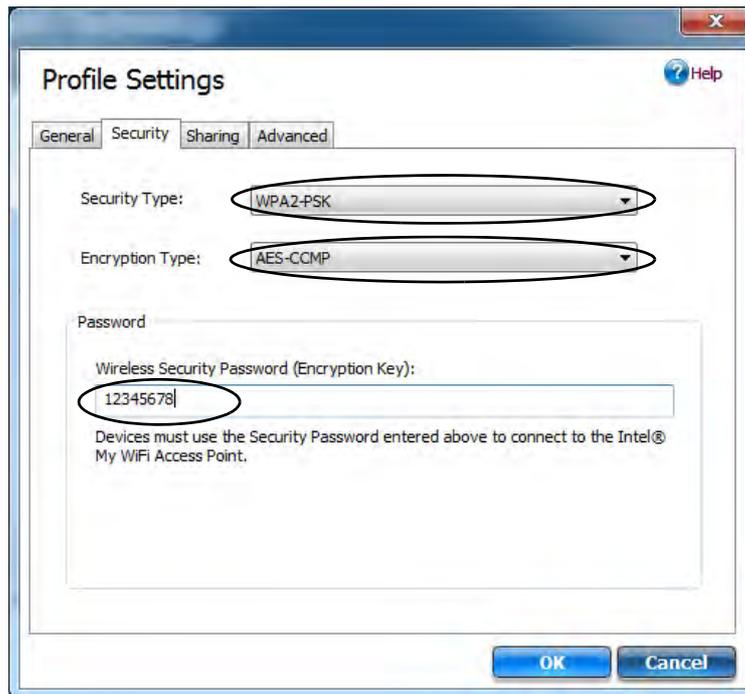
Figure 7 - 12
Intel® My WiFi
Profile Settings -
General

Profile Settings

Profiles that are **preset may not be fully editable**. To edit all the profile settings, click **New** to create a new profile and adjust the settings to your preferences.

Modules & Options

- Click **Security** (tab).
- Change the **Security Type** to **WEP** and the **Encryption Type** to **64bit**.
- Enter a password (8 characters long) in the **Password** box.



7
Figure 7 - 13
Intel® My WiFi
Profile Settings -
Security

17. Click **Sharing** (tab).
18. It is recommended that the **Filter Network Traffic** and **DHCP and DNS Server** are **Disabled**.

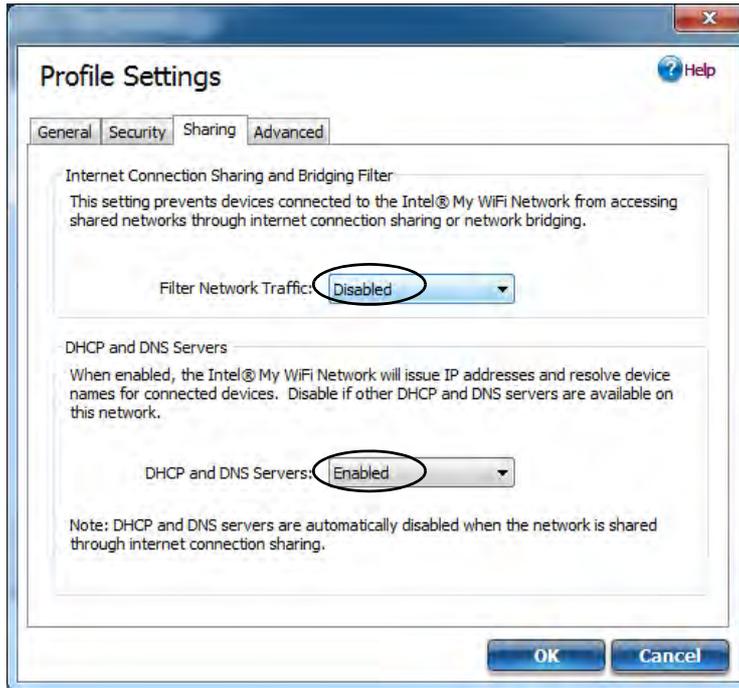
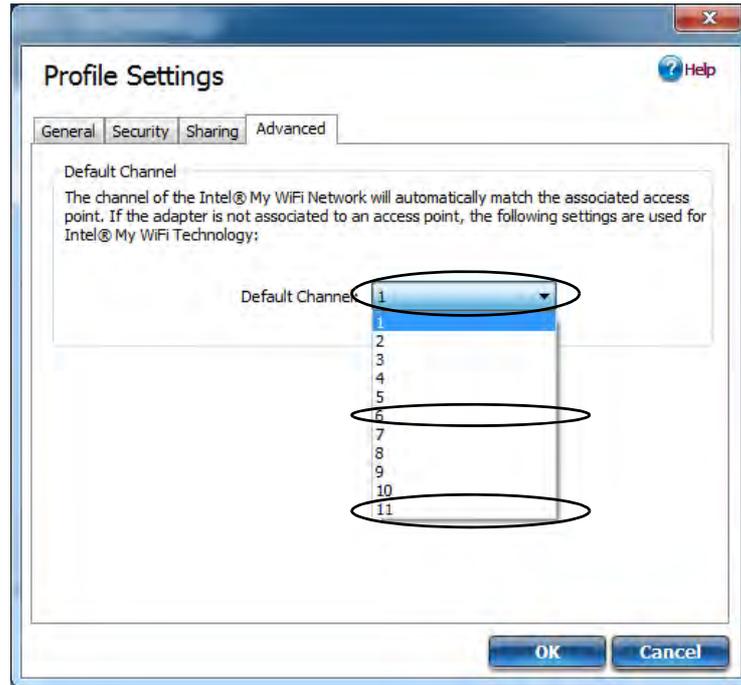


Figure 7 - 14
Intel® My WiFi
Profile Settings -
Sharing

Modules & Options

19. Click **Advanced** (tab).
20. It is recommended that the **Default Channel** is set to **Channel 1, 6 or 11**.
21. Click **OK** to save the settings.



7 *Figure 7 - 15*
Intel® My WiFi
Profile Settings -
Advanced

22. Double-click **Wireless Network Connection** in **Network Connections**.
23. Click **Details** to display the **Network Connection Details**.

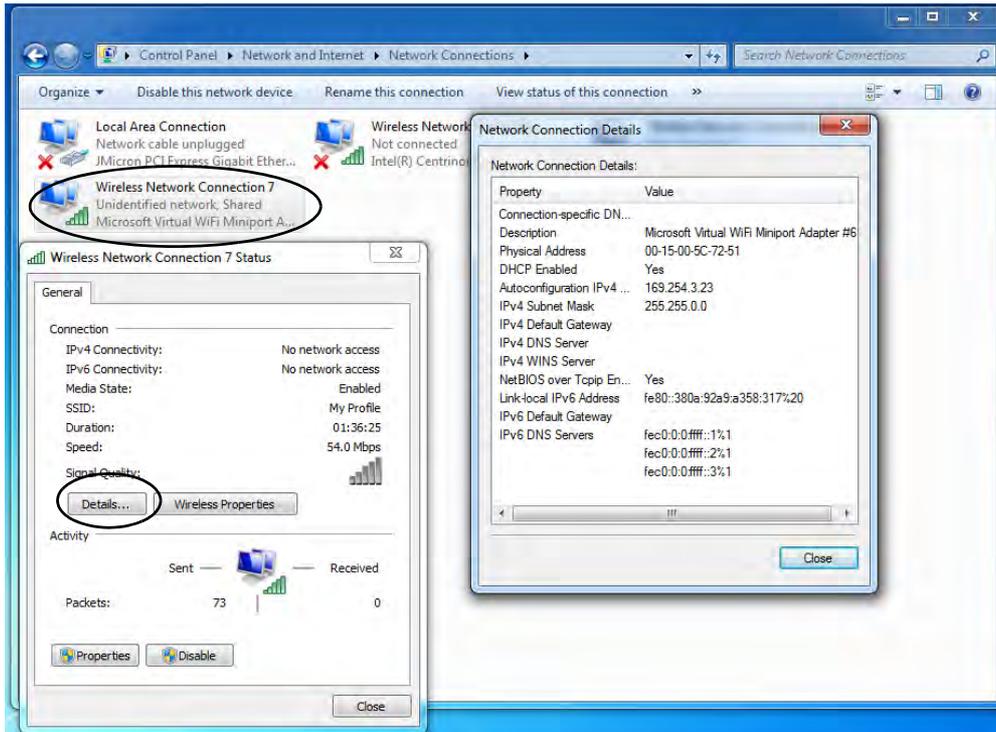


Figure 7 - 16
Wireless Network
Connection Details

Modules & Options

24. Access the **Intel® My WiFi Utility** from the **Start** menu (**Start > Programs/All Programs > Intel PROSet Wireless > Intel My WiFi Technology**), or by clicking the taskbar icon .
25. To add a new device follow the instructions in the devices' user guide for connecting to a WiFi network.
26. Click **Add New Device** in **Intel® My WiFi Utility** to confirm the security settings detail.

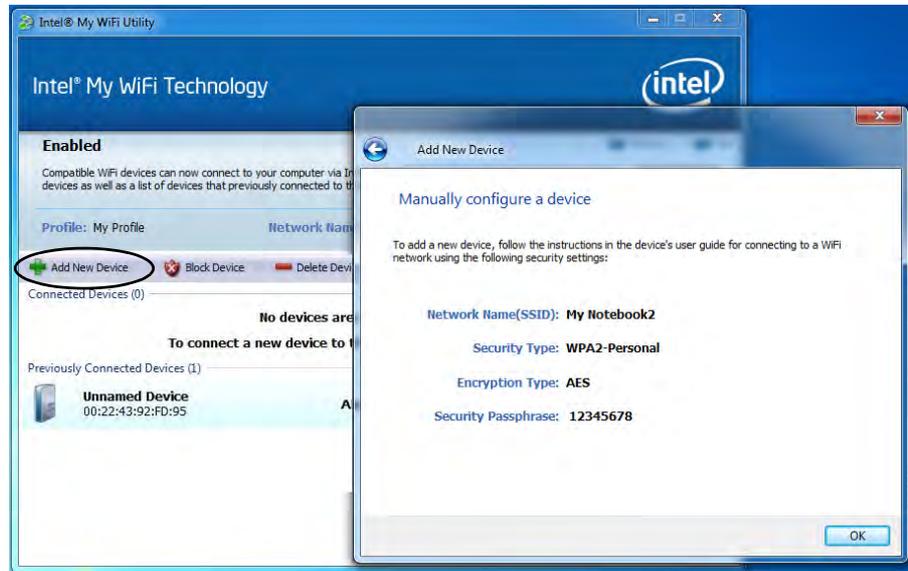


Figure 7 - 17
**Intel® My WiFi
Utility
(Add New Device)**

Intel WLAN & Bluetooth Combo Module High-Speed Data Transfer Configuration

You will need to configure the following settings to enable high-speed wireless data transfer as supported by Intel Wireless LAN & Bluetooth Combo modules (note this information applies to Intel WLAN & Bluetooth Combo modules only).

1. Go the **Windows** control panel and double-click **Device Manager** (in **Hardware and Sound** under **Devices and Printers**).



Figure 7 - 18
Devices and
Printers
(Device Manager)

2. Click **Network adapters** to expand the sub-menu.
3. Double-click the **Intel WiFi Link** module.
4. Click **Advanced** (tab).
5. Click **802.11n Channel Width for band 2.4** under “Property:”.
6. Click the pull-down menu under “Value:”.
7. Click to select **Auto**.
8. Click **OK** and close the control panels.

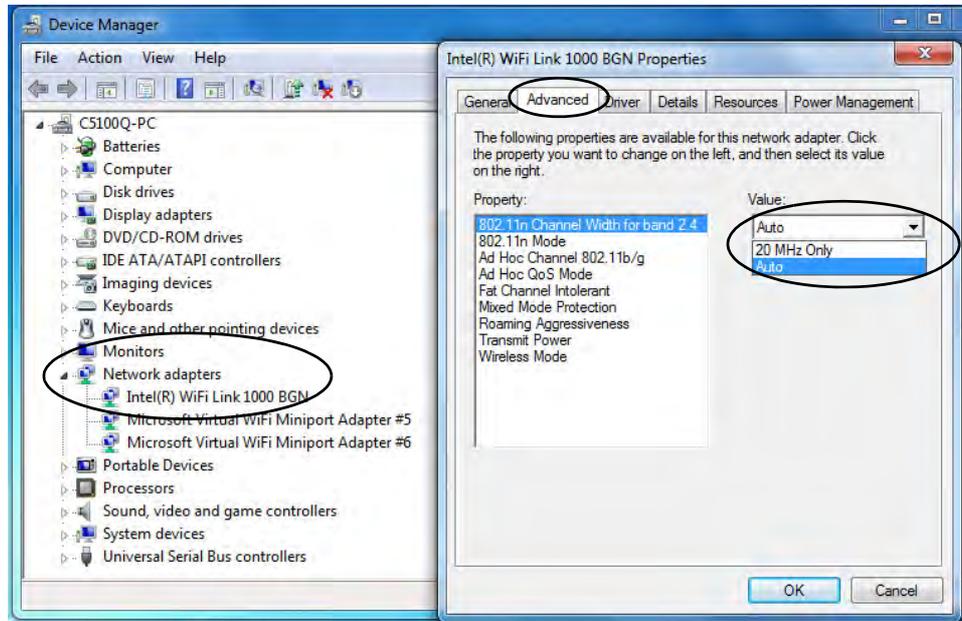


Figure 7 - 19
Intel WiFi Link
Properties
(Advanced)

Windows Mobility Center

The **Windows Mobility Center** control panel provides an easy point of access for information on battery status, power plans used and wireless device status etc.

To access the Windows Mobility Center:

1. Click **Start**, and click **Control Panel** (or point to **Settings** and click **Control Panel**).
2. Double-click **Windows Mobility Center (Mobile PC)**.
3. Click the button to **Turn wireless off/on**, or click the icon  to access the network menu.



Figure 7 - 20
Windows Mobility Center



Compatible Adapters

For a list of compatible display and audio adapters check the Intel website, or your service center.

Intel® Wireless Display Application

The **Intel® Wireless Display Application** (requires **Intel® Centrino WLAN/Combo module**), in conjunction with a **compatible video adapter** (purchased separately), allows you to display the contents of the notebook display on another display (e.g. HDTV) without the need to have cables stretching across a room. You can then play games, browse the internet, display videos or photo slide shows on your TV/external display without using HDMI or A/V cables.

Before configuring the **Intel® WiDi** application you will need to set up your **compatible adapter** with your display/speakers. Connect the adapter using an HDMI or A/V cable and turn on the display (or in the case of speakers connect them to the wireless speaker adapter with the cables provided with the adapter), and then set the display to the appropriate input channel (see the documentation supplied with your **compatible adapter** for full details).

Intel® WiDi also incorporates **Intel® Wireless Music** which allows you to wirelessly stream audio from your computer to speakers connected to a **compatible wireless speaker adapter** (purchased separately).

Intel® WiDi Application Installation

1. Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc into the DVD drive.
2. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
3. Click **3.Install WiDi AP > Yes**.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Click the button to accept the license and click **Next**.
6. Click **Finish**.

Intel® Wireless Music Driver Installation

If you wish to use your system to stream wireless audio to speakers connected to a compatible wireless speaker adapter you will need to install the **Intel(R) Wireless Music Driver**.

1. Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc into the DVD drive.
2. Click **Browse** and browse to the driver location (X: denotes your DVD drive):
 - **X:\Options\02WLAN\Intel_WiDi_Music\autorun.exe**
3. Click **Next**.
4. Click the button to accept the license and click **Next**.
5. Click **Finish**.
6. Follow the procedure overleaf to setup WiDi or Wireless Music.

Intel® WiDi Application Configuration

1. Click **Start > All Programs > Intel Corporation > Intel(R) Wireless Display > Intel(R) Wireless Display**, or double click the icon  on the desktop.
2. Click **I agree to the terms of this license** (button).
3. The application will scan for any connected compatible adapters (or you can click the **Scan for available adapters** button to enable **Intel My WiFi Technology**).

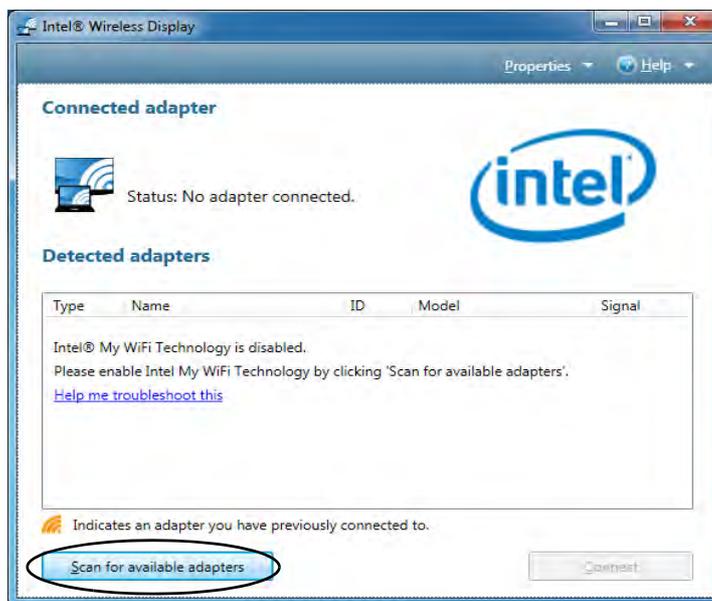


Figure 7 - 21
Intel® WiDi Scan

4. Click to select and detected adapters, and click **Connect**.
5. The system will then prompt you to enter the **4-digit security code** which will be displayed on the external TV Screen (or press the **connect** button on the wireless speaker adapter).
6. Enter the code for the video adapter and click **Continue**.

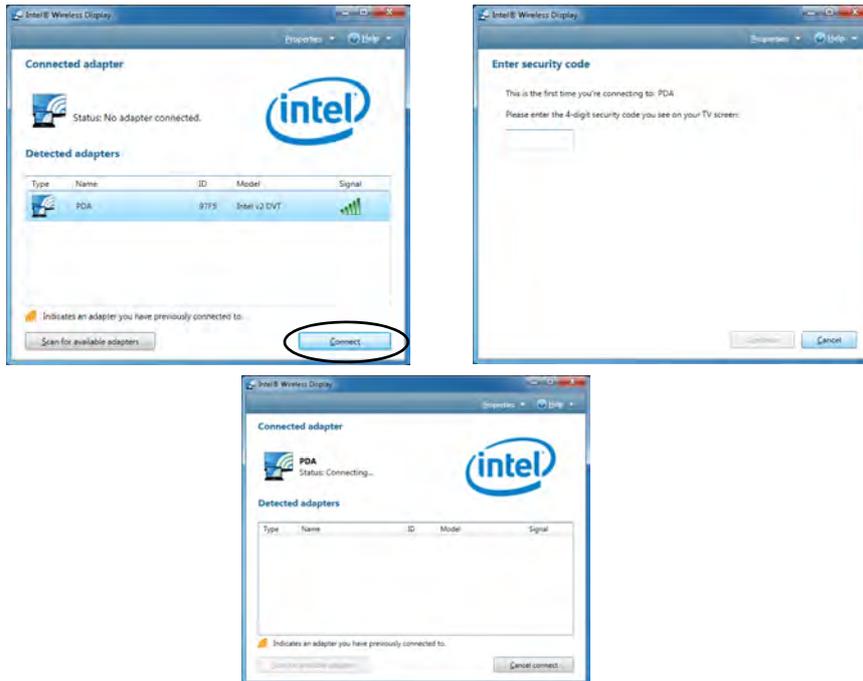


Figure 7 - 22
**Intel® WiDi Connect
 & Enter Security
 Code**

Modules & Options



Test Audio Adapter

To verify a successful audio connection (for **Intel® Wireless Music**), select the “**Test your audio connection**” link or select “**Finished**” to bypass the test.

You can select “**Play Sample**” to play an audio test sample from your adapter to the connected speaker set.

7. You will then be prompted to enter a name for the video adapter and click **Continue**.
8. Click **Finished** to complete the setup.

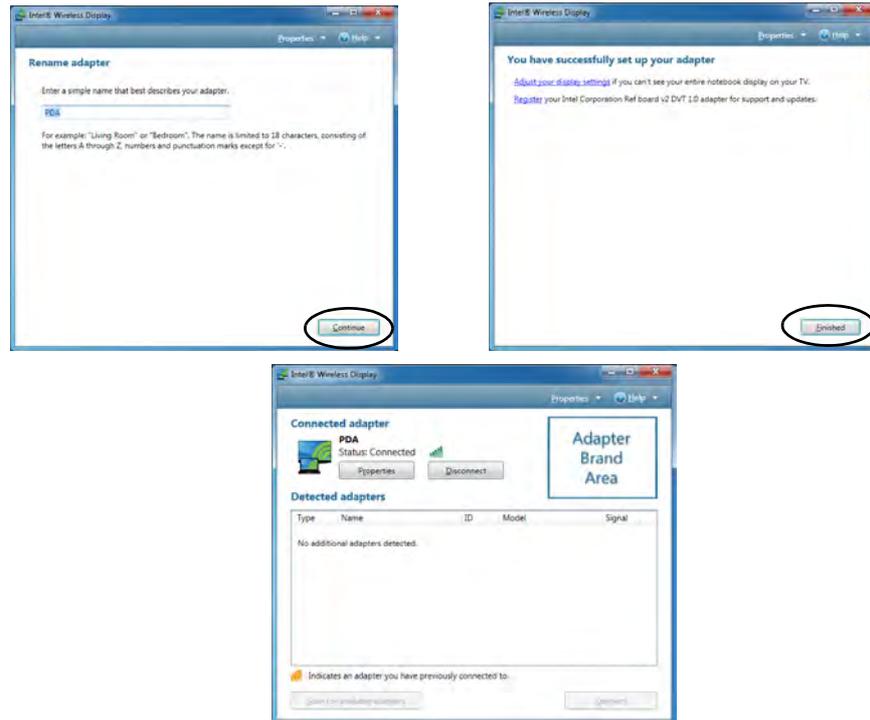


Figure 7 - 23
**Intel® WiDi
Connected**

Bluetooth & WLAN Combo Module

If your purchase option includes the **Combination Wireless LAN & Bluetooth module** (either **Intel®** or **3rd Party**) then install the driver as instructed overleaf (see *“Bluetooth Settings (Windows 8)” on page E - 37* for instructions on Bluetooth settings for *Windows 8*).

Use the **Fn + F12** key combination or **Control Center** button to toggle power to the **Bluetooth** module.



Bluetooth Data Transfer

Note that the transfer of data between the computer and a Bluetooth enabled device is supported in **one direction only (simultaneous data transfer is not supported)**. Therefore if you are copying a file from your computer to a Bluetooth enabled device, you will not be able to copy a file from the Bluetooth enabled device to your computer until the file transfer process from the computer has been completed.

- For **3rd party Bluetooth modules** see the information provided overleaf on the driver provided.
- For **Intel Bluetooth combo modules** see the installation procedure see *“3rd Party Bluetooth (V4.0) Combo Driver Installation” on page 7 - 38* and *“Standard Bluetooth Configuration in Windows 7” on page 7 - 40*.



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the **Fn + F12** key combination to toggle power to the Bluetooth module, and check the LED indicator to see if the module is powered on or not (see *Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15/ Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11*).

3rd Party Bluetooth (V4.0) Combo Driver Installation

1. **Before installing the driver make sure the Bluetooth module is powered on** (use **Fn + F12** key combination), then insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc into the CD/DVD drive. If a *Found New Hardware* window appears, click **Cancel** in all windows that appear, and then proceed to install the driver as below.
2. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
3. Click **4.Install Combo BT Driver > Yes**.
4. Click **Next** (if a prompt appears to ask you to turn the Bluetooth power on, press the **Fn + F12** key combination to do so, otherwise the driver will not be installed).
5. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.
6. See *“Standard Bluetooth Configuration in Windows 7” on page 7 - 40* for configuration instructions. See *“Bluetooth Settings (Windows 8)” on page E - 37* for *Windows 8* configuration information.

Intel Bluetooth Combo Driver Installation

Note this driver is required only for the Intel combo Bluetooth and WLAN module only.

1. **Before installing the driver make sure the Bluetooth module is powered on** (use **Fn + F12** key combination), then insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc into the DVD drive. If a *Found New Hardware* window appears, click **Cancel** in all windows that appear, and then proceed to install the driver as below.
2. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
3. Click **4.Install Combo BT Driver > Yes**.
4. Click **Next > Next**.
5. Click the button to accept the license and click **Next**.
6. Click **Next > Finish**.
7. See over for configuration instructions. See *“Bluetooth Settings (Windows 8)” on page E - 37* for *Windows 8* configuration information.



High Speed Bluetooth Data Transfer

The **Combination Wireless LAN & Bluetooth module** supports high speed data transfer. However to achieve such transfer speeds, **both devices must support high speed data transfer**.

To obtain high speed data transfer make sure that **both the WLAN and Bluetooth modules are powered on**.

Check your Bluetooth compatible device's documentation to confirm it supports high speed data transfer.



Add a Device

Click **Start**, and click **Control Panel** and then click **Devices and Printers (Hardware and Sound)**. Click **Add a device** to search for any available Bluetooth devices.

Bluetooth Module & Resuming From Sleep Mode

The Bluetooth module's default state will be off after resuming from the **Sleep** power-saving state. Use the key combination (**Fn + F12**) to power on the Bluetooth module after the computer resumes from Sleep.

Standard Bluetooth Configuration in Windows 7

Setup your Bluetooth Device so the Computer Can Find it

1. Turn your Bluetooth device (e.g. PDA, mobile phone etc.) on.
2. Make the device discoverable (to do this check your device documentation).

To Turn the Bluetooth Module On

1. Press the **Fn + F12** key combination to power on the Bluetooth module.
2. A Bluetooth icon  will appear in the taskbar notification area.
3. You can then do any of the following to access the **Bluetooth Devices** control panel.
 - **Double-click** the taskbar icon  to access the **Bluetooth Devices** control panel.
 - **Click/Right-click** the taskbar icon  and choose an option from the menu.

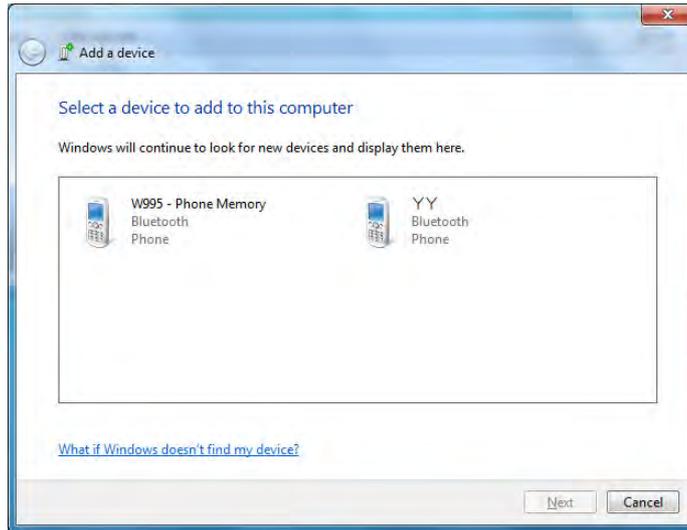


Figure 7 - 24

Bluetooth Devices & Click Icon Menu

To Add a Bluetooth Device

1. Access the **Bluetooth Devices** control panel and click **Add a device**.
2. Double-click the device you want to pair with the computer.



3. On first connection the computer will provide you with a pairing code to be entered onto the device.



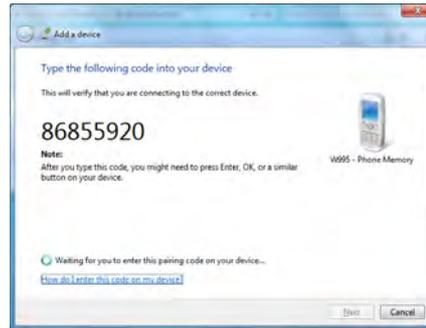
Pairing Options

If a device has been previously connected then the pairing option menu will appear when you attempt subsequent connections. You can choose to have the computer create a pairing code for you, use the device's existing pairing code or you can pair certain devices without using a code.

Figure 7 - 25
Add a Device

4. Enter the code into your Bluetooth enabled device and follow any on-screen instructions to complete the pairing.

Figure 7 - 26
Pairing Code Example

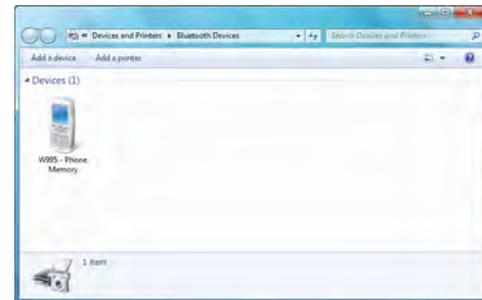


Pairing Codes

The example outlined here shows a connection to a mobile device. Other devices e.g. computers, may have a slightly different connection procedure, and may require you to confirm a pairing code is correct on both devices. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the pairing.

5. **Windows** will check to see if any drivers are required to complete the pairing.
6. Follow any on-screen instructions on the computer if device drivers are required to be installed.
7. Click **Close**.

Figure 7 - 27
Pairing Complete & Bluetooth Device Enabled

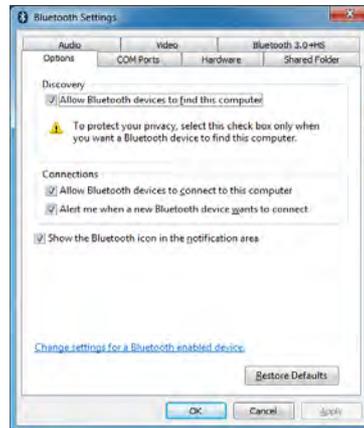


To Change Settings for the Bluetooth Device

1. Click the taskbar icon and select **Show Bluetooth Devices**.
2. Right-click on the device you want to change and click **Properties** to:
 - Change the **name** of the device (click **Bluetooth**, type a new name and click **OK**).
 - Enable/Disable a **service** (click **Services**, clear/tick the check box next to the service and click **OK**).

To Make your Computer Discoverable to Bluetooth Devices

1. Click the taskbar icon and select **Open Settings**.
2. Click **Options**, and make sure that **Allow Bluetooth devices to find this computer** check box (**Discovery**) has a tick inside it.
3. Make sure that the **Alert me when a new Bluetooth device wants to connect** check box (**Connections**) has a tick inside it, if you want to be notified when a Bluetooth device wants to connect.



Bluetooth Help

To get help on Bluetooth configuration and settings, select **Help and Support** from the **Start** menu. Type Bluetooth in the **Search Help** box, and select an item from the returned search results to get more information.

Figure 7 - 28
Bluetooth Settings -
Options



3G Module Options

There are **three optional** 3.G modules available for this series of computer models. Each module is supplied with the appropriate application software.

The module type supplied may depend upon the computer model purchased. Check with your service center for details.

Install the driver from the Drivers Installer menu and check the instructions for the appropriate application on the following pages.

3G Module

(For **Models A & B** Only)

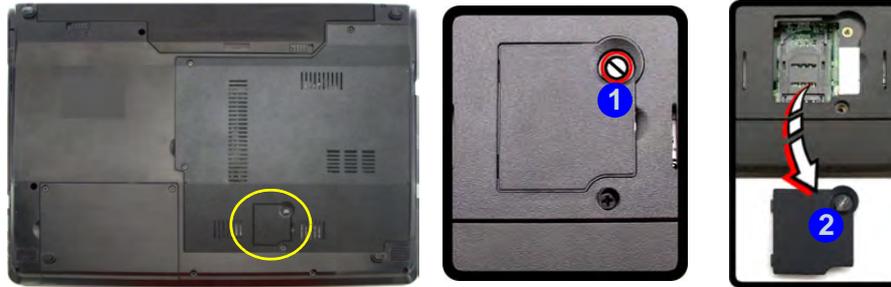
If you have included an **optional UMTS/HSPDA OR UMTS/HSPDA+** based 3G Module (Universal Mobile Telecommunications System or High Speed Packet Access) module (see *“Communication” on page D - 5* for specification details) in your purchase option, you will have the appropriate application (**Wireless Manager, AirCard Watcher or Mobile Partner**) provided for **Windows 7** (see *“3G Settings (Windows 8)” on page E - 42* for information on **Windows 8** as no driver/application installation is required). Follow the instructions on page **7 - 45** to install the USIM card (which will be provided by your service provider), and then install the application.



Important Notice - 3G & Bluetooth/Wireless LAN Modules

In order to comply with FCC regulations you should NOT operate the 3G module and the Bluetooth/Wireless LAN modules at the same time as this may disrupt radio frequency, and cause interference. When the 3G module is powered on, make sure that the Bluetooth/Wireless LAN modules are powered off.

1. Turn **off** the computer, and turn it over and **remove the battery** (see page **6 - 4**).
2. Locate the 3G USIM card cover and loosen screw **1**, and then remove the USIM card cover **2**.



3. Insert the USIM card as you would into your mobile phone.
4. Slide the SIMLOCK towards the hinge in order to release the lock and lift it up.
5. Insert the USIM card as illustrated in (**Figure 7 - 30**) and close the SIMLOCK.



Figure 7 - 29
**USIM Card Cover
Removal**



Power Safety Warning

Before you undertake any installation procedures, make sure that you have turned off the power, and disconnected all peripherals and cables (including telephone lines). It is advisable to also remove your battery in order to prevent accidentally turning the machine on.

Figure 7 - 30
Insert the USIM Card

Modules & Options

- Lock the SIMLOCK by pushing it in the direction of the arrow in [Figure 7 - 31](#) until it clicks into the lock position.

Figure 7 - 31
SIMLOCK Lock



3G Modules & System Wake Up

Note that the 3G modules **DO NOT** support system wake up on 3G modem activity.



Before installing the application, make sure that the 3G module is ON (installing the driver with the module off will not allow the software to detect the module hardware correctly). Use the **Fn +  key combination** (see *Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15*) or **Control Center button** to toggle power to the 3G module. Make sure you install the drivers in the order indicated in *Table 4 - 1, on page 4 - 3*. **Note that exiting the application does NOT turn off the 3G module.**

- **Wireless Manager** - See *“Wireless Manager Installation” on page 7 - 48* for driver installation information and *“Wireless Manager Application” on page 7 - 49* for instructions on using **Wireless Manager**.
- **AirCard Watcher** - See *“Sierra Wireless AirCard Watcher Installation” on page 7 - 70* for driver installation information and *“AirCard Watcher Application” on page 7 - 71* for instructions on using **AirCard Watcher**.
- **Mobile Partner** - See *“Mobile Partner Application Installation” on page 7 - 84* for driver installation information and *“Mobile Partner Application” on page 7 - 85* for instructions on using **Mobile Partner**.
- See *“3G Settings (Windows 8)” on page E - 42* for **Windows 8** configuration information.



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the **Fn + ** key combination to toggle power to the 3G module, and check the indicator to see if the module is powered on or not (see [Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11](#)/[Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11](#)).

Wireless Manager

With the **3G** module and USIM card (supplied by your service provider) installed you may then install the **Wireless Manager** application. The **Wireless Manager** application allows you to directly access your HSPA internet service from the computer.

Wireless Manager Installation

1. Enable power to the module by pressing the **Fn + ** key combination or Control Center button (give the module about 10 seconds to power on).
2. If a *Found New Hardware* window appears, click **Cancel** (click **Cancel** for all *Found New Hardware* windows that appear).
3. Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual disc* into your DVD drive.
4. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
5. Click **5.Install 3G Driver > Yes**.
6. Click **Next > Next > Install**.
7. Click **Finish**.
8. Access the **Wireless Manager** application from the **Start** menu or the desktop shortcut .



Wireless Manager Application

The connection information is stored on the USIM card supplied by the service provider (where this is not the case you may need to create a profile - see *“Creating a Profile” on page 7 - 55*).

1. Power on the 3G module using the **Fn +**  key combination.
2. Access the **Wireless Manager** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Wireless Manager > Wireless Manager**) or the desktop shortcut .
3. You may be required to enter your **PIN** number and click **OK**.
4. Click the **Connect**  button (a **Profile** needs to be selected, and in most cases this will be pre-configured).



PIN Number

The PIN number for your USIM card will be supplied by your service provider. You usually have a limited number of attempts to enter the correct PIN number.

If you fail to enter the PIN number correctly you will be blocked from accessing the USIM card and you will need a **PUK** (Personal Unblocking Key), supplied by your service provider, to unlock it.

Figure 7 - 32
Wireless Manager
(Not connected)

Modules & Options



Wireless Manager Help

To get help on **Wireless Manager** configuration and settings, click the **Help** icon or press **F1**.



5. The system will connect to your network.
6. **Connected** will appear above the timer icon (the timer will indicate your connected time for the current session) **Connected** 00:00:33
7. You can then access the internet, download e-mail etc. as per any internet connection.



Figure 7 - 33
Wireless Manager
(Connected)

8. Click the Wireless Manager notification area icon  to view the connection status, or wireless icon  to view the Mobile Broadband Connection status.

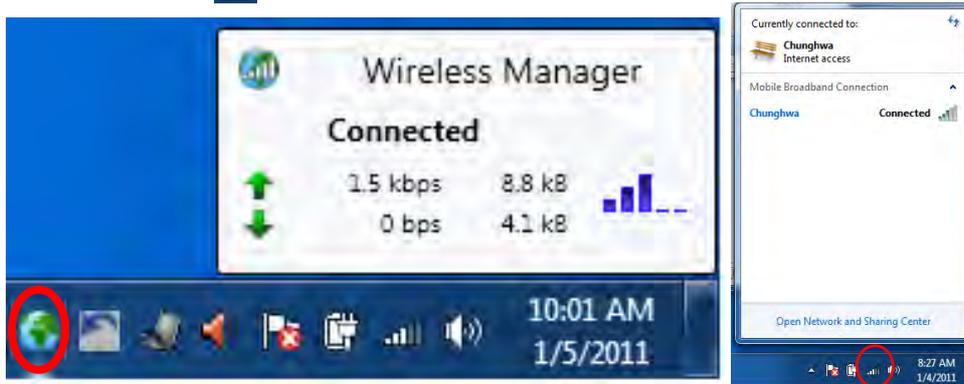
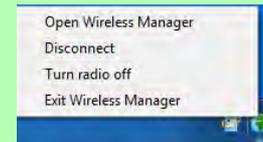


Figure 7 - 34
Notification Area
Icons (Connected)

9. The indicator  will display the signal strength and radio access technology.
10. To disconnect from UMTS service provider, click the **Disconnect**  button (note that if you click the close icon at the top right of the screen the application will minimize to the system tray, however the application will still be running; to exit the application right-click the notification area icon and click **Disconnect** or **Exit Wireless Manager**).
11. The program will disconnect from the service provider.
12. The module will still be on, and you will need to press the **Fn + ** key combination to turn it off.
13. If you are unsuccessful in connecting this way you may need to add a profile with information provided by your service provider (see the following pages).

Notification Area Icon

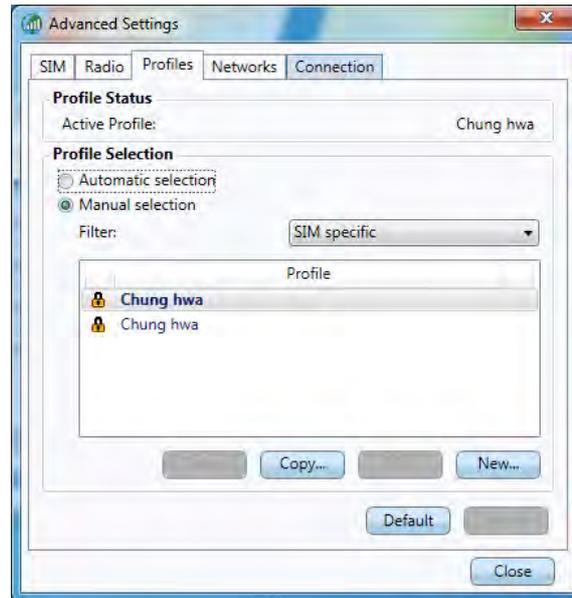
Right-click the notification area icon to bring up the menu to **Open/Exit Wireless Manager, Disconnect** or **Turn radio off**.



Profiles

1. Access the **Wireless Manager** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Wireless Manager > Wireless Manager**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Click the **Settings > Advanced**.
3. Click the **Profiles** (tab).

Figure 7 - 35
Advanced Settings - Profiles



- Multiple profiles may be available from the USIM card and the first time the application starts it may require you to select a profile (**Set Profile**) to use for your connection.



Figure 7 - 36
Multiple Profiles Found

Automatic Profile Selection

If **Automatic selection** is chosen, then the application will search the operator profile database for a profile that matches the details on your USIM card. If a correct profile is found it will be automatically selected as your profile.

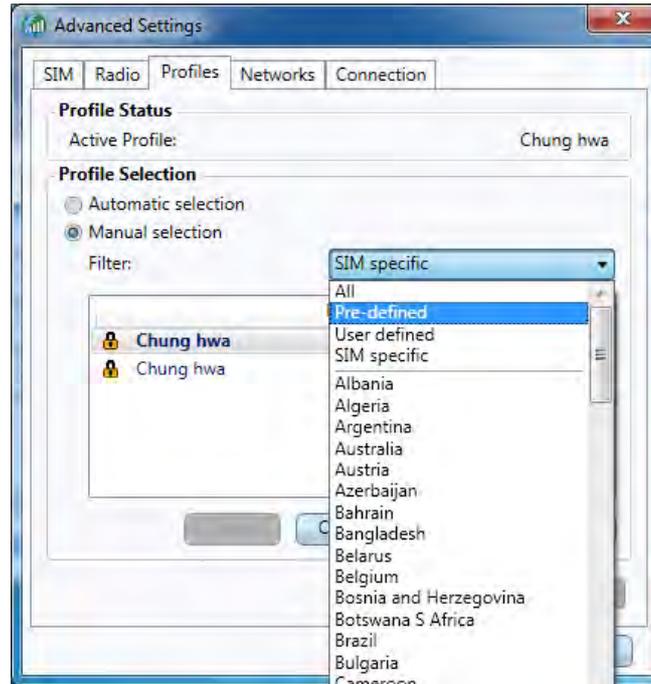
Manual Profile Selection

If Manual selection is chosen, then you can select a profile from the applications' operator profile database, or you can create a new profile.

Selecting a Profile

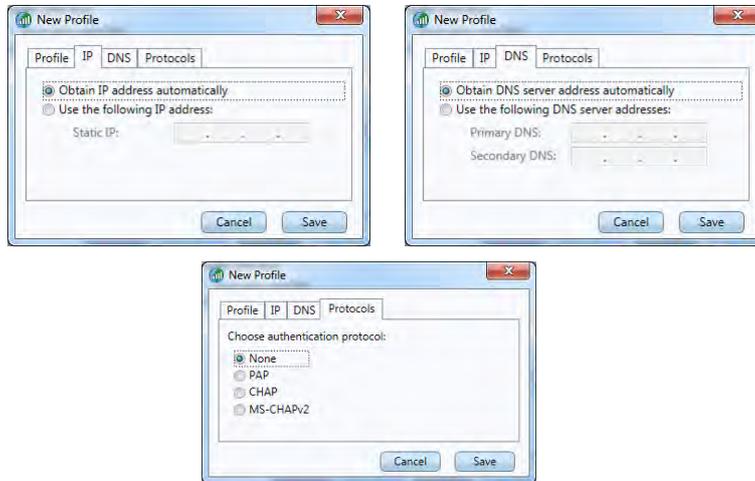
1. Click **Manual selection** (button).
2. Click the **Filter** to view the drop-down list.
3. Select the Profile you wish to use and click **Apply** to confirm the selection.

Figure 7 - 37
Profile - Manual Selection (Filter)



Creating a Profile

1. Click **Manual selection** (button).
2. Click the **New**.
3. Enter a name you prefer for the profile.
4. Enter the **Access Point Name (APN)**.
5. Enter the **User Name** and **Password** if required (some service providers may not require this information and the fields may then be left blank).
6. If your service provider requires **IP address**, **DNS** and **Protocols** to be entered, click the appropriate tab and enter the supplied information (otherwise leave blank).
7. Click **Save** to save the profile information.
8. The profile will be stored under **User defined** in the **Filter** drop-down list.



Deleting a Profile

To delete a profile click to select **Manual selection** and select the profile and click **Delete**.

Modifying a Profile

To modify a profile click to select **Manual selection** and select the profile and click **Edit**. Change the settings as required and then click **Save** (note that only **user defined** profiles may be edited).

Figure 7 - 38
**New Profile IP, DNS
 & Protocols**

Settings

The **Settings** tab allows you to adjust the application features. Click to put a tick in **Launch Wireless Manager at Windows startup** to launch the application at *Windows* Startup.

Figure 7 - 39
Settings



The **Advanced** settings allows more detailed configuration. To access the **Advanced** settings:

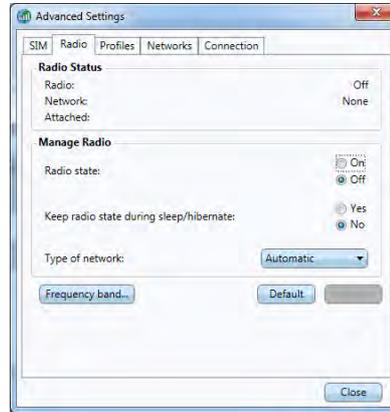
1. Access the **Wireless Manager** program from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Wireless Manager > Wireless Manager**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Click the **Settings > Advanced**.
3. Click the tab to edit any particular setting.

SIM

Most USIM cards are protected by a Personal Identity Number (PIN). You may turn on or off the **Request PIN at startup** (click **Apply** to save any changes). You can also **Change PIN** (you will need to enter the new PIN in the two fields provided and click **Apply** to save any changes).

Radio

Radio needs to be turned on before you can make any connection (note this is not the same as powering the module off/on using the **Fn** +  key combination), but you may turn it off when required. **Automatic** mode is the recommended setting for most 3G networks as it will use 3G where available. All **Frequency bands** are selected as default (click **Apply** to save any changes).



PIN Notes

You will have to enter your current PIN to change the PIN settings.

Request PIN at startup will apply only after you have shut the computer down and restarted it (not just restarted).

Radio & Power Saving States

You can choose to have the radio turned on or off during **Hibernate** or **Sleep** power saving states.

Figure 7 - 40
Advanced Settings
SIM & Radio



Warning

Note that some applications automatically transmit data when connected, and you may be charged for the data transfer. Some auto connection/connection settings may lead to expensive roaming charges.

Networks

The mobile network list lists available networks at your location, and allows you to select a network which to connect. You must disconnect before being able to select a network.

Connection

You can set the **Wireless Manager** to automatically connect at **Windows** startup (however the module must be powered on, and radio must be turned on). You can also automatically connect when resuming from a power-saving state (click **Apply** to save any changes). Click **Default** to return to the original default settings.

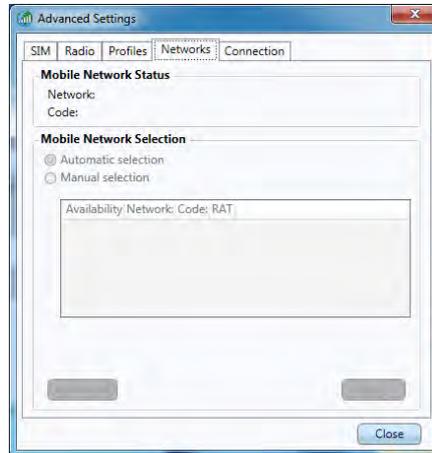


Figure 7 - 41
Advanced Settings
Networks &
Connection

Text Messaging Service (SMS)

In addition to standard internet services you may also send and receive SMS text messages using the **Wireless Manager**, if your service supports SMS.

SMS Utility

1. Access the **Wireless Manager** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Wireless Manager > Wireless Manager**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Click **SMS** and the **SMS Utility** will then start.
3. The indicator in the upper right corner will display if radio is currently on or off (radio must be on in order to send/receive messages).



Figure 7 - 42
SMS Utility Open

Messages

Click the **Messages** tab to access the tabs displaying text messages. The tabs at the top of the menu display the **Inbox**, **Drafts**, **Outbox**, **Sent** and **Trash** menus.

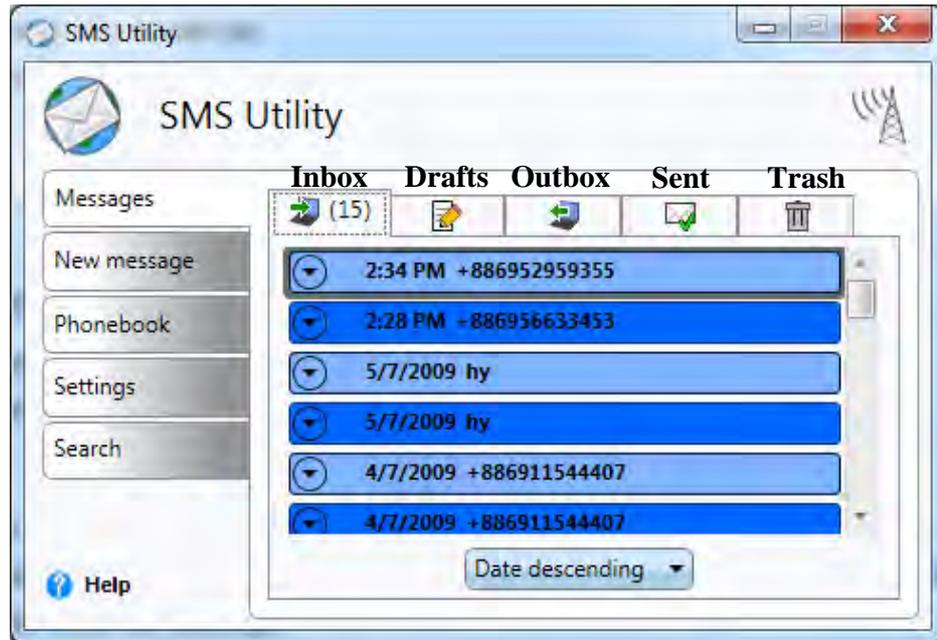


Figure 7 - 43
SMS Utility
Messages

Text messages are automatically saved to your computer and may be sorted in ascending or descending order by name or date.

Sending a Text Message

1. Access the **Wireless Manager** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Wireless Manager > Wireless Manager**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Click **SMS** and the **SMS Utility** will then start.
3. Click the **New Message** tab.
4. Enter the phone number in the **To** field (multiple numbers may be entered separated by a semicolon (;), or click the phonebook icon  to select a name from the phonebook.
5. Select any contact's phone number and click **OK** (you can click a check box to select multiple contacts or more than one phone number for each contact).
6. Type the message body in the **Message** field (to a **maximum of 160 characters**).

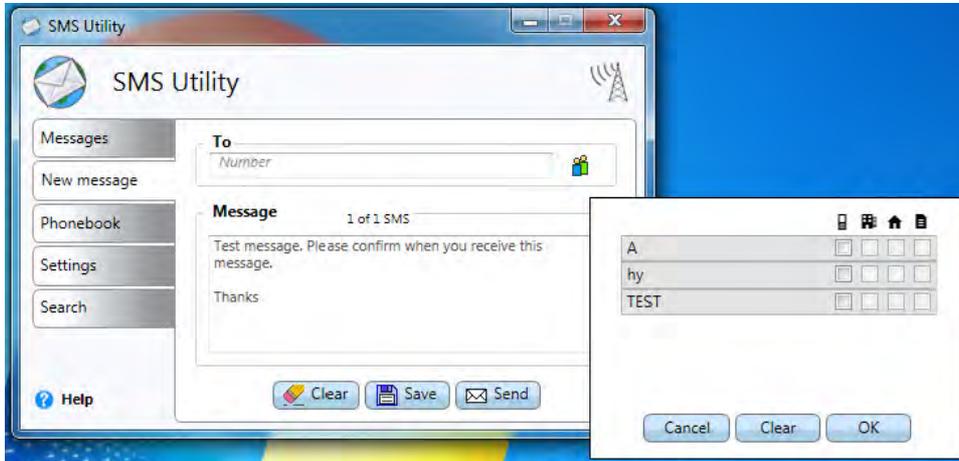


Figure 7 - 44
SMS Utility - New
Message

Modules & Options

7. Click **Send**  to send the message or **Save**  to save the message in the **Drafts** folder.
8. Clicking the **Clear** icon  clears both the **Message** and **To** fields.
9. If **radio is on** then the message will be sent, however if the radio is off the message will be stored in the **Outbox**.

Note that you do not have to connect to the network to Send/Receive SMS messages as long as the radio is on.

Inbox

Any received text messages will be displayed in the **Inbox**. The number of unread messages will be displayed in parenthesis in the inbox tab. Unread messages will be displayed in a darker color then the read messages, and incoming messages will be displayed briefly in the Notification Area.

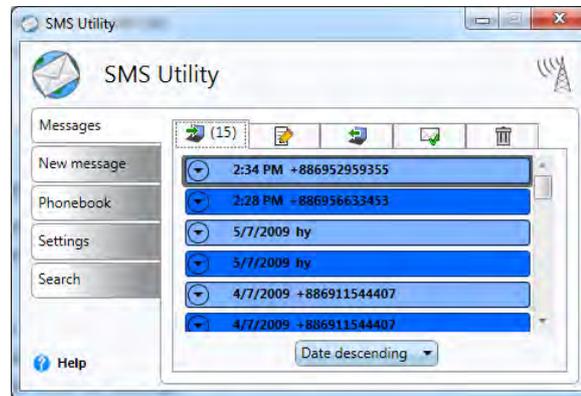


Figure 7 - 45
**SMS Utility - Inbox &
New Message
Received
Notification**

Messages

- **Opening a text message:** Double-click the message and the message will open in a new window (to close it click the close icon in the top right of the message).



Figure 7 - 46
Close Message

- **Previewing a text message:** Click the preview icon  and the message preview will open. Click the icon again to close the preview.
- **Replying to a text message:** Double-click the message and click **Reply**. Type the reply in the message field and click **Send** to send the message (or **Save** to save it in **Drafts**).
- **Forwarding a text message:** Double-click the message and click **Forward**. Type the recipients name in the **To** field or click the icon  to select recipients from the **phonebook**.
- **Deleting a text message:** Right-click the message select **Delete selected**. To delete all messages in the folder right-click any message and select **Delete All**. Holding down the **Ctrl** key and selecting messages allows you to multiple select messages for deletion (choose **Delete selected**). Deleted message will be sent to the Trash folder. To permanently delete messages right-click and select **Delete selected** or **Delete All** (or you may choose to **Recover/Recover All**) and click **Yes** to confirm.

Phonebook

The **Phonebook** allows you to view and edit all your frequently used contacts, and is divided into **Contacts**  and **Groups** . To access the **Phonebook**:

1. Access the **Wireless Manager** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Wireless Manager > Wireless Manager**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Click **SMS** and the **SMS Utility** will then start.
3. Click the **Phonebook** tab.

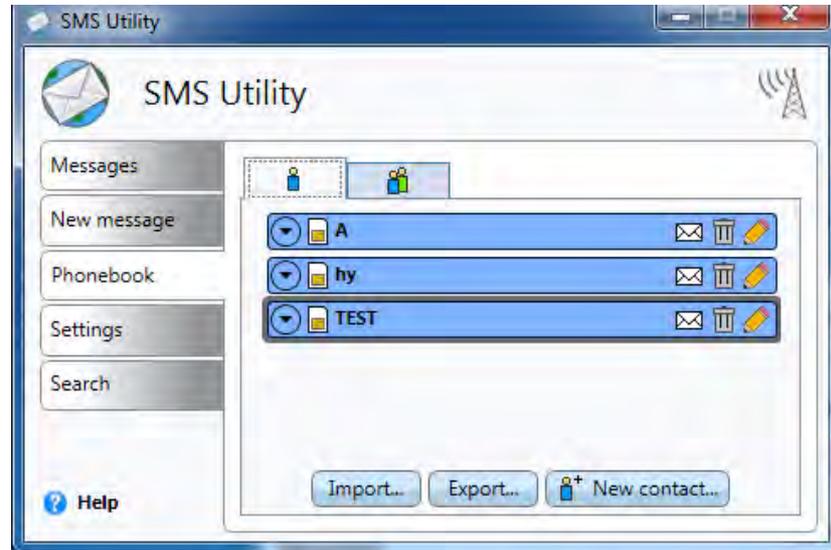
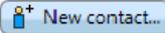
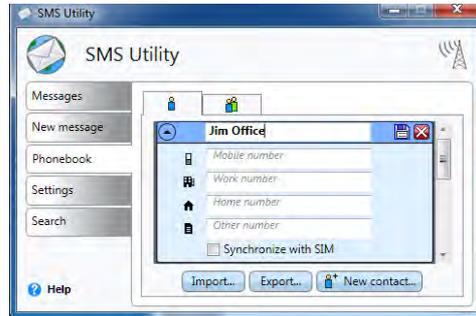


Figure 7 - 47
**SMS Utility -
Phonebook
(Contacts)**

Contacts

- **New Contact:** Click the **New contact** button  to create a contact. Add the name and at least one phone number (**Mobile, Work, Home** and **Other** fields are available) for the contact. Click the  icon to expand the number details. Select **Synchronize with SIM** to synchronize the contact information with your USIM card. Click the **Save** icon  to save the information.



- **Edit Contact:** Click the edit icon  to make changes to a contact detail, and click save  to confirm the changes.
- **Delete Contact:** Click the delete icon  to delete a contact from the phonebook.
- **Send a message to a Contact:** Click the message icon  to send a text message to any contact.



Import/Export Contacts

Import/Export Contacts: Click the **Import/Export**   buttons to import or export the list of contacts.

Figure 7 - 48
SMS Utility
New Contact

Groups

You can organize existing contacts into groups from the **Groups** tab.

- **New Group:** Click the **New group** button  **New group...** to create a group. Click the  icon to expand the group details, and click a check box to add at least one phone number from the contacts for the group. Click the **Save** icon  to save the information.

Figure 7 - 49
SMS Utility
Groups



- **Edit Group:** Click the edit icon  to make changes to a contact detail, and click save  to confirm the changes, or close  to exit without making changes.
- **Delete Group:** Click the delete icon  to delete a group from the phonebook.
- **Send a message to a Group:** Click the message icon  to send a text message to any group.

SMS Settings

The SMS Utility **Settings** tab allows you to adjust the SMS features.

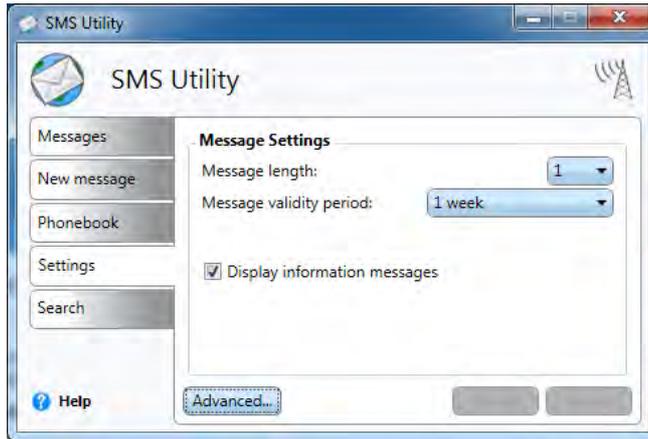


Figure 7 - 50
SMS Utility Settings



SMS Settings

Message Length: You can set the number of blocks that can be sent (up to a length of 10 blocks).

Message validity period: This sets the period after which the message will be deleted from the SMS center and therefore not forwarded to the recipient(s) when they come online.

Display information messages: You can choose whether to allow information messages to automatically appear on screen or not.

The **Advanced** settings allows more detailed configuration. To access the **Advanced** settings:

1. Access the **Wireless Manager** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Wireless Manager > Wireless Manager**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Click **SMS** and the **SMS Utility** will then start.
3. Click the **Settings > Advanced**.
4. Click the tab to edit any particular setting.

Send

Click **Delivery Report** to automatically request a reply from a recipient. If you click to **Send messages in Outbox automatically upon connection** then messages written when the radio is off, will then be sent automatically the next time radio is turned on. You can also choose to **Include original message in reply**.

Notification

This menu allows you to enable/disable **Show animation on new message** to get an animated notification of newly received messages. Enabling **Play sound on new message** will play an audio notification upon receipt of new messages.

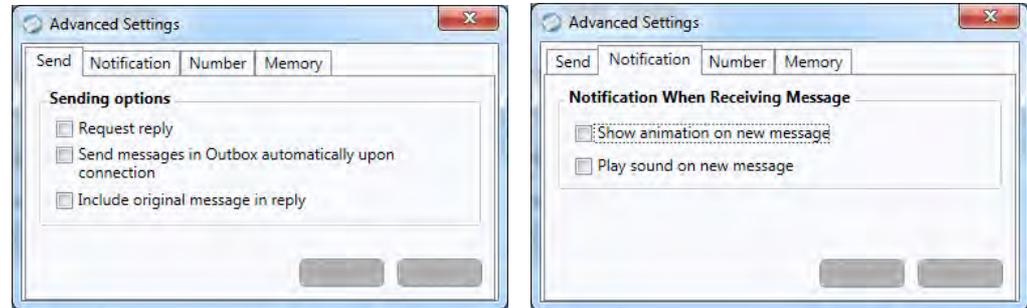


Figure 7 - 51

**SMS Utility -
Advanced Settings
Send & Notification**

Number

You can choose to **Use default service center number** or you can uncheck the box and add your number manually if your service provider supplies a different number (click **Apply** to save the change or **Default** to return to the default number).

Memory

Phonebook memory status displays the number of contacts displayed on the USIM card.

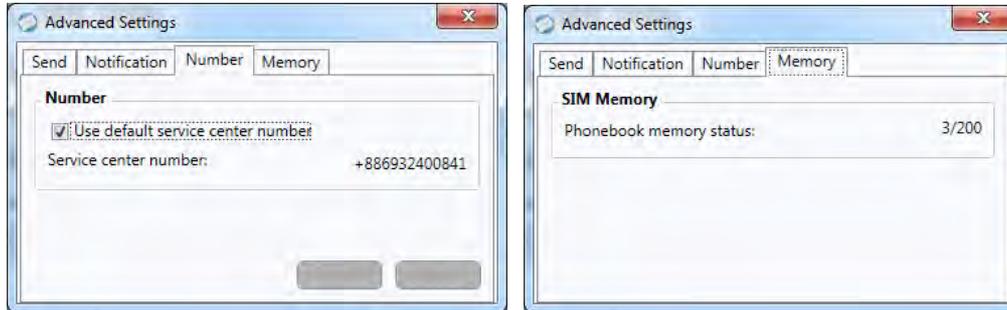


Figure 7 - 52
**SMS Utility -
 Advanced Settings
 Number & Memory**



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the **Fn + ** key combination to toggle power to the 3G module, and check the indicator to see if the module is powered on or not (see [Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11](#)/[Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11](#)).

Sierra Wireless AirCard Watcher

With the **3G** module and USIM card (supplied by your service provider) installed you may then install the **Sierra Wireless AirCard Watcher** application. **AirCard Watcher** allows you to directly access your internet service from the computer.

Sierra Wireless AirCard Watcher Installation

1. Enable power to the module by pressing the **Fn + ** key combination or Control Center button (give the module about 10 seconds to power on).
2. If a *Found New Hardware* window appears, click **Cancel** (click **Cancel** for all *Found New Hardware* windows that appear).
3. Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual disc* into your DVD drive.
4. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
5. Click **5.Install 3G Driver > Yes**.
6. Click **Next > Install > Finish > Next > Finish**.
7. The hardware driver installation is now complete so select “**No, I will restart my computer later**” and click **Finish** (do not restart the computer).
8. Another window will now pop up to install the **AirCard Watcher** application.
9. Click **Next**, click the button to accept the license agreement and click **Next**.
10. Click **Finish**.
11. The **Air Card Watcher** application will now run, or you can click the desktop shortcut  or run it from the **Sierra Wireless** item in the **Start** menu.

AirCard Watcher Application

The connection information is stored on the USIM card supplied by the service provider (where this is not the case you may need to create a profile - see *“Profiles” on page 7 - 77*).

1. Power on the 3G module using the **Fn +**  key combination.
2. Access the **AirCard Watcher** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Sierra Wireless > AirCard Watcher**) or the desktop shortcut .
3. If you need to set up a network operator (see page [7 - 76](#)).
4. Click the **Connect**  button (a **Profile** needs to be selected, and in most cases this will be pre-configured).



PIN Number

The PIN number for your USIM card will be supplied by your service provider. You usually have a limited number of attempts to enter the correct PIN number.

If you fail to enter the PIN number correctly you will be blocked from accessing the USIM card and you will need a **PUK** (Personal Unblocking Key), supplied by your service provider, to unlock it.

7

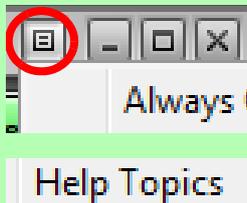
Figure 7 - 53
AirCard Watcher
(Not connected)

Modules & Options



AirCard Watcher Help Topics

To get help on **AirCard Watcher** configuration and settings, click the **Menu** icon and select **Help Topics**.



5. The system will connect to your network.
6. **The icon**  will turn green  (and the upload/download speeds will be indicated).
7. You can then access the internet, download e-mail etc. as per any internet connection.

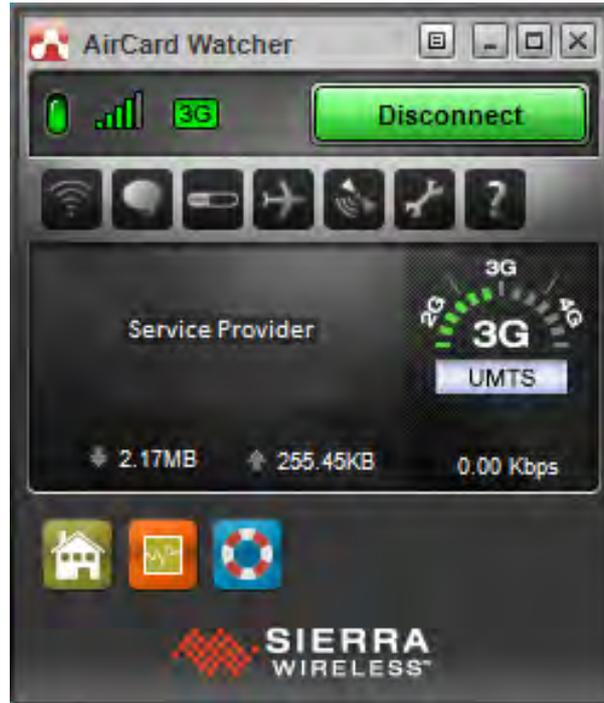
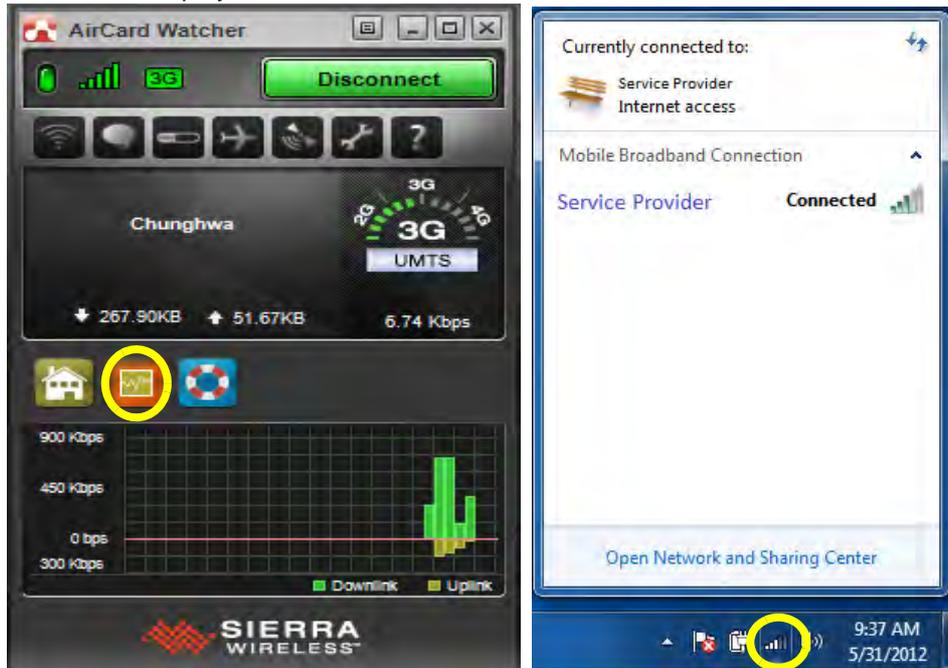


Figure 7 - 54
AirCard Watcher
(Connected)

8. When connected the uplink/downlink speeds will be indicated.
9. You can also click the **Speed Graph** icon  to get a visual display of the uplink/downlink speeds.
10. While connected you can also click the icon  in the notification area of the taskbar to display the **Windows 7 Mobile Broadband** connection status.



Roaming Notification

AirCard Watcher will provide notification when you connect to a network other than your service provider. This can be turned on/off from **User Options > General > Warning Messages**.

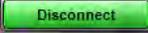
Figure 7 - 55
AirCard Watcher
with Speed Graph
(Connected)
&
Taskbar Menu

Modules & Options



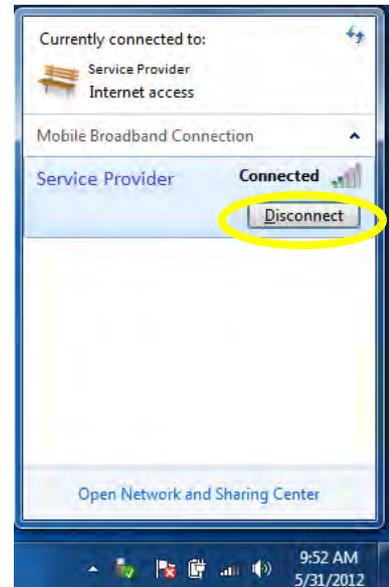
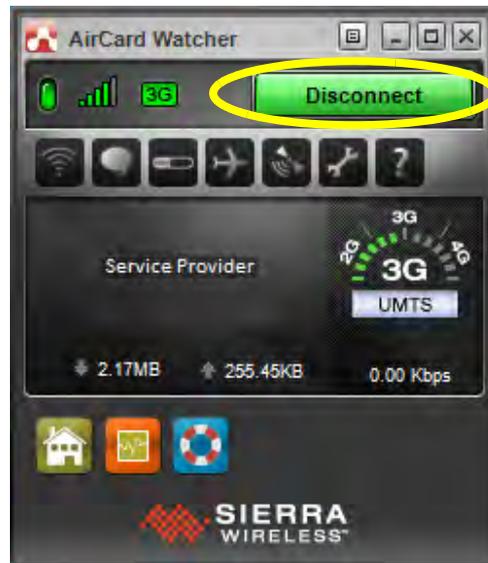
Online Help

Click the **Online Help**  icon to access the Sierra Wireless website for further help if required.

11. To disconnect from the service provider, click the **Disconnect**  button (note that if you click the close  icon at the top right of the screen the application will close however the connection will still be maintained).
12. You can also click the icon  in the notification area of the taskbar to display the connection status, click **Connected**, and then click the **Disconnect** button.
13. The program will disconnect from the service provider.
14. The module will still be on, and you will need to press the **Fn +**  key combination to turn it off.

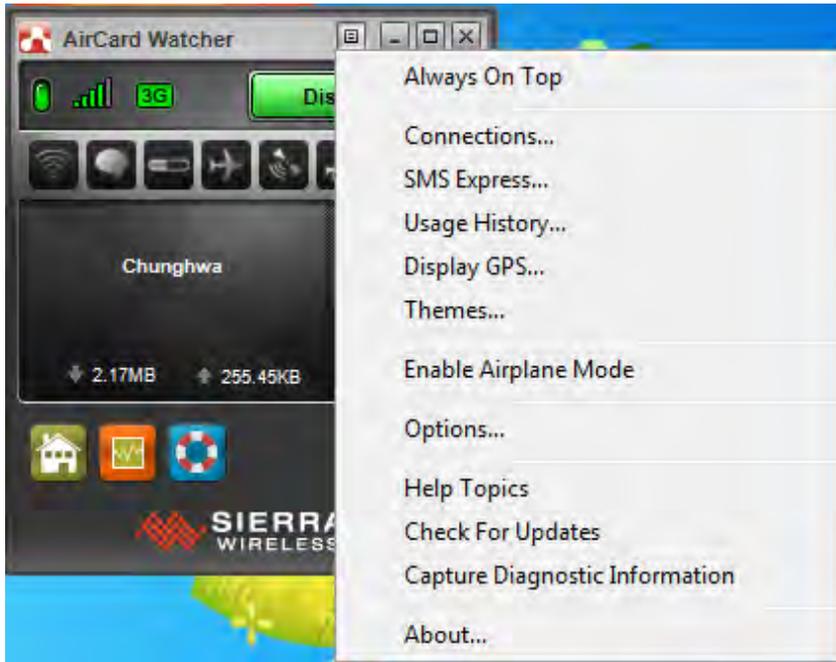
7

Figure 7 - 56
AirCard Watcher
Disconnect
&
Taskbar Menu
Disconnect



Air Card Watcher Menu

Right-click the **menu**  button at the top of the **AirCard Watcher** screen to bring up the **menu**, and click to select any item required.



Airplane Mode

Click on the **Airplane Mode** icon to turn the radio power off (e.g. if you are aboard an aircraft). You can turn the radio on again by clicking the **Turn Radio On** button.

Figure 7 - 57
AirCard Watcher
Menu



Network Operator

If the network operator is not listed then choose **Generic UTMS**.

Selecting a Network Operator/Service Provider

In most cases all your network operator/service provider details will be stored on your USIM card, and will not need to be edited/modified. If you do need to set up a network operator/service provider follow these instructions.

1. Access the **AirCard Watcher** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Sierra Wireless > AirCard Watcher**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Either click the **menu**  button and select **Options**, or click the **Options** button  from the main program window.
3. Click **Firmware**.
4. Click to select a **Network Operator** from the dropdown menu.
5. Click **OK**.

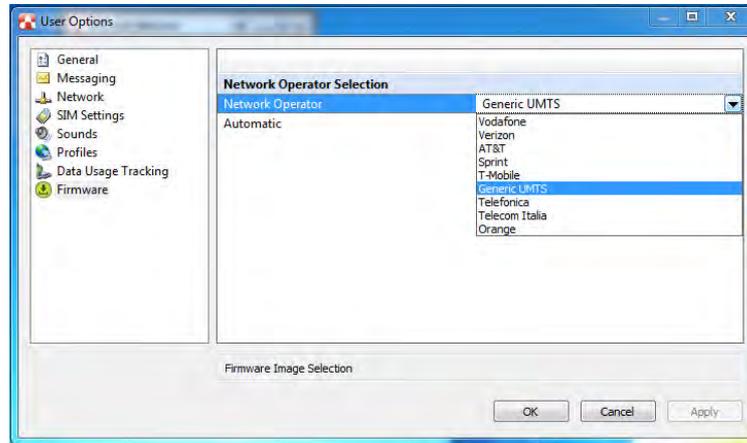


Figure 7 - 58

**Options - Firmware
(Network Operator)**

Profiles

A profile contains information used to establish a data connection, and this information is usually stored on the USIM card supplied by your service provider. However you can create, edit or delete profiles if required.

Creating a Profile

1. Access the **AirCard Watcher** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Sierra Wireless > AirCard Watcher**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Make sure you are not connected to a network.
3. Either click the **menu**  button and select **Connections**, or click the **Connections button**  from the main program window.
4. Click **Profiles** and click the **Add new profile** button and select **Custom**.

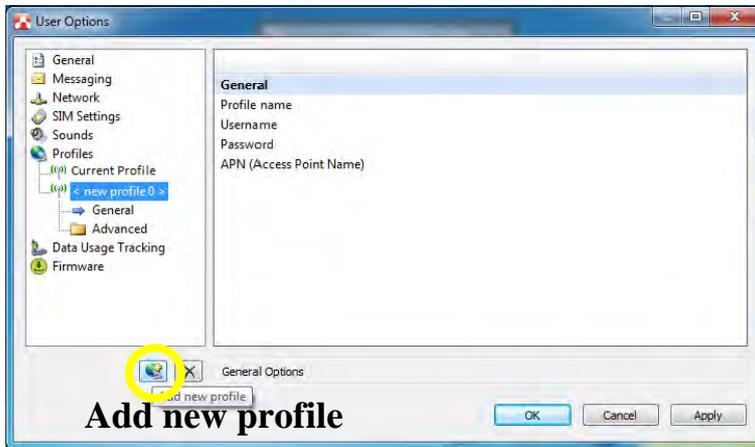


Figure 7 - 59
Options - Profile

Modules & Options



Edit or Delete Profiles

Select any existing profiles to edit or delete it, and then click **OK** to confirm any changes made.

You can also change the default profile from the dropdown menu and then click **OK** to confirm the changes.

5. You will need to complete the fields for **Profile name**, **Username**, **Password** and **Access Point Name** (you will need to get the username and password details from your service provider).
6. Once you have added the details above you can click the **Profiles** heading menu and click to select the profile from the **Selected Profile** dropdown menu and then click **OK** to set the profile as the default connection.
7. Select the profile and click **Advanced** to set the **Autolaunch**, **TCP/IP** and **DNS** settings (check with your service provider for any specific requirements in these fields).

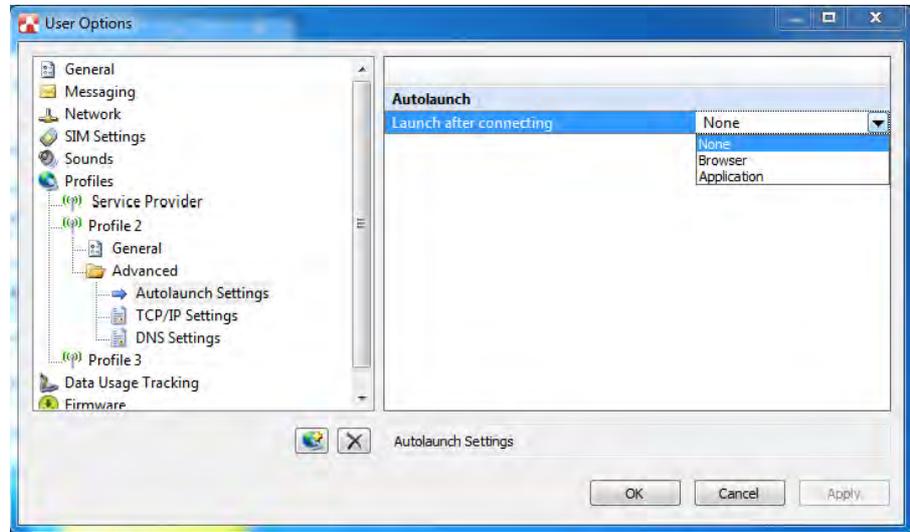


Figure 7 - 60
Profile - Advanced

User Options

You can configure **User Options** as follows.

1. Access the **AirCard Watcher** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Sierra Wireless > AirCard Watcher**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Either click the **menu**  button and select **Options**, or click the **Options** button  from the main program window.
3. Click on any of the menu headings on the left to access the options that may be configured (note that not all options will be available to be configured as they may depend on your USIM card settings).

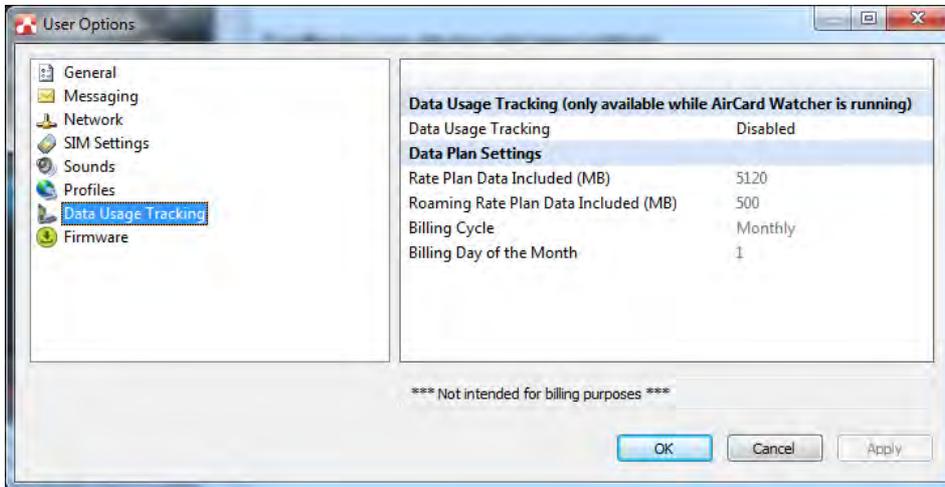


Figure 7 - 61
User Options

- **General** - This item allows you to set options for **Startup/Shutdown**, **Warning Messages**, **Display** and **Windows** support.
- **Messaging** - Set options here for SMS settings.
- **Network** - Configure the network settings from this menu though your frequency band information is usually stored on the USIM card.
- **SIM Settings** - You can set your SIM Security and PIN # options here.
- **Sounds** - This allows you to set sounds applicable to certain application actions e.g. when a new SMS arrives.
- **Profiles** - Create, edit, delete and set the default profile from the items here.
- **Data Usage Tracking** - You can enable/disable data tracking e.g. for billing purposes.
- **Firmware** - If you need to change network operator/service provider you can do so here.

Text Messaging Service (SMS)

In addition to standard internet services you may also send and receive SMS text messages using **AirCard Watcher**, if your service supports SMS.

SMS Express

1. Access the **AirCard Watcher** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Sierra Wireless > AirCard Watcher**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Either click the **menu**  button and select **SMS Express**, or click the **SMS Express** button  from the main program window.

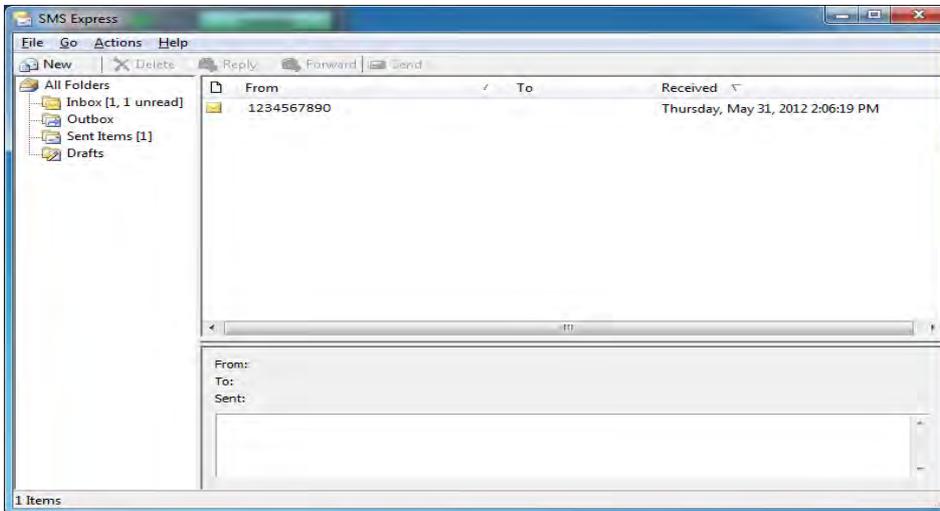


Figure 7 - 62
SMS Utility Open



Sent Messages

Sent messages will be automatically saved to the **Sent Items** folder.

Sending a Text Message

1. Access the **AirCard Watcher** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > All Programs > Sierra Wireless > AirCard Watcher**) or the desktop shortcut .
2. Either click the **menu**  button and select **SMS Express**, or click the **SMS Express** button  from the main program window.
3. Select **File > New Message** or click the **New** button in the toolbar.
4. Type the recipients phone number in the "To:" field (to send to multiple recipients separate the numbers using a semi-colon or space).
5. Type the message (160 characters max) in the bottom part of the Message window.
6. Click the **Send** button or **Save** the message to send/edit later.

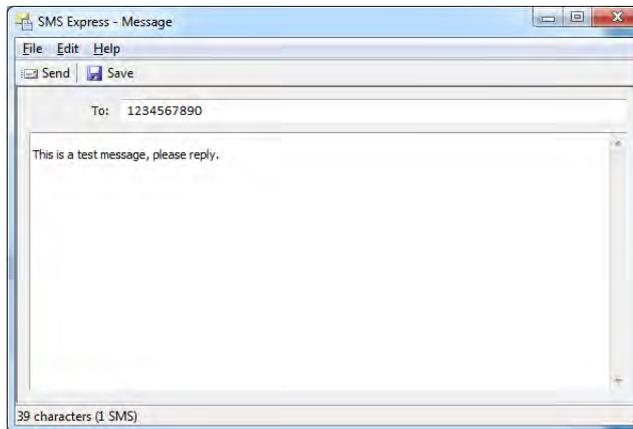


Figure 7 - 63
Profile - Advanced

Note that you do not have to connect to the network to Send/Receive SMS messages as long as the module is on.

Inbox

Any received text messages will be displayed in the **Inbox**. The number of total messages and unread messages will be displayed in the inbox folder title.

Messages

- **Opening a text message:** Click on any message in the **Inbox** to read it in the bottom panel of the window.
- **Replying to a text message:** Click on any message in the **Inbox** and select **Actions > Reply** or click the **Reply** button in the toolbar. Type the reply in the message field and click **Send** to send the message (or **Save** to save it in **Drafts**).
- **Forwarding a text message:** Click on any message in the appropriate folder and select **Actions > Forward** or click the **Forward** button in the toolbar. Enter the recipient's phone number in the "**To:**" field and make any additions/changes required in the message field and click **Send** to send the message (or **Save** to save it in **Drafts**).
- **Deleting a text message:** Click on any message in the appropriate folder and select **Actions > Delete** or click the **Delete** button in the toolbar. Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the **Fn** +  key combination to toggle power to the 3G module, and check the indicator to see if the module is powered on or not (see [Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11](#)/[Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11](#)).

Mobile Partner

With the **3G** module and USIM card (supplied by your service provider) installed you may then install the **Mobile Partner** application to directly access your HSPA internet service from the computer.

Mobile Partner Application Installation

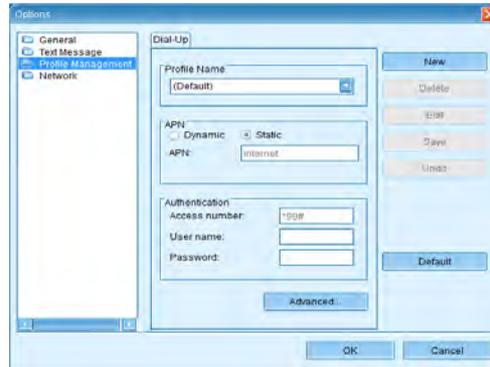
1. Enable power to the module by pressing the **Fn** +  key combination or Control Center button (give the module about 10 seconds to power on).
2. If a *Found New Hardware* window appears, click **Cancel** (click **Cancel** for all *Found New Hardware* windows that appear).
3. Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual disc* into your DVD drive.
4. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
5. Click **5.Install 3G Driver > Yes**.
6. Click **Next > Install > Finish > Next**.
7. Click **I Agree** (button) to accept the license agreement.
8. Click **Install > Finish**.
9. Choose the language you prefer and click **OK**, and then click **Next**.
10. Click **I Agree** (button) to accept the license agreement.
11. Click **Next > Install > Finish**.
12. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.
13. Access the **Mobile Partner** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > Programs/All Programs > Mobile Partner**), or by double-clicking the **Mobile Partner** icon on the desktop.

Mobile Partner Application

You will need to contact your service provider to obtain the exact details of how exactly to configure the settings on this page.

Profile Management

1. Power on the 3G module using the **Fn +**  key combination.
2. Access the **Mobile Partner** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > Programs/ All Programs > Mobile Partner**), or by double-clicking the **Mobile Partner** icon on the desktop .
3. If you have not created a profile, click **Tools** and select **Options**, and then click **Profile Management**.
4. Click **New**  and input the appropriate information for **Profile Name**, **APN** and **Authentication** etc. as supplied by your service provider.
5. Click **Save**  to save the profile.



Mobile Partner Help

To get help on **Mobile Partner** configuration and settings, click the **Help** menu and select **Online Help** or press **F1**.

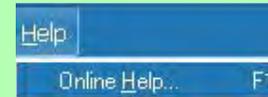
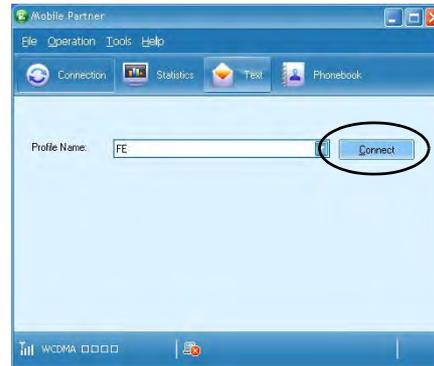


Figure 7 - 64
Profile Management

Connecting to the Service Provider

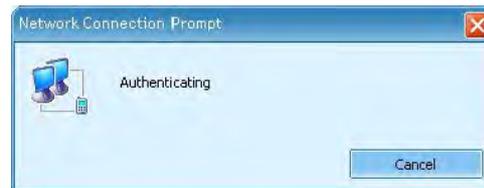
1. Power on the 3G module using the **Fn +**  key combination.
2. Access the **Mobile Partner** application from the **Start** menu (**Start > Programs/ All Programs > Mobile Partner**), or by double-clicking the **Mobile Partner** icon on the desktop .
3. The software will run and you can select the **Profile Name** from the menu.
4. Click **Connect**  to begin the connection process.

Figure 7 - 65
Connect



5. The **Mobile Partner** application will then display the connection information.

Figure 7 - 66
Network
Connection Prompt



6. While connected you can also click the icon  in the notification area of the taskbar to display the **Windows 7 Mobile Broadband** connection status.

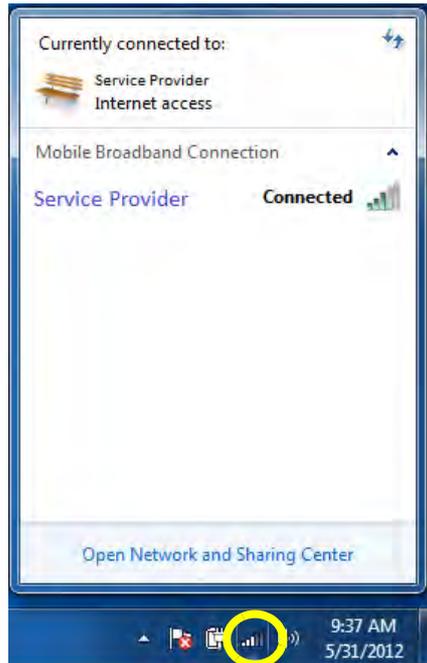


Figure 7 - 67
**Connected
Taskbar
Notification Area
Notification**

7. You can then access the internet, download e-mail etc. as per any internet connection.

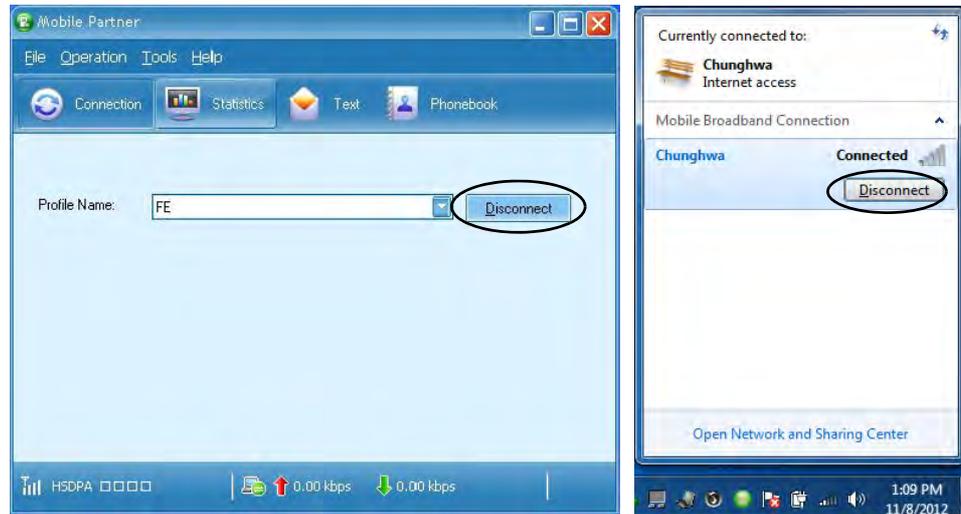
Modules & Options

- While you are connected the indicators in the Mobile Partner window will display uploading and downloading icons.



- To disconnect click the **Disconnect**  icon, or right click the notification area icon and select **Disconnect** (you can also select the connection in the **Mobile Broadband** connection status window, and click **Disconnect**).

Figure 7 - 68
Disconnect



- The program will disconnect from the service provider.
- The module will still be on, and you will need to press the **Fn +**  key combination to turn it off.

12. If you click the **Mobile Partner** close icon  a message will be displayed asking you to click **OK** to confirm the program exit and to **terminate the connection**.

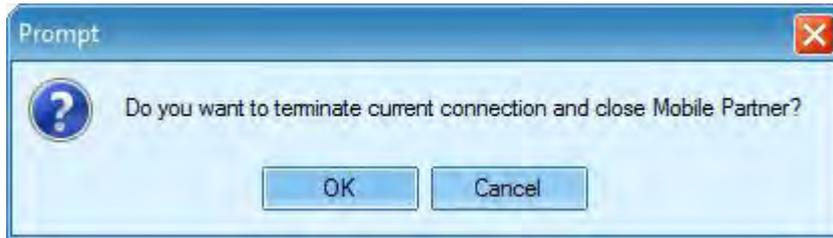


Figure 7 - 69
Exit Prompt

13. Exiting the program terminates the connection, but DOES NOT turn off the 3G module, and you will need to press the **Fn + ** key combination to turn off the module (pay careful attention to this aboard aircraft - see *“Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft” on page 7 - 84*).
14. If the module is on and the computer enters a power-saving state, then the power status of the module on resuming from the power-saving state will be as below:
- If the 3G module is on and the computer is **Shut Down or Restarted**; the module will be **off** when the computer starts up.
 - If the 3G module is on and the computer enters **Sleep or Hibernate**; the module will be **off** when the computer resumes from sleep.

Text Messaging Service

In addition to standard internet services you may also send and receive SMS text messages using the **Mobile Partner** program, if your service supports SMS.

Reading SMS Messages

1. An icon  will blink at the bottom of the **Mobile Partner** interface to notify you of any new messages received.
2. Click the **Text** icon  in the **Mobile Partner** Interface.
3. Select the **Local > Inbox** or **SIM/USIM Card** folder and select any message to read it.
4. Right-click the message and choose an option to reply, forward or delete the message.

Creating and Sending SMS Messages

1. Click the **Text** icon  in the **Mobile Partner** Interface.
2. Click the **New** button .
3. Enter the recipient's number in the **Send To...** field or click the **Send To...** button to select an entry from the phone book, and click **OK**.
4. Type in the message details.
5. Click the **Send** button, **Save** button to send the message later or **Close > Yes** to save in the **Draft** folder.

For more details on SMS click the **Help** menu and select **Online Help** or press **F1** and select **SMS**.

Trusted Platform Module

The **TPM security chip** allows you to create and manage digital certificates for user and platform authentication. This type of security is usually administered within large enterprises and organizations, and therefore requires implementation by a system administrator before users can access security features.

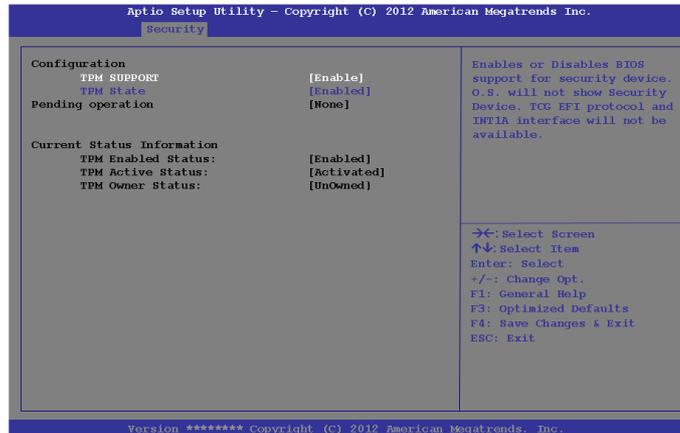
Individual users can use the TPM as an authentication with the fingerprint reader.

Make sure you have administrator's rights to your computer, and have a *Windows* password enabled for full security protection. In addition **Make sure you prepare a removable media (e.g. a USB flash drive) to store passwords etc. before beginning the TPM initialization process.**

Before setting up the TPM functions you must initialize the security platform.

Enabling & Activating TPM

1. Restart the computer.
2. Enter the **Aptio Setup Utility** pressing **F2** during the POST/startup.
3. Use the arrow keys to select the **Security** menu.
4. Select **Trusted Configuration** and press Enter to access the sub-menu.
5. Press Enter to access the **TPM Support** menu and select **Enable** to display the full **TPM configuration** menu.
6. Select **TPM State**, press Enter and select **Enable** to change the TPM state to enabled. You will then need to press **F4** to save the changes and restart the computer.



7
Figure 7 - 70
TPM State
(Enabled)

7. As the computer restarts press **F2** to enter the BIOS again and go to the **TPM Configuration** menu.

8. Select **Pending TPM operation**, press Enter and select the option you require (if you are initializing TPM you should select **Enable Take Ownership**). You will then need to press **F4** to save the changes and restart the computer.

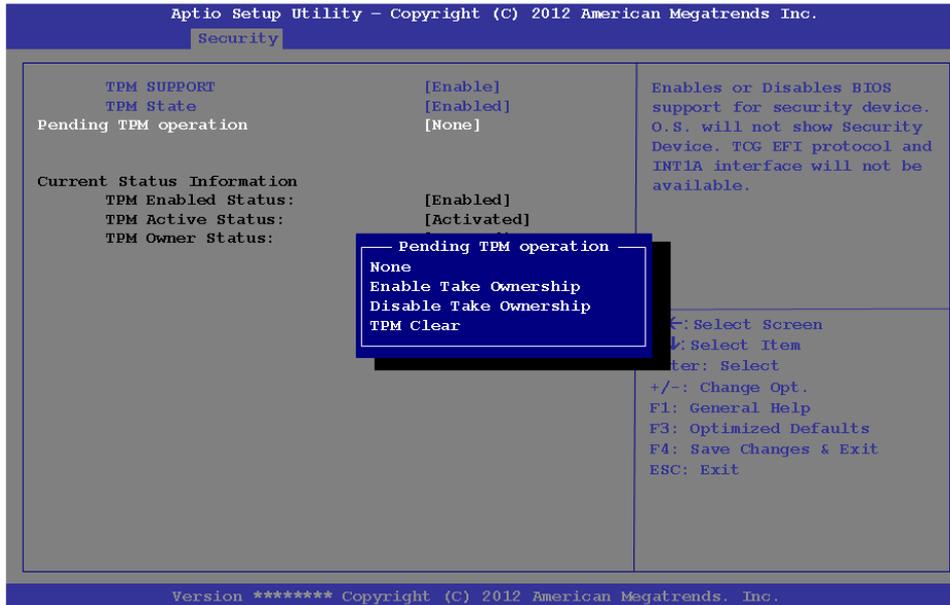


Figure 7 - 71
Pending TPM operation (Enable Take Ownership)

9. You can now **install the TPM driver** (see ***“Trusted Platform Module (TPM) Driver Installation” on page 7 - 94***) and then initialize the TPM.

Trusted Platform Module (TPM) Driver Installation

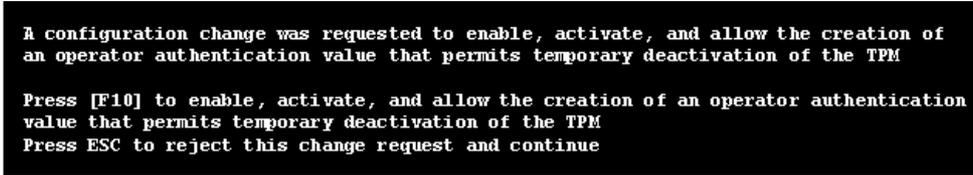
1. Make sure you have enabled and activated the TPM in the BIOS before installing the driver (if you do not do see the note below).
2. Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc into the DVD drive.
3. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
4. Click **6.Install TPM Driver > Yes**.
5. Click **Install > Next**.
6. Click the button to accept the license and click **Next**.
7. Click **Next > Next > Install**.
8. Click **Finish > Yes** to restart the computer.

If you have installed the driver without enabling and activating the TPM first, a confirmation message will appear on restart.

Figure 7 - 72

TPM Confirmation Message

(if the driver is installed without TPM being enabled and activated in the BIOS)



```
A configuration change was requested to enable, activate, and allow the creation of an operator authentication value that permits temporary deactivation of the TPM

Press [F10] to enable, activate, and allow the creation of an operator authentication value that permits temporary deactivation of the TPM
Press ESC to reject this change request and continue
```

Press **F10** to enable and activate the TPM and you can then configure as overleaf. However it is recommended that you enter the BIOS and take ownership (see page [7 - 92](#)) of the TPM before configuration in *Windows*. Alternatively press **Esc** to continue without making changes the TPM.

Initializing TPM

1. Run the application from the **Infineon Security Platform Solution > Manage Security Platform** item in the **Start > Programs** menu.
2. Click **User Settings** (tab) and click **Yes**, or right-click the icon  in the notification area of the taskbar, and select **Security Platform Initialization** (or click the **Security Platform State** taskbar bubble).
3. The **Quick Initialization** method will automatically be selected for you (if you need to use advanced settings provided by your network administrator then select **Advanced Initialization**).
4. You will need to use a removable media (e.g. a USB Flash Drive) to store passwords and data (keep the media in a safe place until required).
5. Select the drive you want to use from the drop-down menu and click **Next**.



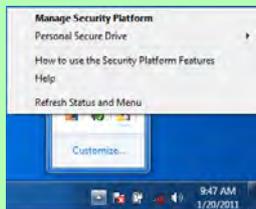
Figure 7 - 73
**Security Platform
 Quick Initialization
 Wizard**

Modules & Options



Help

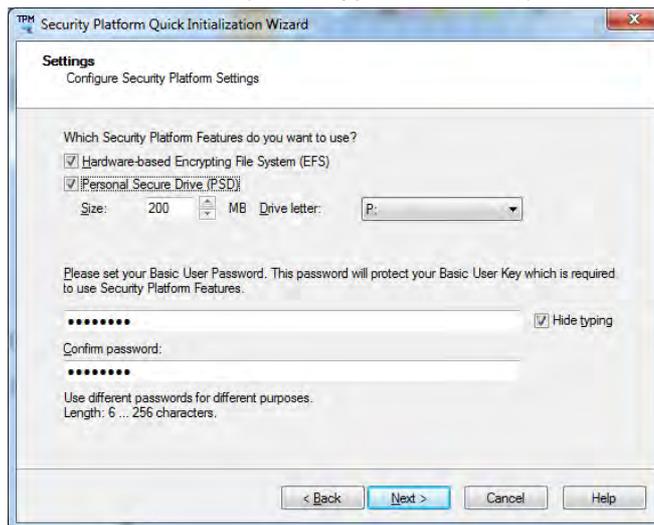
Right-click the icon  in the notification area of the taskbar to bring up the menu to select **Help** or **How to use the Security Platform Features**.



You can also click the **Help** button in any of the Infineon Security Platform Settings Tool tabs to bring up specific help topics on each tab.

Figure 7 - 74
Settings

6. Choose the **Security Platform Features** you want to use by clicking the appropriate tickbox.
7. Enter a **Basic User Password** (and re-type to confirm it) and click **Next**.



8. Click **Next** to confirm the settings.
9. The computer will then initialize the settings.
10. Click **Finish**.
11. Click the tabs and control panels to adjust the settings.
12. Double-click the icon  in the taskbar notification area to access the **Infineon Security Platform Settings Tool**, or right-click the icon  and select a menu item.

Infineon Security Platform Settings Tool

The Infineon Security Platform Settings Tool allows you to manage and check the TPM state, manage your password information, and to backup and restore the TPM data. As TPM is usually administered within large enterprises and organizations, your system administrator will need to assist you in managing the information here.



Menus

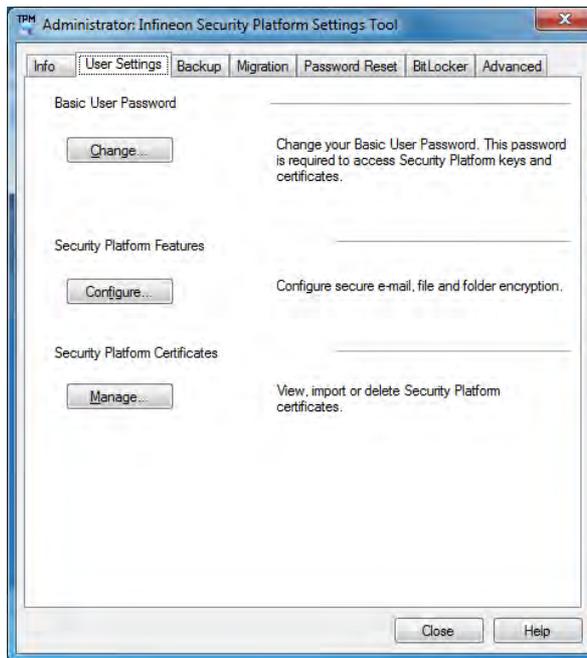
Note that not all the menus pictured here will be available for access. The menu items that appear will be dependent on your configuration settings etc. (see the **Help** file for full details).

Figure 7 - 75
Infineon Security Platform Settings Tool

User Settings

This page allows the settings to be configured for the currently logged in Infineon Security Platform user including the ability to change the password, configure secure e-mail, file and folder encryption and Enhanced Authentication. You can also import or delete certificates protected by the security platform.

Figure 7 - 76
**Infineon Security
Platform Settings
Tool (User Settings)**



Backup

Here you can configure backup and restore operations. Backup files contain the computer identification and user identification information which is used to match the machine name and user name with the current machine and user during restoration.

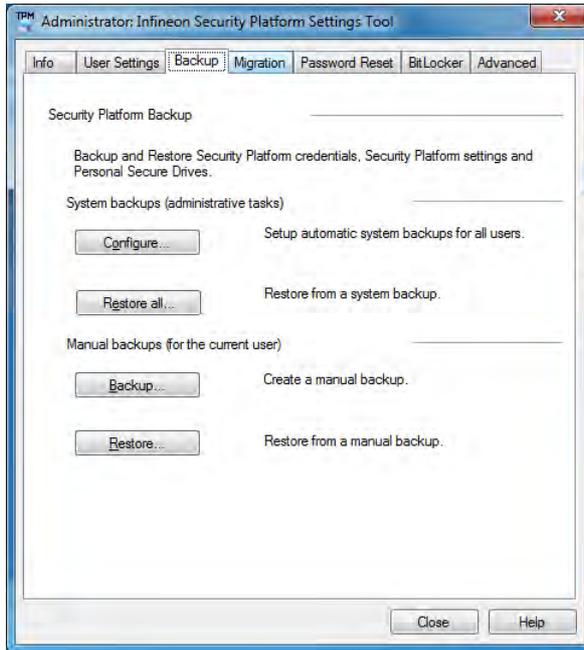
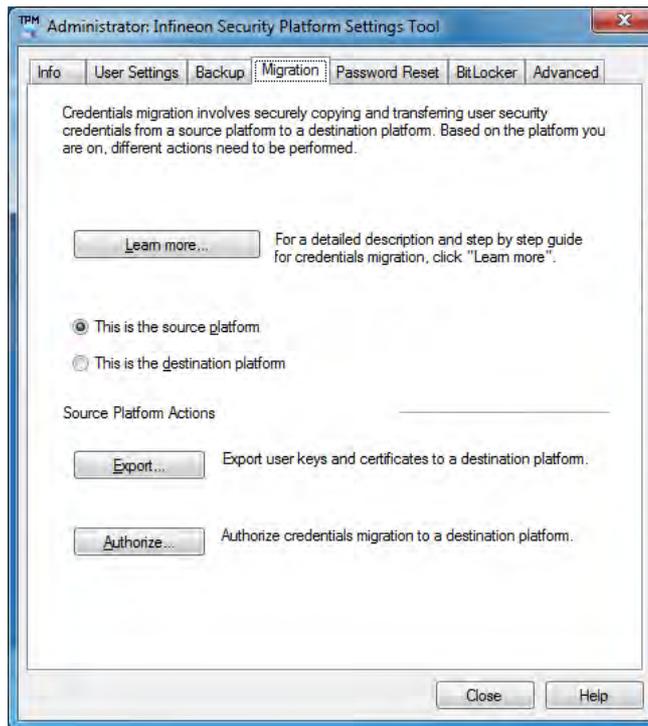


Figure 7 - 77
Infineon Security Platform Settings Tool (Backup)

Migration

The Migration tab is used to help securely transfer keys and certificates from one platform to another.

Figure 7 - 78
Infinion Security Platform Settings Tool (Migration)



Password Reset

Use Password Reset to reset basic user passwords when required.

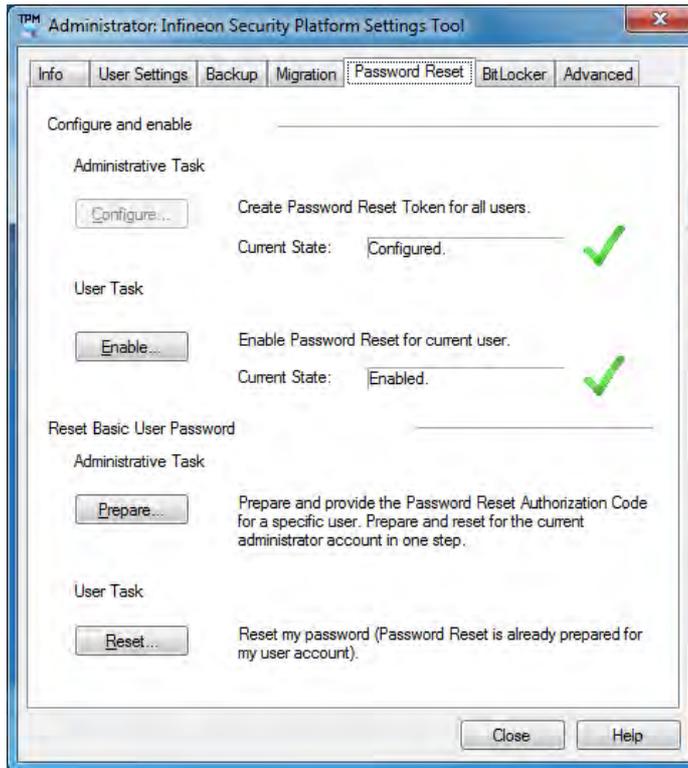
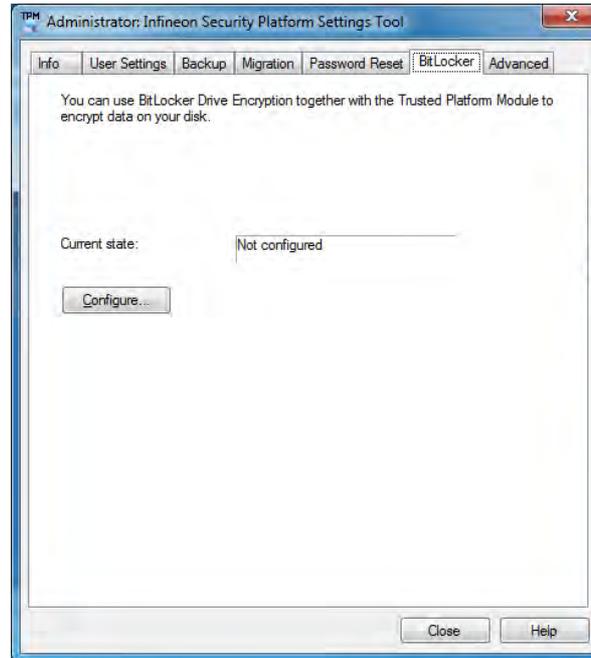


Figure 7 - 79
Infineon Security Platform Settings Tool (Password Reset)

BitLocker

BitLocker Drive Encryption can be used in conjunction with the TPM to encrypt data on the disk and is done via the **Microsoft BitLocker Control Panel Applet**. Click **Configure** and select a drive to be encrypted and then follow the Wizard to begin the encryption process.

Figure 7 - 80
**Infineon Security
Platform Settings
Tool
(BitLocker)**



Access the Microsoft **BitLocker Drive Encryption** control panel applet from the *Windows* control panel (**System and Security**).

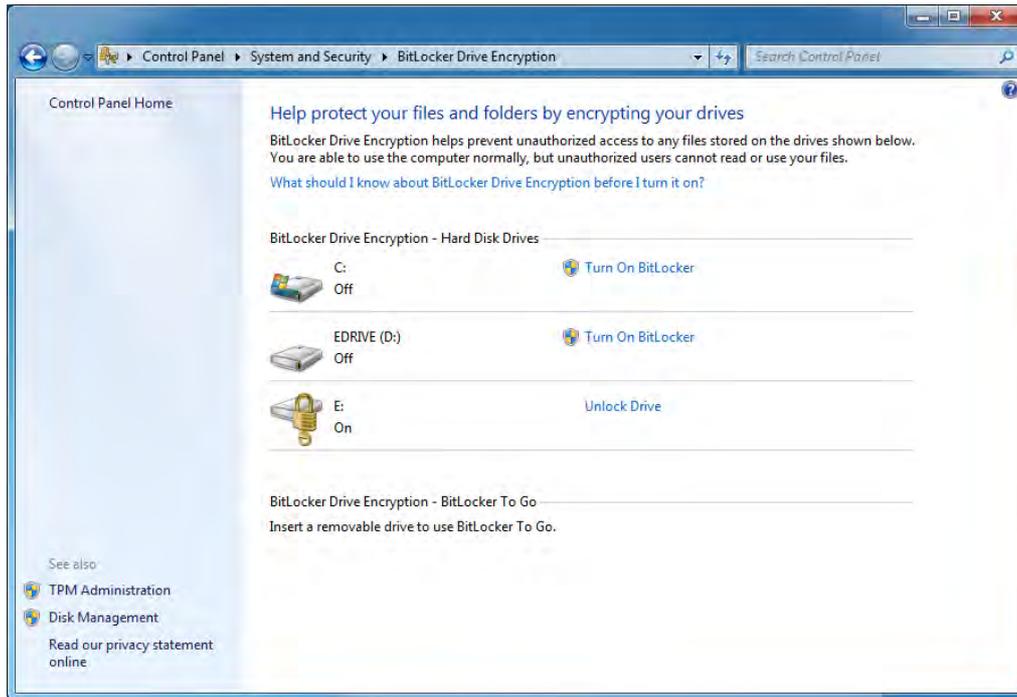
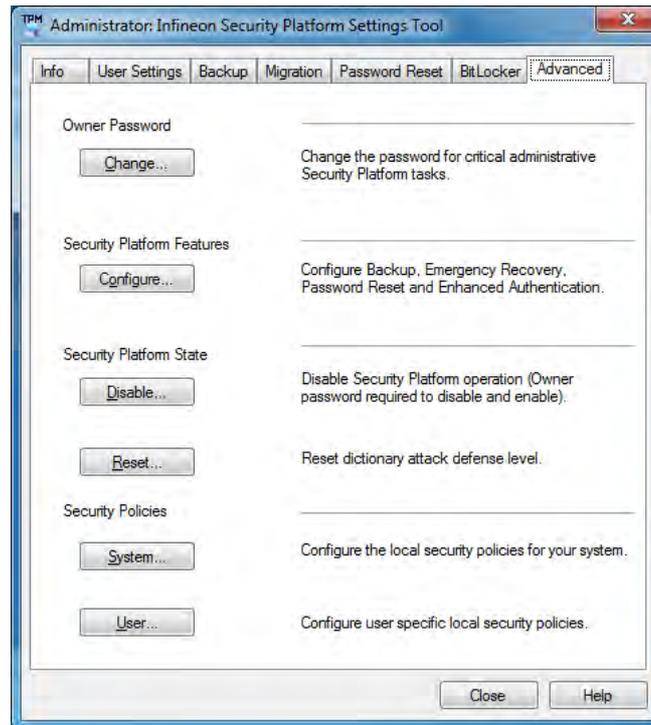


Figure 7 - 81
BitLocker Drive Encryption

Advanced

Configure all the Security Platform owner and policy settings from the Advanced tab. The settings that can be changed are for the local computer only.

Figure 7 - 82
**Infineon Security
Platform Settings
Tool
(Advanced)**



Intel Rapid Storage Technology

Install the Intel Rapid Storage Technology to support your SATA drive if set up in AHCI mode in the BIOS (see “*SATA Mode Selection (Advanced Menu)*” on *page 5 - 9*).

IRST Driver Installation

1. Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc into the DVD drive.
2. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
3. Click **7.Install IRST Driver > Yes**.
4. Click **Next > Yes > Next > Next**.
5. Click **Finish** to restart the computer (you will need to restart the system again after the computer has rebooted).



Intel® Smart Connect Technology System Requirements

Note that in order to support Intel® Smart Connect Technology your system will need to have the item enabled in the BIOS (see page 5 - 8).

In addition only the following WLAN modules support this feature:

Intel® Centrino® Wireless-N 2230

Intel® Centrino® Wireless-N 135

Intel® Smart Connect Technology

Intel® Smart Connect Technology periodically, and briefly, wakes the computer from **Sleep** mode in order to update information for certain applications (e.g. to get mail from Microsoft Outlook) as required. These updates can therefore be made without having to turn the computer on, and applications will be up to date when the computer resumes from **Sleep** mode (make sure that *Intel Smart Connect Technology* is enabled in the BIOS - see “*Intel Smart Connect Technology (Advanced Menu)*” on page 5 - 8).

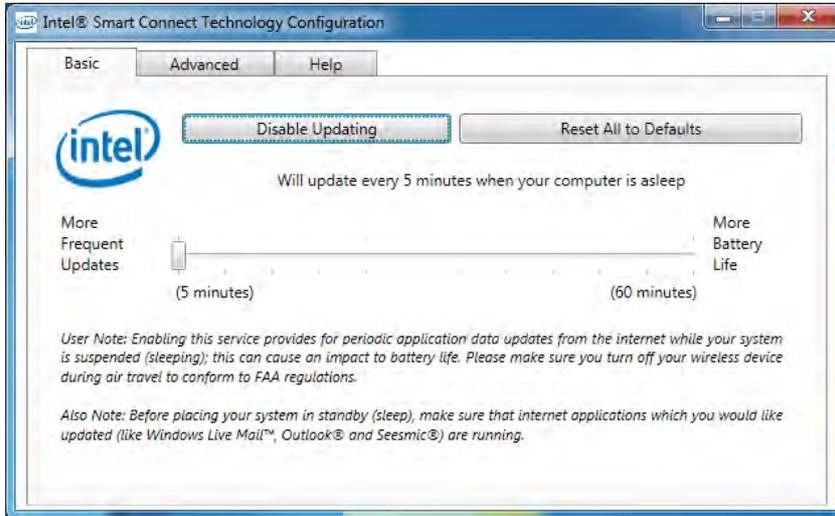
Note that the applications need to be on and running when the computer enters Sleep mode in order to get updates.

Intel® Smart Connect Technology Driver Installation

1. Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User’s Manual* disc into the DVD drive.
2. Click **Option Drivers** (button).
3. Click **8.Install ISCT Driver > Yes**.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Click the button to accept the license agreement and click **Next**.
6. Click **Next > Install > Finish**.
7. Click **Yes** to restart the computer.

Intel® Smart Connect Technology Configuration

1. Access the **Intel(R) Smart Connect Technology** application from the **Start** menu.
2. Click **Basic** (tab) and adjust the slider to set the update frequency (note that the slider balances between **“More Frequent Updates”** and **“More Battery Life”**).
3. Note the sidebar warning about the use of **Intel(R) Smart Connect Technology** aboard aircraft and make sure your wireless LAN module is off during air travel.
4. In order to update any applications, they will need to be on and running when the computer enters **Sleep** mode.



Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited. Make sure the module(s) are OFF if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Use the **Fn + F11** key combination to toggle power to the WLAN module, and check the LED indicator to see if the module is powered on or not (see [Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15/ Table 1 - 3, on page 1 - 11](#)).

7

Figure 7 - 83
iSCT Basic

Modules & Options

5. Click **Advanced** (tab) to access the **Extended Power Savings** settings.
6. **Extended Power Savings** allows you to set a time period during which the computer will update less often (e.g. at night while you are asleep or whenever you are at work).

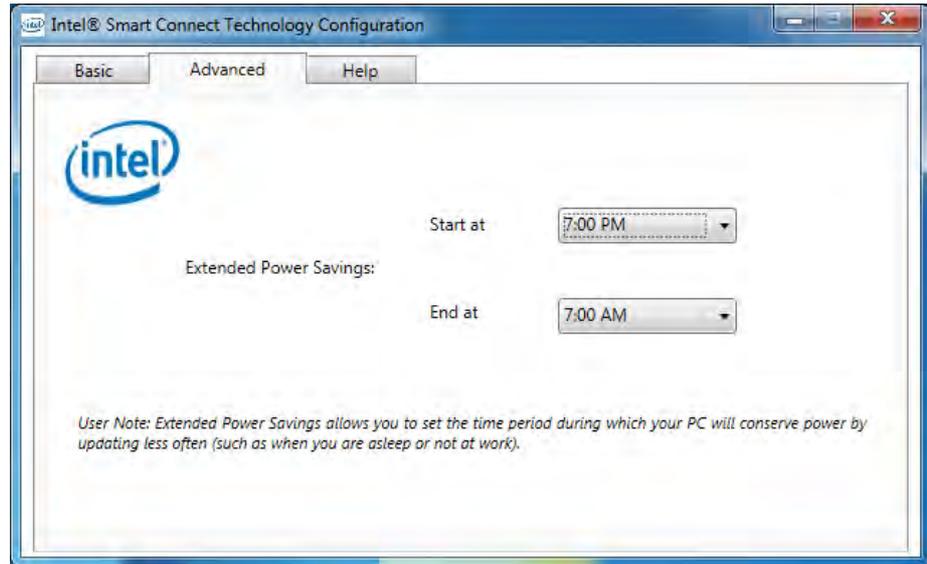
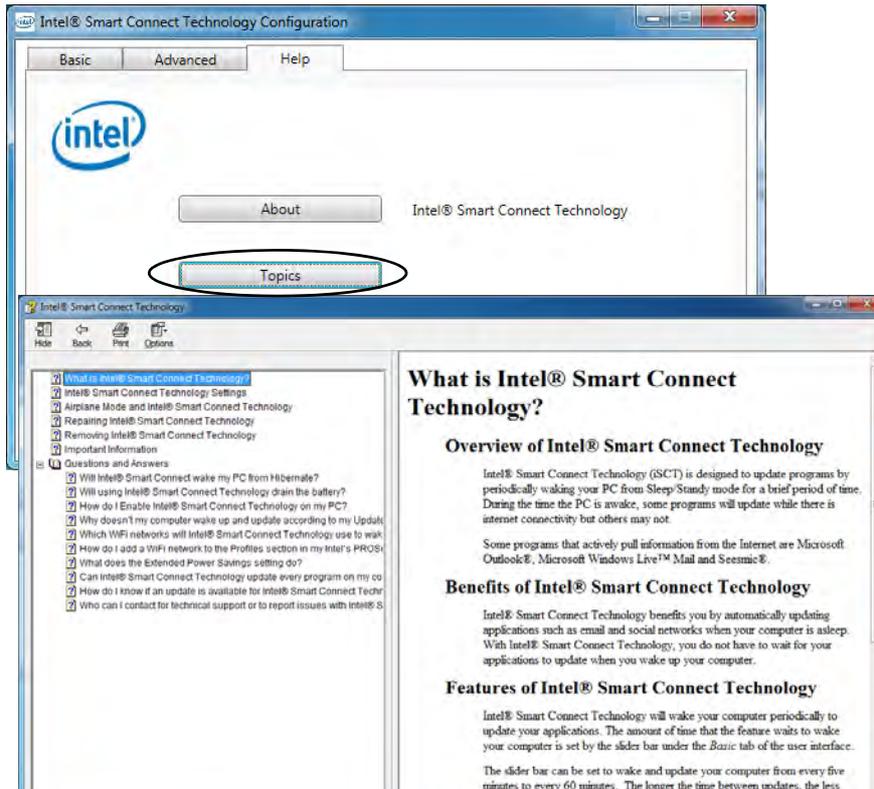


Figure 7 - 84
iSCT Advanced

7. Updates set during this time period will be performed every two hours, and this will override the settings selected in the **Basic** tab in order to conserve power consumption.

8. Click the **Help** tab and click **Topics** to access the main **Help** menu.



Intel WLAN Modules

If your purchase option includes an **Intel WLAN module**, (with *Intel's PROSet Wireless Connection Utility* installed), **Intel® Smart Connect Technology** will search for WiFi networks around you that you have previously accessed.

If no known WiFi networks are found, your computer will not update again until it recognizes a known WiFi network.

Figure 7 - 85
iSCT Help

Chapter 8: Troubleshooting

Overview

Should you have any problems with your computer, before consulting your service representative, you may want to try to solve the problem yourself. This chapter lists some common problems and their possible solutions. This can't anticipate every problem, but you should check here before you panic. If you don't find the answer in these pages, make sure you have followed the instructions carefully and observed the safety precautions in the preface. If all else fails, talk to your service representative. You should also make a record of what happened and what remedies you tried.

Of course, if something goes wrong, it will happen at the most inconvenient time possible, so you should preview this section just in case. If, after you've tried everything, and the system still won't cooperate, try turning it off for a few minutes and then rebooting. You will lose any unsaved data, but it may start working again. Then call your service representative.

Basic Hints and Tips

Many of the following may seem obvious but they are often the solution to a problem when your computer appears not to be working.

- **Power** - Is the computer actually plugged into a working electrical outlet? If plugged into a **power strip**, make sure it is actually working. Check the **LED Power & Communication Indicators** (see “*LED Indicators*” on page 1 - 11) to see the computer’s power status.
- **Connections** - Check all the **cables** to make sure that there are no **loose connections** anywhere.
- **Power Savings** - Make sure that the system is not in **Hibernate** or **Sleep** mode by pressing the keys configured in your *Power Options* (see “*Power-Saving States*” on page 3 - 6), the **Fn + F4** key combination, or power button to wake-up the system.
- **Brightness** - Check the brightness of the screen by pressing the **Fn + F8 and F9** keys to adjust the brightness.
- **Display Choice** - Press **Fn + F7** to make sure the system is not set to “external only” display.
- **Boot Drive** - Make sure there are no **optical media and/or USB storage devices** in any connected drive (this is a common cause of the message “*Invalid system disk - Replace the disk, and then press any key*” / “*Remove disks or other media. Press any key to restart*”).

Backup and General Maintenance

- Always **backup** your important data, and keep copies of your OS and programs safe, but close to hand. Don't forget to note the **serial numbers** if you are storing them out of their original cases, e.g. in a CD wallet.
- Run **maintenance programs** on your hard disk and OS as often as you can. You may schedule these programs to run at times when you are not using your computer. You can use those that are provided free with your OS, or buy the more powerful dedicated programs to do so.
- Write down your passwords and keep them safe (away from your computer). This is especially important if you choose to use a **Supervisor** password for the BIOS (see *“The Setup Utility” on page 5 - 2*).
- Keep copies of vital **settings files** such as network, dialup settings, mail settings etc.(even if just brief notes).



Warranty

The CPU is not a user serviceable part. Opening this compartment, or accessing the CPU in any way, may violate your warranty.

Viruses

- Install an **Anti-Virus** program and keep the **definitions file** (the file which tells your program which viruses to look for) up to date. New computer viruses are discovered daily, and some of them may seriously harm your computer and cause you to lose data. **Anti-Virus** programs are commercially available and the **definitions file updates** are usually downloadable directly from the internet.
- Be careful when opening e-mail from sources you don't know. **Viruses** are often triggered from within **e-mail attachments** so take care when opening any attached file. You can configure most **Anti-Virus** programs to check all **e-mail attachments**. **Note:** You should also beware of files from people you know as the virus may have infected an **address book** and been automatically forwarded without the person's knowledge.
- Keep a "**Bootable CD-ROM/DVD-ROM/USB storage device**" (this CD/DVD/USB device provides basic information which allows you to startup your computer) handy. You may refer to your OS's documentation for instructions on how to make one, and many **Anti-Virus** programs will also provide such a disk (or at least instructions on how to make one).

Upgrading and Adding New Hardware/Software

- Do not be tempted to make changes to your **Windows Registry** unless you are very sure of what you are doing, otherwise you will risk severely damaging your system.
- Don't open your computer or undertake any repair or upgrade work if you are not comfortable with what you are doing.
- Read the **documentation**. We can assume, since you are reading this that you are looking at the computer's manual, but what about any new peripheral devices you have just purchased? Many problems are caused by the installation of new hardware and/or software. Always refer to the documentation of any new hardware and/or software, and pay particular attention to files entitled "**READ ME**" or "**READ ME FIRST**".
- When installing a new device always make sure the device is powered on, and in many cases you will need to restart the computer. Always check that all the cables are correctly connected.
- Make sure you have installed the **drivers** for any new hardware you have installed (latest **driver files** are usually available to download from vendor's websites).

Troubleshooting

- Thoroughly check any **recent changes** you made to your system as these changes may affect one or more system components, or software programs. If possible, go back and undo the change you just made and see if the problem still occurs.
- Don't over complicate things. The less you have to deal with then the easier the source of the problem may be found; **Example** - if your computer has many devices plugged into its ports, and a number of programs running, then it will be difficult to determine the cause of a problem. Try disconnecting all of the devices and restarting the computer with all the peripheral devices unplugged. A process of elimination (adding and removing devices and restarting where necessary) will often find the source of a problem, although this may be time consuming.

Problems and Possible Solutions

Problem	Possible Cause - Solution
<p>You turned on the power but it doesn't work.</p>	<p><i>Battery missing / incorrectly installed.</i> Check the battery bay, make sure the battery is present and seated properly (the design of the battery only allows it to go in one way). Make sure there's nothing interfering with the battery contacts.</p>
<p>The battery LED power indicator , is blinking orange.</p>	<p><i>Low Battery.</i> Plug in the DC power source. If the computer doesn't start up immediately, turn it off then on again.</p>
<p>You are losing battery power too quickly.</p>	<p><i>The system is using too much power.</i> If your OS has a <i>Power Options</i> scheme (see "Power Plans" on page 3 - 4) check its settings. You may also be using a USB device/external device that is drawing a lot of power.</p>
<p>Actual battery operating time is shorter than expected.</p>	<p><i>The battery has not been fully discharged before being recharged.</i> Make sure the battery is fully discharged and recharge it completely before reusing (see "Battery Information" on page 3 - 11).</p> <p><i>Power Options have been disabled.</i> Go to the Control Panel in <i>Windows</i> and re-enable the options.</p> <p><i>A peripheral device/USB device is consuming a lot of power.</i> Turn off/remove the unused device to save power.</p>

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause - Solution
<p>The computer feels too hot.</p>	<p>Make sure the computer is properly ventilated and the Vent/Fan intakes are not blocked. If this doesn't cool it down, put the system into Hibernate mode or turn it off for an hour. Make sure the computer isn't sitting on a thermal surface (see "Overheating" on page 1 - 24). Make sure you're using the correct adapter.</p> <p>Make sure that your notebook is completely powered off before putting it into a travel bag (or any such container). Putting a notebook which is powered on in a travel bag may cause the Vent/Fan intakes to be blocked.</p>
<p>Nothing appears on screen.</p>	<p><i>The system is in a power saving mode.</i> Toggle the sleep/resume key combination, Fn + F4 (see "Configuring the Power Buttons" on page 3 - 8).</p> <p><i>The screen controls need to be adjusted.</i> Toggle the screen control key combinations Fn + F8/F9. If you're connected to an external monitor, make sure it's plugged in and turned on. You should also check the monitor's own brightness and contrast controls.</p> <p><i>The computer is set for a different display.</i> Toggle the screen display key combination, Fn + F7. If an external monitor is connected, turn it on.</p> <p><i>The screen saver is activated.</i> Press any key or touch the Touchpad.</p>
<p>No image appears on the external monitor I have plugged in and powered on.</p>	<p><i>You haven't installed the video driver and configured it appropriately from the Control Panel.</i> See Appendix C for instructions on installing and configuring the video driver.</p>

Problem	Possible Cause - Solution
You forget the boot password .	<i>If you forget the password, you may have to discharge the battery of the CMOS. Contact your service representative for help.</i>
 <p>Password Warning</p> <p>If you choose to set a boot password, NEVER forget your password. The consequences of this could be serious. If you cannot remember your boot password you must contact your vendor and you may lose all of the information on your hard disk.</p>	
The sound cannot be heard or the volume is very low .	<i>The volume might be set too low. Check the volume control in the Volume Control Panel in the Windows taskbar, or use the key combination Fn + F5 and F6 (see “Function/Hot Key Indicators” on page 1 - 15) to adjust.</i>
The CD/DVD cannot be read .	<i>The CD/DVD is dirty. Clean it with a CD/DVD cleaner kit.</i>
The CD/DVD tray will not open when there is a disc in the tray.	<i>The CD/DVD is not correctly placed in the tray. Gently try to remove the disc using the eject hole (see “Loading Discs” on page 2 - 3).</i>
The DVD regional codes can no longer be changed.	<i>The code has been changed the maximum 5 times. See “DVD Regional Codes” on page 2 - 5.</i>
Unwelcome numbers appear when typing.	<i>If the LED  is lit, then Num Lock is turned ON. (see “LED Indicators” on page 1 - 11).</i>

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause - Solution
 <h3>Other Keyboards</h3> <p>If your keyboard is damaged or you just want to make a change, you can use any standard USB keyboard. The system will detect and enable it automatically. However special functions/hot keys unique to the system's regular keyboard may not work.</p>	
The system freezes or the screen goes dark.	<i>The system's power saving features have timed-out.</i> Use the AC/DC adapter, press the sleep (Fn + F4) key combination, or press the power button if no LEDs are lit.
The system never goes into a power saving mode .	Power Options features are not enabled. Go to the Windows Power Options menu and enable the features you prefer (see "Power-Saving States" on page 3 - 6). Make sure you have enabled Hibernate mode from the control panel.
The Wireless LAN or Bluetooth modules cannot be detected.	<i>The modules are off.</i> Check the LED indicator and/or function key indicator to see if the WLAN/Bluetooth module is on or off (see "LED Indicators" on page 1 - 11). If the LED indicator is off, then press the Fn + F11 (WLAN) or Fn + F12 (Bluetooth) key combination(s) in order to enable the modules (see Table 1 - 5, on page 1 - 15).

Problem	Possible Cause - Solution
The PC Camera module cannot be detected.	<i>The module is off.</i> Press the Fn + F10 key combination in order to enable the module (see “Function/Hot Key Indicators” on page 1 - 15). Run the camera application to view the camera picture.
The PC Camera module does not display the LED light when the camera is in use.	<i>You are using a 300K or 1.3M camera in the Windows 8 OS.</i> The Windows 8 OS does not support 300K or 1.3M cameras, and therefore the LED light will not display.
The Wireless LAN/Bluetooth/ PC Camera modules cannot be configured.	The driver(s) for the module(s) have not been installed. Make sure you have installed the driver for the appropriate module (see the instructions for the appropriate module in “Modules & Options” on page 7 - 1).
A file cannot be copied to/from a connected Bluetooth device.	<i>The transfer of data between the computer and a Bluetooth enabled device is supported in one direction only (simultaneous data transfer is not supported).</i> If you are copying a file from your computer to a Bluetooth enabled device, you will not be able to copy a file from the device to your computer until the file transfer process from the computer has been completed.
The Bluetooth module is off after resuming from Sleep.	<i>The Bluetooth module’s default state will be off after resuming from the Sleep power-saving state.</i> Use the key combination (Fn + F12) to power on the Bluetooth module after the computer resumes from Sleep.
I am sliding my finger up and down on the right side of the Touchpad to scroll a Window and the Touchpad does not respond .	<i>There are different Touchpad versions available on this computer, and this version requires tapping/holding to scroll.</i> Either tap repeatedly, or hold the finger down, at the top or bottom right of the Touchpad (depending on the scrolling direction required) to scroll the window.

Bluetooth Connection Problems

If you are experiencing problems connecting to some Bluetooth devices (in particular certain mobile phones and headsets) it may be necessary to download and install the **Windows Mobile Device Center** software (for *Windows Vista* and *Windows 7*). Go to the Microsoft website and search for the **Microsoft Windows Device Center Driver for Windows Vista (64-bit or 32-bit) and Windows 7 (64-bit or 32-bit)**, and then download the driver.

1. Install the **Microsoft Windows Device Center Driver** as appropriate for your operating system.
2. **Windows Vista** will automatically configure the driver for you, however **Windows 7** requires further configuration.
3. Make sure the Bluetooth device is powered on.
4. Go to the **Windows 7** control panel and double-click **Device Manager (Hardware and Sound > Devices and Printers)**.
5. **Bluetooth Peripheral Device(s)** will be listed under **Other Devices** (note this will only be listed if you have connected, or tried to connect to, a Bluetooth device previously).

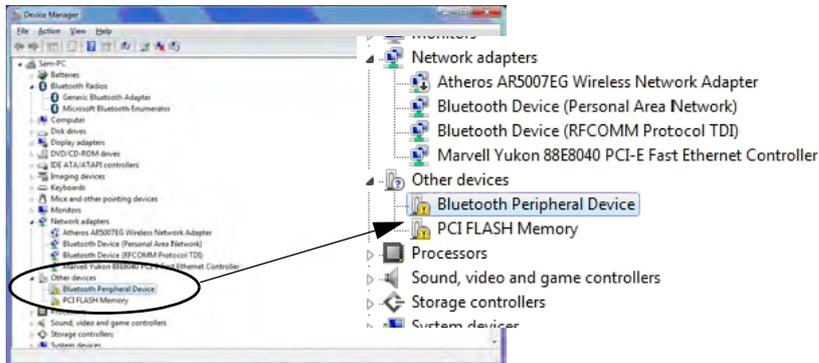


Figure 8 - 1 - Device Manager

Bluetooth Peripheral Devices

You will need to repeat the procedure listed here for all **Bluetooth Peripheral Devices** listed under **Other Devices** i.e. until there are no more **Bluetooth Peripheral Devices** listed under this menu heading.

6. Right-click **Bluetooth Peripheral Device** and click on **Update Driver Software**.
7. Click **Browse my computer for driver software**.
8. Click **Let Me pick from a list of device drivers on my computer**.

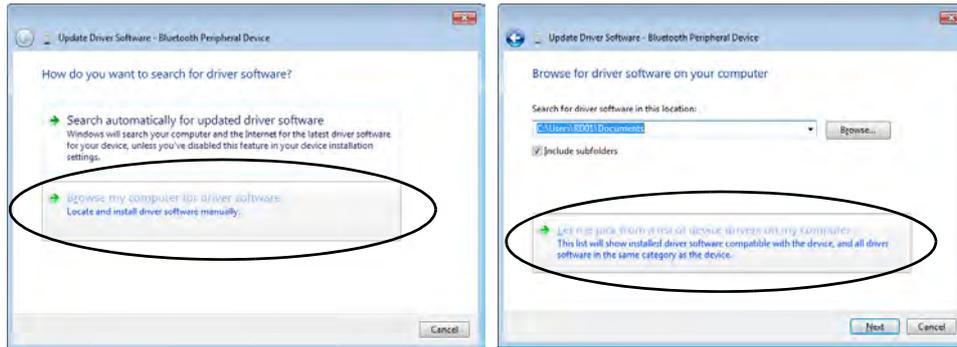


Figure 8 - 2 - Browse my computer.../Let me pick from...

9. Select **Bluetooth Radios** from the list.

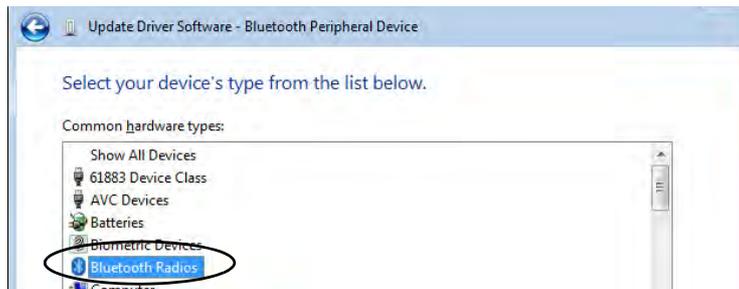


Figure 8 - 3 - Select Bluetooth Radios

Troubleshooting

10. A list of drivers will appear with **Manufacturer** on one side and **Model** in the other.
11. Choose **Microsoft Corporation** (make sure you choose the full name **Microsoft Corporation** and do not choose **Microsoft** - Note that you must have installed the **Microsoft Windows Device Center Driver for Microsoft Corporation** to appear in the list).
12. Select **Windows Mobile-based device support** from the **Model** list.

8

Make sure you select
Microsoft Corporation

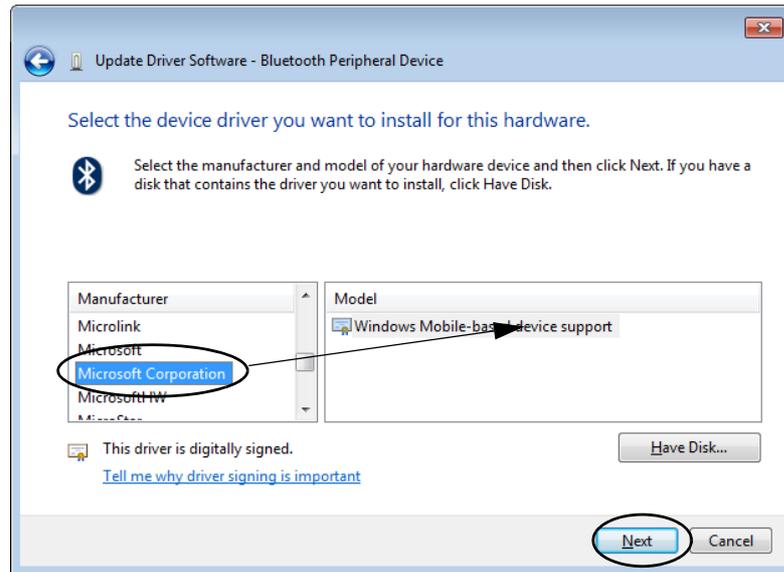


Figure 8 - 4 - Select Device Driver

13. Click **Next > Yes** and the driver will install.
14. Click **Close** to complete the installation.

15. The **Device Manager** should now display the **Windows Mobile-based device support** under **Bluetooth Radios**.
16. You will need to repeat the process for any other **Bluetooth Peripheral Devices** listed under **Other Devices**.

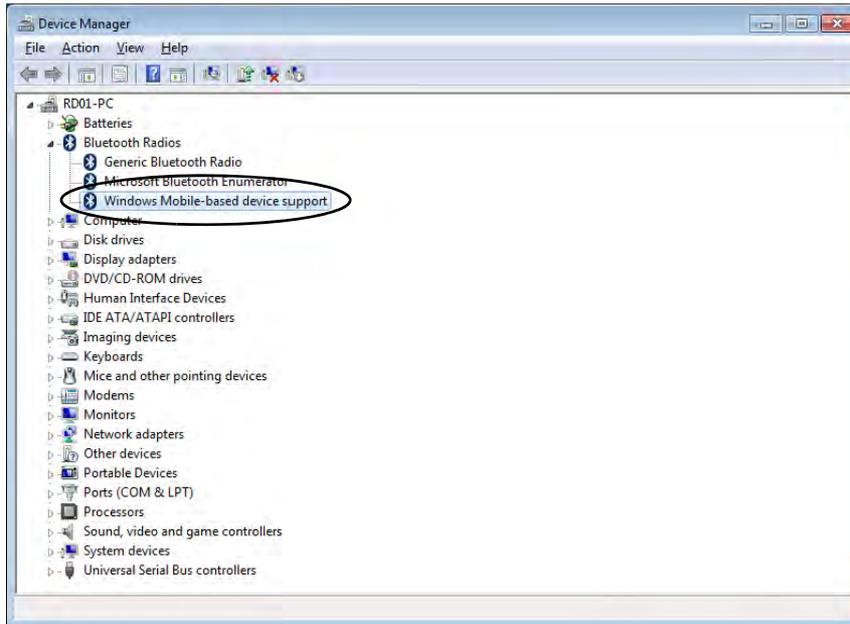


Figure 8 - 5 - Device Manager - Bluetooth Radio

Resolving the “Insert a SIM” issue with the 3G Module (Windows 8)

1. If a PIN was set for the EM820W 3G module, you have then switched **Mobile broadband off** (or put the system in **Airplane Mode**) under **Wireless** in **PC Settings**, and the system has just resumed from a power-saving state the following error may occur.

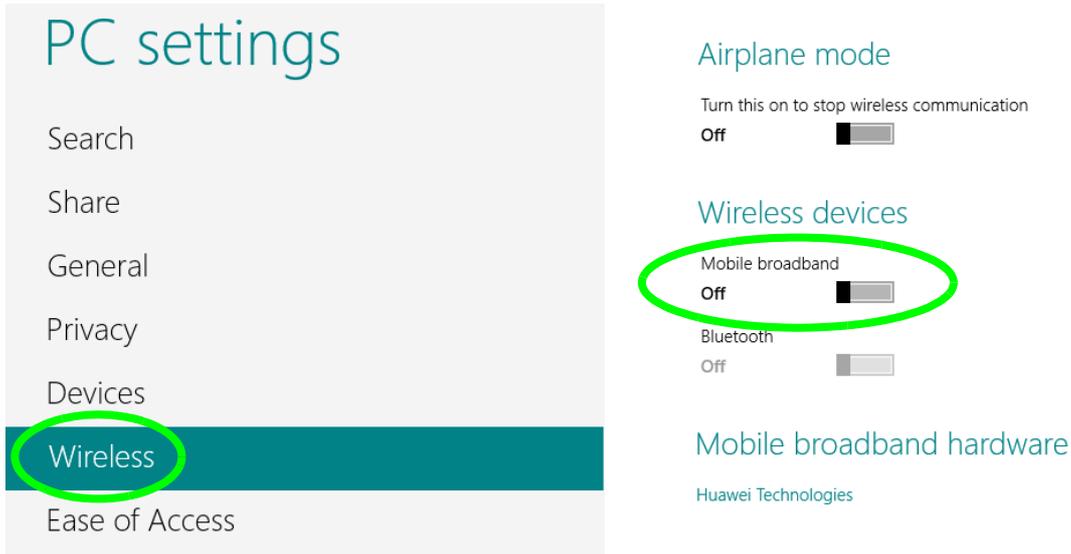


Figure 8 - 6 - PC Settings (Charms Bar) - Wireless (Mobile Broadband Off)

2. On resuming from the power-saving state the standard procedure would be to go to **PC Settings** in the **Charms Bar** and turn on Mobile broadband under **Wireless > Wireless Devices**.

3. Go to the **Charms Bar**.
4. Select **Settings** and you will then note that the **WiFi icon** will read **Unavailable**.
5. Standard procedure would be to click the connection and enter the PIN number to unlock the connection.
6. In this instance you will note that the **Mobile broadband** connection will read **Insert a SIM**.

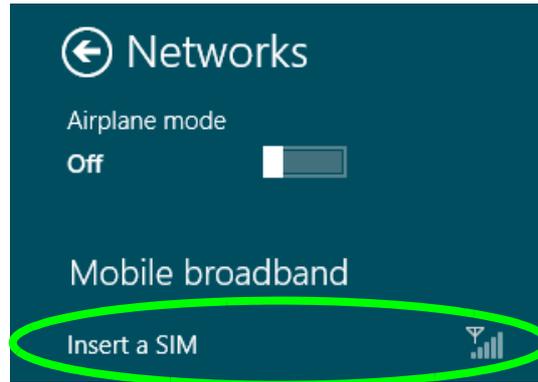


Figure 8 - 7 - Mobile Broadband (Insert a SIM)

7. In this case you will need to **restart the computer**.
8. After system restart you can then connect to the Mobile Broadband as normal.
9. **To fully resolve this issue it is recommended that you do not Enable a PIN for the EM820W 3G module.**

Appendix A: Interface (Ports & Jacks)

Overview

The following chapter will give a quick description of the interface (ports & jacks) which allow your computer to communicate with external devices, connect to the internet etc.

Notebook Ports and Jacks

Item	Description
<p>Card Reader Port</p> 	<p>The card reader allows you to use some of the latest digital storage cards. Push the card into the slot and it will appear as a removable device.</p>
<p>DC-In Jack</p> 	<p>Plug the supplied AC/DC adapter into this jack to power your computer.</p>
<p>External Monitor (VGA) Port</p> 	<p>This port allows you to connect an external monitor, or Flat Panel Display, to get dual video or simultaneous display on the LCD and external monitor/FPD.</p>
<p>HDMI-Out Port</p> 	<p>The HDMI-Out (High-Definition Multimedia Interface) is an audio/video connector interface for transmitting uncompressed digital streams. This allows you to connect an external monitor, TV or Flat Panel Display etc. as a display device by means of a HDMI cable. Note that HDMI carries both audio and video signals.</p>
<p>Headphone-Out Jack</p> 	<p>Headphones or speakers may be connected through this jack. Note: Set your system's volume to a reduced level before connecting to this jack.</p>

Item	Description
Microphone-In Jack 	Plug an external microphone in to this jack to record on your computer.
RJ-45 LAN Jack 	This port supports LAN (Network) functions. Note: Broadband (e.g. ADSL) modems usually connect to the LAN port.
Security Lock Slot 	To prevent possible theft, a Kensington-type lock can be attached to this slot. Locks can be purchased at any computer store.
USB 2.0/1.1 Ports  USB 3.0 Port	<p>These USB 2.0 compatible ports (USB 2.0 is fully USB 1.1 compliant) are for low-speed peripherals such as keyboards, mice or scanners, and for high-speed peripherals such as external HDDs, digital video cameras or high-speed scanners etc. Devices can be plugged into the computer, and unplugged from the computer, without the need to turn the system off (if the power rating of your USB device is 500mA or above, make sure you use the power supply which comes with the device).</p> <p>The USB 3.0 ports are denoted by their blue color; USB 2.0 ports are colored black. USB 3.0 will transfer data much faster than USB 2.0, and is backwards-compatible with USB 2.0.</p> <p>Note that the USB 3.0 ports require a driver installation (see <i>“USB 3.0 (Win 7 Only)” on page 4 - 7</i> for <i>Windows 7</i> (<i>Windows 8</i> does not require a driver) and do not support wake on USB.</p>

Interface (Ports & Jacks)

A

Appendix B: Control Center

Overview

The following chapter will give a quick description of the functions of the **Control Center**. The **Control Center** gives quick access to frequently used controls, power management features and enables you to quickly turn modules on/off. Click the **Control Center** icons to toggle the appropriate function, or hold the mouse button down and move the slider where applicable. Certain functions will automatically be adjusted when a power mode is selected. The **Control Center** in *Windows 8* works under the **Desktop** app (see *“Function/Hot Key Indicators & Control Center” on page E - 15*) and not under the Start screen, and does not feature the wireless/Bluetooth buttons and Airplane Mode etc.



Figure B - 1 - Control Center

Control Center

Power Modes

You can set a **Power Mode** by clicking the appropriate icon at the top of the **Control Center**. Each power mode will affect the power status of modules (e.g. WLAN, Bluetooth, 3G or Camera), screen brightness, TouchPad power and Silent Mode.

You can click a **Control Center** icon to set an overall power mode and then click individual icons in the **Control Center** to power on/off any modules etc.

The **table overleaf** illustrates the basic settings for each power mode. If you choose user defined the settings will correspond to your selected system settings.

Modes		Power Saving	Flight (Win 7 Only)	Entertainment	Quiet	Performance	User Defined
Icon							
Power Plan		Power Saver	Balanced	Power Saving	Power Saving	High Performance	User Defined
Power Conservation Mode		Energy Star	BIOS Default	Energy Star	Energy Star	Performance	
Brightness		14	42	100	42	100	
WLAN (Win 7 Only)		OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON	
Bluetooth (Win 7 Only)		BIOS Default					
3G (Win 7 Only)		OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	
PC Camera		OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	
TouchPad		ON	ON	OFF	ON	ON	

Table B - 1- Power Modes

Control Center

Power Status

The **Power Status** icon will show whether you are currently powered by the battery, or by the AC/DC adapter plugged in to a working power outlet. The power status bar will show the current battery charge state.

Brightness

The **Brightness** icon will show the current screen brightness level. You can use the slider to adjust the screen brightness or the **Fn + F8/F9** key combinations, or use the **Fn+ F2** key combination to turn off the LED backlight (press any key to turn it on again). Note that screen brightness is also effected by the **Power Mode** selected (see [Table B - 1, on page B - 3](#)).

Volume

The **Volume** icon will show the current volume level. You can use the slider to adjust the Volume or the **Fn + F5/F6** key combinations, or use the **Fn+ F3** key combination to mute the volume.

Power Conservation

This system supports **Energy Star** power management features that place computers (CPU, hard drive, etc.) into a low-power sleep modes after a designated period of inactivity (see [“Power Conservation Modes” on page 3 - 10](#)). Click either the **Performance**, **Balanced** or **Energy Star** button.



Sleep 

Click the **Sleep** button to bring up the **Hibernate**  or **Sleep**  buttons, and click either button to have the computer enter the appropriate power-saving mode (see *“Power-Saving States” on page 3 - 6*).

Display Switch 

Click the **Display Switch** button to access the menu (or use the  + **P** key combination) and select the appropriate attached display mode (see page *C - 10*).

Time Zone 

Clicking the **Time Zone** button will access the **Date and Time Windows** control panel.

Desktop Background 

Clicking the **Desktop Background** button will allow you to change the desktop background picture.

TouchPad/PC Camera/Wireless LAN Module /Bluetooth/3G Module     

Click any of these buttons to toggle the TouchPad or module's power status. A crossed out icon will appear over the top left of the icon  when it is off. Note that the power status of a module, and TouchPad power, is also effected by the **Power Mode** selected (see *Table B - 1, on page B - 3*). The WLAN, Bluetooth and 3G buttons are not featured in the *Windows 8* system.

Control Center

Silent Mode

Click the **Silent Mode** button toggles silent mode on/off. You can use **Silent Mode** to reduce power consumption and fan noise. Note that the **Silent Mode** effected by the **Power Mode** selected.

-  Silent Mode is **OFF**
-  Silent Mode is **On**

Note **Silent Mode** may reduce computer performance.

Caps Lock/Scroll Lock/ Number Lock

Click the button to toggle the appropriate lock mode.

Appendix C: Video Driver Controls

The basic settings for configuring the LCD are outlined in “*Video Features*” on *page 1 - 26*.

Video Driver Installation

Make sure you install the drivers in the order indicated in *Table 4 - 1, on page 4 - 3*.

1. Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User’s Manual* disc and click **Install Drivers** (button).
2. Click **2.Install VGA Driver > Yes**.
3. Click **Next > Yes > Next > Next**.
4. Click **Finish** to restart the computer.

Note: After installing the video driver go to the **Display** control panel to adjust the video settings to the highest resolution.

Dynamic Video Memory Technology

Intel® DVMT automatically and dynamically allocates as much (up to **1748MB**) system memory (RAM) as needed to the integrated video system (**the video driver must be installed**). DVMT returns whatever memory is no longer needed to the operating system.



Video Card Options

Note that card types, specifications and drivers are subject to continual updates and changes. Check with your service center for the latest details on video cards supported.

DVMT Notes

DVMT is not local video memory.

DVMT will not function in MS-DOS. DOS uses the legacy memory indicated.



Application Mode

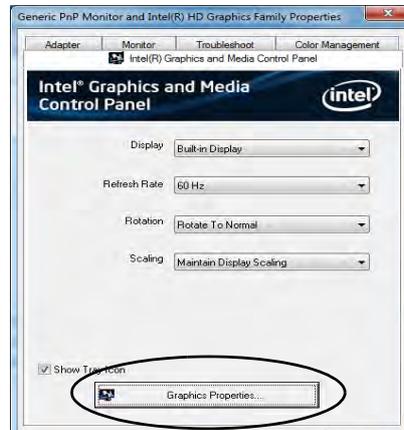
Note that all figures pictured, and instructions outlined here are based on the **Advanced Application Mode**.

Intel® Graphics & Media Control Panel

Advanced video configuration options are provided by the **Intel® Graphics and Media Control Panel**. To access the control panel:

1. Click **Advanced settings** in the **Screen Resolution** control panel in **Windows**.
 2. Click the **Intel(R)...** tab and click **Graphics Properties** (button).
- OR
3. Right-click the desktop and select **Graphics Properties** from the menu.
- OR
4. Double-click the **Intel(R) G&M** control panel in **Windows**.
 5. Choose the application mode (**Basic, Advanced or Wizard**) required (see sidebar).

Figure C - 1
Intel® G&M
Control Panel



You may make changes to any of the graphics properties by clicking the appropriate menu tab on the left of the menu and adjusting the settings on the right.



Options & Support

Click **Options & Support** and select an item from the sub-menu to bring up the help and support topics.

You will need to be connected to the Internet to access the key resource links.

Multiple Display

At least one other display must be attached in order to view multiple display selection options.

Figure C - 2

Intel® G&M
Control Panel Tabs



Function Key Combination

You can use the **Fn + F7** key combination to toggle through the display options:

- Notebook Only
- External Display Only
- Notebook + External Display

Make sure you give the displays enough time to refresh.

Note that HDMI supports video and audio signals.

Table C - 1
Display Modes

Display Devices & Options

Besides the built-in LCD you can also use an external monitor/flat panel display/TV connected to the external monitor port or to the HDMI-Out port (High-Definition Multimedia Interface) as your display device. The table below outlines the display options.



Attaching Displays

When you first attach an external display you may find that the desktop does not occupy the full screen area. Use either the display's auto adjust/configure controls, or the Intel(R) G&M control panel to configure the full screen display.

Intel Display Mode	Description
Single Display	One of the connected displays is used as the display device
Clone Displays	Both connected displays output the same view and may be configured independently
Extended Desktop	Both connected displays are treated as separate devices, and act as a virtual desktop

Attaching Other Displays

If you prefer to use a monitor or flat panel display, connect it to the external monitor port or HDMI-Out port on the left of the computer.

To Clone Displays:

1. Attach your display to the external monitor port or HDMI-Out port, and turn it on.
2. Go to the **Intel(R) G&M** control panel and click **Display > Multiple Displays**.
3. Click **Operating Mode** and select **Clone Displays** from the menu.
4. Click **Apply**, and **OK** to confirm the settings change.
5. You can switch the **Primary/Secondary Display** from the menu.



Multiple Display

At least one other display must be attached in order to view **Multiple Display** selection options.

General Settings

Click **General Settings** to access settings the options for any attached display.

Figure C - 3
Display > Multiple Displays (Clone)

Video Driver Controls

Display Settings Extended Desktop

You can have different Colors, Screen Area and Monitor Refresh Rates for each display device **provided your monitor can support them.**

You can drag the monitor icons to match the physical layout of your displays. Icons and programs may also be dragged between the displays.

To Enable Extended Desktop:

1. Attach your display to the external monitor port or HDMI-Out port, and turn it on.
2. Go to the **Intel(R) G&M** control panel and click **Display > Multiple Displays**.
3. Click **Operating Mode** and select **Extended Desktop** from the menu.
4. Click **Apply**, and **OK** to confirm the settings change.



Click the appropriate monitor icon and drag it to match the physical arrangement you wish to use (e.g. the secondary display may be extended left/right/above/below the primary display).

Click **General Settings** to make any adjustments required.

Figure C - 4

Display > Multiple Displays (Extended)

B

Display Profiles

You can save display settings to be loaded at any time.

1. Go to the **Intel(R) G&M** control panel and click **Display**.
2. Configure the General Settings, Multiple Displays, Color Enhancement, Custom Resolution & Monitor/TV Settings to your preferences.
3. Click **Apply**, and **OK** to confirm the settings change.
4. Click the **Save** button at the top of the General Settings, Multiple Displays or Color Enhancement menus (under **Display Profiles**).
5. Type a name for the **Profile** and click **OK**.
6. The **Profile** will be listed under **Display Profiles**.
7. Select the profile from the pull-down menu and click **Apply**, and **OK** to confirm the settings change.

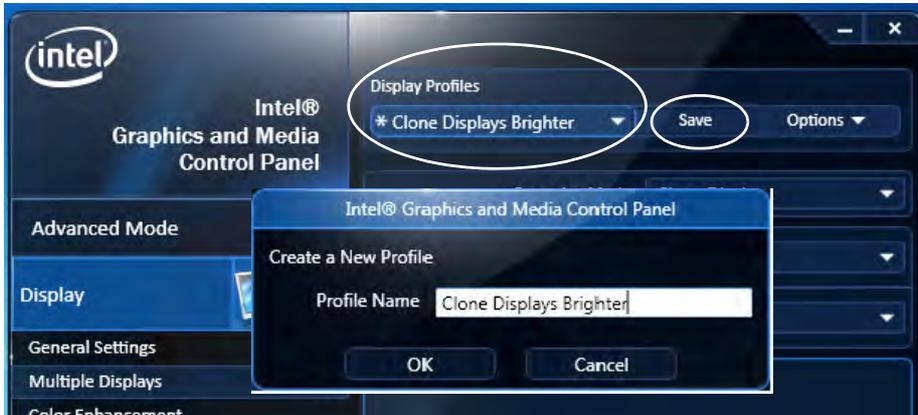


Figure C - 5
Intel® G&M
Profiles



Function Key Combination

You can use the **Fn + F7** key combination to toggle through the display options:

- Notebook Only
- External Display Only
- Notebook + External Display

Make sure you give the displays enough time to refresh.

Note that HDMI supports video and audio signals.

Configuring an External Display in Windows 7

You can also use the **Screen Resolution** control panel in *Windows 7* to configure an external display.

1. Attach your display to the external monitor port or HDMI-Out port, and turn it on.
2. Go to the **Screen resolution** control panel (see *“Video Features” on page 1 - 26*).
3. Click the **Detect** button.
4. The computer will then detect any attached displays.

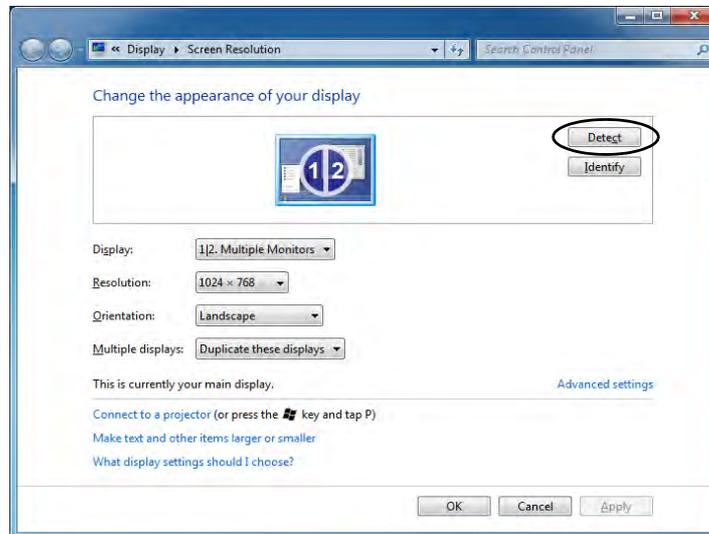


Figure C - 6
Screen Resolution
Multiple Displays
(Win 7)

5. You can configure the displays from the **Multiple Displays** menu.

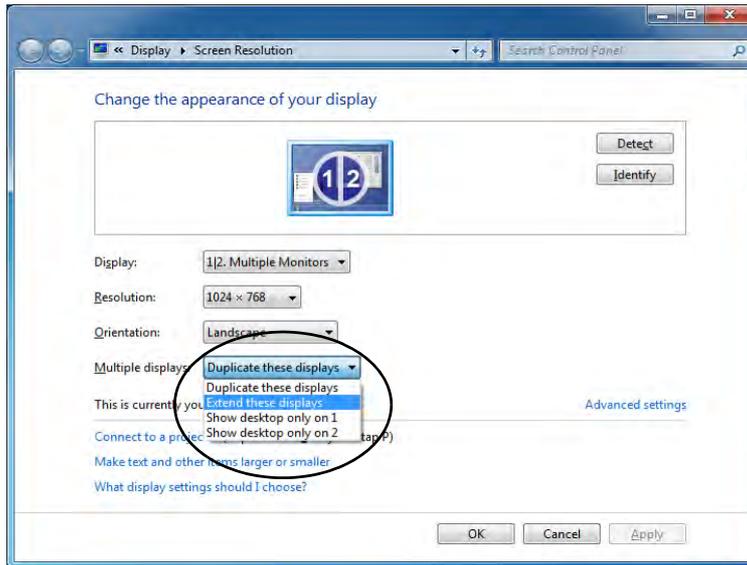


Figure C - 7
**Screen Resolution
Multiple Display
Options
(Win 7)**

- Duplicate these displays - Shows an exact copy of the main display desktop on the other display(s)
- Extend these displays - Treats both connected displays as **separate** devices
- Show desktop only on 1/2 - Only one of your displays is used.

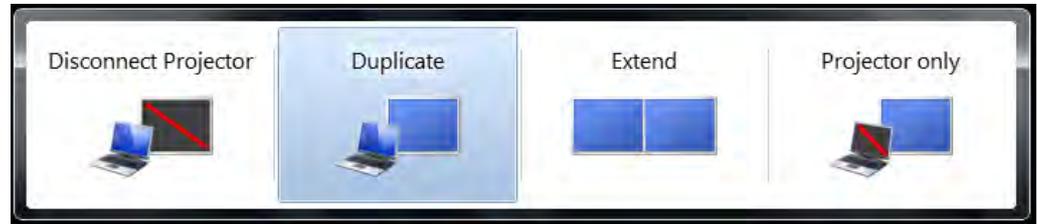
Video Driver Controls

Using the Windows Logo Key + P Key Combination to Switch Displays

You can also use the  + **P** key combination to quickly change display configuration and modes (this is particularly useful when attaching a projector) in *Windows 7*.

1. Attach your display to the external monitor port or HDMI-Out port, and turn it on.
2. Press the  + **P** key combination.
3. An on-screen menu will pop up.
4. Use the cursor keys (or  + **P**) to select the appropriate configuration from the menu, and press Enter to confirm the selection.

Figure C - 8
 + P Display
Configuration
Selection
(Win 7)

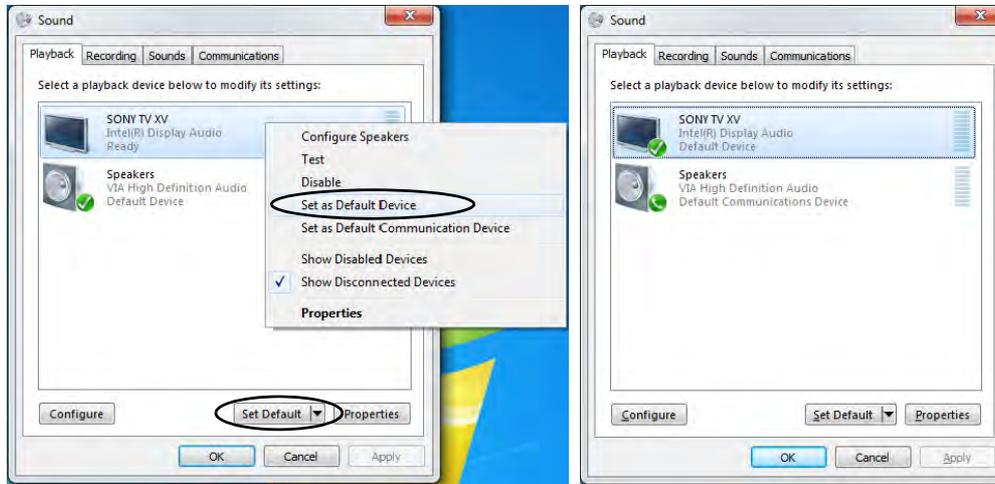


You can also use the **Display Switch**  button in the **Control Center** to access the menu and select the appropriate attached display mode.

HDMI Audio Configuration

HDMI (High-Definition Multimedia Interface) carries both **audio** and video signals. In some cases it will be necessary to go to the **Sound** control panel and manually configure the HDMI audio output as per the instructions below.

1. Click **Start**, and click **Control Panel** (or point to **Settings** and click **Control Panel**).
2. Click **Sound** (Hardware and Sound) and click **Playback** (tab)
3. Depending on your display, the playback device may be selected, however in some cases you may need to select the audio device and click **Set Default** (button).
4. Double-click the device to access the control panel tabs illustrated overleaf.



Volume Indicator

Click the taskbar volume indicator  when an HDMI device is selected, and you will note that the icon at the top of the volume level indicator has changed.



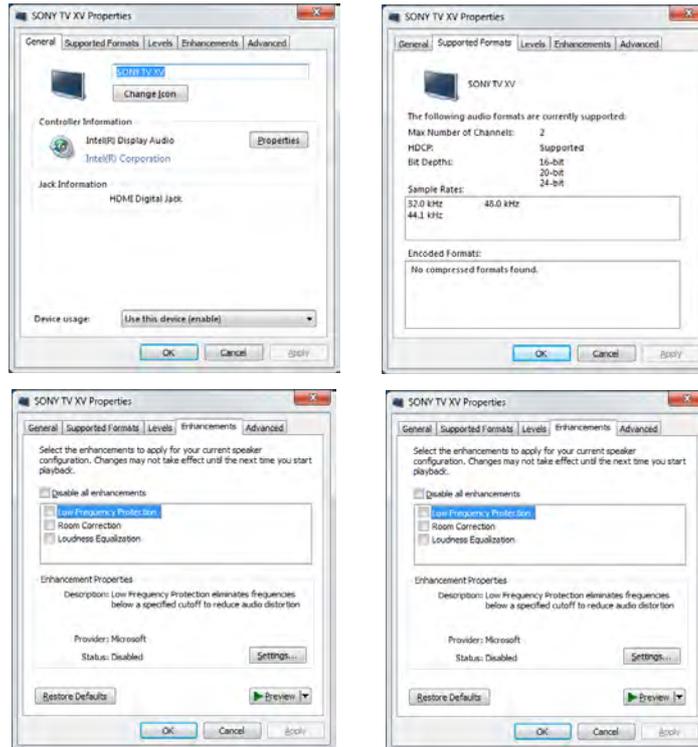
Figure C - 9

Sound - HDMI
Device (set Default)

Video Driver Controls

5. Double-click the connected HDMI device (or right-click and select **Properties**) to adjust the HDMI settings from the control panel tabs.
6. Click **OK** to close the control panel (see notes overleaf).

Figure C - 10
HDMI Device Properties



HDMI Notes

- Connect a device with HDMI support to the HDMI-Out port **BEFORE** attempting to play audio/video sources through the device.
- To play audio sources through your external display's (TV or LCD) speakers you will need to go to the audio configuration control panel on the display and configure the audio input accordingly (see your display device manual).

HDMI Video Configuration

1. Connect an HDMI cable from the HDMI-Out port to your external display.
2. Configure your external display as per the instructions in *“Attaching Other Displays” on page C - 5*.
3. Set up your external display (TV or LCD) for HDMI input (see your display device manual).
4. You can now play video/audio sources through your external display.



Other Applications

If you are using a third party application to play DVDs etc. from any attached DVD device, you will need to consult the application's documentation to see the appropriate audio configuration (the application must support digital to analog translation).

Appendix D: Specifications



Latest Specification Information

The specifications listed in this Appendix are correct at the time of going to press. Certain items (particularly processor types/speeds and CD/DVD device types) may be changed, updated or delayed due to the manufacturer's release schedule. Check with your service center for details.

Specifications

Processor		
<p>Intel® Core i7-3612QM (2.1GHz) Quad-Core Mobile Processor 6M L3 Cache, 22nm (22 Nanometer), DDR3-1600MHz, TDP 35W</p> <p>Intel® Core i7-3520M (2.9GHz) Mobile Processor 4M L3 Cache, 22nm (22 Nanometer), DDR3-1600MHz, TDP 35W</p> <p>Intel® Core i5-3360M (2.8GHz) Mobile Processor 3M L3 Cache, 22nm (22 Nanometer), DDR3-1600MHz, TDP 35W</p> <p>Intel® Core i5-3320M (2.6GHz) Mobile Processor 3M L3 Cache, 22nm (22 Nanometer), DDR3-1600MHz, TDP 35W</p> <p>Intel® Core i5-3210M (2.5GHz) Mobile Processor 3M L3 Cache, 22nm (22 Nanometer), DDR3-1600MHz, TDP 35W</p>	<p>Intel® Core i7-2620M (2.7GHz) Mobile Processor 4M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W</p> <p>Intel® Core i5-2540M (2.6GHz) Mobile Processor 3M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W</p> <p>Intel® Core i5-2520M (2.5GHz) Mobile Processor 3M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W</p> <p>Intel® Core i5-2450M (2.5GHz) Mobile Processor 3M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W</p> <p>Intel® Core i5-2430M (2.4GHz) Mobile Processor 3M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W</p>	<p>Intel® Core i5-2410M (2.3GHz) Mobile Processor 3M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W</p> <p>Intel® Core i3-3110M (2.4GHz) Mobile Processor 3M L3 Cache, 22nm (22 Nanometer), DDR3-1600MHz, TDP 35W</p> <p>Intel® Core i3-2370M (2.4GHz) Mobile Processor 3M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W</p> <p>Intel® Core i3-2350M (2.3GHz) Mobile Processor 3M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W</p> <p>Intel® Core i3-2330M (2.2GHz) Mobile Processor 3M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W</p> <p>Intel® Core i3-2310M (2.1GHz) Mobile Processor 3M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer), DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W</p>

Intel® Pentium® B970 (2.3GHz)

2M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer),
DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W

Intel® Pentium® B960 (2.2GHz)

2M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer),
DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W

Intel® Pentium® B950 (2.1GHz)

2M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer),
DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W

Intel® Pentium® B940 (2.0GHz)

2M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer),
DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W

Intel® Pentium® B840 (1.90GHz)

2M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer),
DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W

Intel® Celeron® B815 (1.60GHz)

2M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer),
DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W

Intel® Celeron® B810 (1.60GHz)

2M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer),
DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W

Intel® Celeron® B800 (1.50GHz)

2M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer),
DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W

Intel® Celeron® B720 (1.70GHz)

1.5M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer),
DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W

Intel® Celeron® B710 (1.60GHz)

1.5M L3 Cache, 32nm (32 Nanometer),
DDR3-1333MHz, TDP 35W

Core Logic

Mobile Intel® **HM76** Express Chipset

Memory

Dual Channel DDRIII (DDR3)

Two 204 Pin SO-DIMM sockets
supporting DDR3 1333MHz / 1600MHz
(real operational frequency depends on
the FSB of the processor)

Memory Expandable up to **8GB** (using
1GB/2GB/4GB SO-DIMM Modules)

Display

Model A:

14.0" / 35.56cm HD (1366 * 768), 16:9
Backlit Panel (LCD Thickness 5.2mm)

OR

14.0" / 35.56cm HD (1366 * 768), 16:9
Backlit Panel (LCD Thickness 3.6mm)

Model B:

15.6" / 39.62cm HD (1366 * 768) / HD+
(1600 * 900), FHD (1920 * 1080), 16:9
Backlit Panel

Model C:

17.3" / 43.94cm HD+ (1600 * 900), FHD
(1920 * 1080), 16:9 Backlit Panel

Specifications

Video	Keyboard & Pointing Device	Interface
<p>Intel® HD Graphics 4000 / Intel® HD Graphics 3000 / Intel® HD Graphics (GPU is Dependent on Processor):</p> <p>Dynamic Frequency Intel Dynamic Video Memory Technology up to 1.7GB Microsoft DirectX®10 Compatible (for Intel® HD Graphics 3000 / Intel® HD Graphics) Microsoft DirectX®11 Compatible (for Intel® HD Graphics 4000)</p>	<p>Built-in Touchpad with Multi-Gesture Functionality</p> <p>Model A Only: Isolated OR Floating A4 Size Keyboard (Design Style Dependent) Three Instant Buttons: WWW/ E-Mail / Silent OR WWW/ E-Mail / WLAN ON/OFF (Design Style Dependent)</p> <p>Models B & C: Isolated A4 Full Size Keyboard with Numeric Keypad</p>	<p>One USB 2.0 Port Two USB 3.0 Ports One External Monitor Port One HDMI-Out (High-Definition Multimedia Interface) Port (with HDCP) One Headphone-Out Jack One Microphone-In Jack One RJ-45 LAN Jack One DC-In Jack</p>
Storage	Audio	Card Reader
<p>One Changeable 12.7mm(h) Super Multi/ Blu-ray Combo Optical Device Drive with SATA Interface (Factory Option)</p> <p>One Changeable 2.5" / 9.5 mm (h) HDD with SATA (Serial) Interface</p>	<p>High Definition Audio Interface Built-In Microphone 2 * Built-In Speakers</p>	<p>Embedded Multi-In-1 Card Reader</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - MMC/ RS MMC - SD/ Mini SD / SDHC/ SDXC - MS/ MS Pro/ MS Duo <p>Note: Some of these cards require PC adapters that are usually supplied with the cards.</p>

Slot	3rd Party Combo WLAN (802.11b/g/n) and Bluetooth v4.0+HS Half Mini-Card Module with PCIe Interface (Factory Option)	Power Management
<p>Models A & B: Two Mini-Card Slots with PCIe & USB Interfaces: Slot 1 for WLAN Module Slot 2 for 3G Module (Factory Option)</p> <p>Model C: One Mini-Card Slot with PCIe & USB Interfaces: Slot 1 for WLAN Module</p>	<p>3rd Party WLAN 802.11b/g/n Half Mini-Card Module (Factory Option)</p> <p>Model A: 300K / 1.3M / 2M HD Pixel PC Camera Module with USB interface (Factory Option)</p> <p>Models B & C: 2M HD Pixel PC Camera Module with USB interface (Factory Option)</p> <hr/> <p>Models A & B Only: UMTS/HSPDA OR UMTS/HSPDA+ based 3G Module with Mini-Card Interface (Factory Option) Quad-band GSM/GPRS (850 MHz, 900 MHz, 1800 MHz, 1900 MHz) UMTS WCDMA FDD (2100 MHz) Note that UMTS modes CAN NOT be used in North America</p>	Supports Wake on LAN Supports Wake on USB
Communication		Power
<p>Built-In 10/100/1000Mb Base-TX Ethernet LAN</p> <p>Intel® Centrino® Wireless-N 2230 2*2 (802.11 b/g/n) Half Mini-Card PCIe WLAN + Bluetooth Combo Module (Factory Option)</p> <p>Intel® Centrino® Wireless-N 135 (1*1 802.11 b/g/n+) Half Mini-Card PCIe WLAN & Bluetooth Combo Module (Factory Option)</p>		<p>Full Range AC/DC Adapter AC input 100 - 240V, 50 - 60Hz, DC Output 19V, 3.42A or 18.5V, 3.5A (65 Watts)</p> <p>Removable 6 Cell Smart Lithium Ion Battery Pack 48.84WH</p> <p>Removable 6 Cell Smart Lithium Ion Battery Pack 62.16WH (Factory Option)</p>
		Operating System
		Windows® 7 with Service Pack 1 Windows® 8
		BIOS
		One 48Mb SPI Flash ROM AMI BIOS
		Indicators



Specifications

<p>LED Indicators - Power/Suspend, Battery, HDD/ODD, Bluetooth/Wireless LAN, Num Lock, Caps Lock, Scroll Lock</p> <p>Model B & C Computers: Camera LED located on camera module</p> <p>For Model A Computers: Camera LED located on Power/Suspend LED</p> <p>For some Model A designs in this series: Power/Suspend, Battery, HDD/ODD, Bluetooth/Wireless LAN</p>	<p>Features</p> <p>IMR (Injected Molded Resin) LCD Back Covers (For some Model designs in this series)</p> <p>Painted Style (For some Model designs in this series)</p> <p>Magic Of Film Art II Changeable LCD Back Covers (For some Model designs in this series)</p>	<p>Dimensions & Weight</p> <p>Model A (Design Style Dependent): 340mm(w) * 238mm(d) * 13.9-31.8mm(h) 2.2 kg with 48.84WH Battery & ODD</p> <p>OR</p> <p>340mm(w) * 238mm(d) * 26.25-34.7mm(h) 2.2 kg with 48.84WH Battery & ODD</p> <p>OR</p> <p>341mm(w) * 238.5mm(d) * 16-34mm (h) 2.2 kg with 48.84WH Battery & ODD</p> <p>OR</p> <p>340mm(w) * 238mm(d) * 12-30.2mm(h) 2.15 kg with 48.84WH Battery & ODD</p>
<p>Security</p> <p>Security (Kensington® Type) Lock Slot BIOS Password Trusted Platform Module V1.2</p>	<p>Environmental Spec</p> <p>Temperature</p> <p>Operating: 5°C - 35°C</p> <p>Non-Operating: -20°C - 60°C</p> <p>Relative Humidity</p> <p>Operating: 20% - 80%</p> <p>Non-Operating: 10% - 90%</p>	<p>Model B (Design Style Dependent): 374mm(w) * 250mm(d) * 14.3-34.1mm(h) 2.3 kg with 48.84WH Battery & ODD</p> <p>OR</p> <p>374mm(w) * 250mm(d) * 20-37.2mm(h) 2.6 kg with 48.84WH Battery & ODD</p> <p>Model C: 413mm(w) * 270mm(d) * 14-40.5mm(h) 2.9 kg with ODD & 48.84WH Battery</p>

Appendix E: Windows 8

Overview

This Appendix contains information (including control panel information, driver installation etc.) for users of the *Windows 8 OS*.

You can refer to the main manual for details of drivers required, audio & video information, BIOS, modules etc. However any information specific to *Windows 8* will be included in this Appendix, as well as details on how to navigate the *Windows 8 Metro User Interface* to access the applications, control panels, taskbar etc.



Windows 7/8 OS

In order to run *Windows 7 or 8 (32 Bit)* without limitations or decreased performance, your computer requires a minimum **1GB** of system memory (RAM), however if you are running *Windows 7 or 8 (64 bit)* your computer requires a minimum **2GB** of system memory (RAM).

Windows 8 Start Screen & Desktop

The Apps, control panels, utilities and programs within *Windows 8* are accessed from the **Metro** user interface's **Start screen** and/or **Windows Desktop**. The **Desktop** (which runs as an app within the Start screen) can be accessed from the **Desktop** item in the Start screen (or by using the **Windows Logo Key**  + **D** key combination).

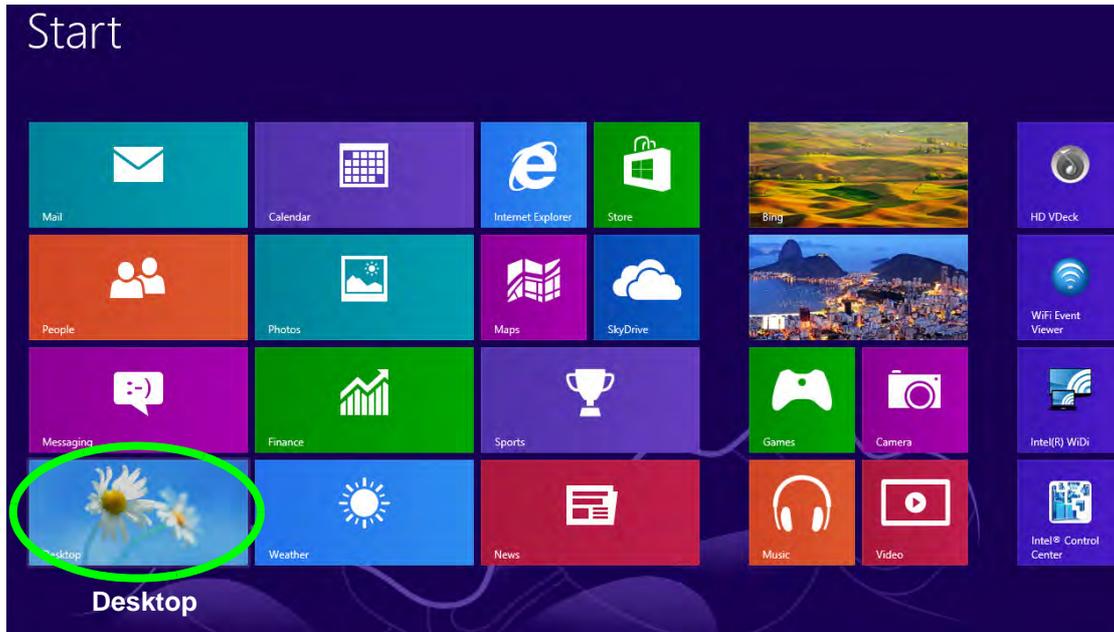


Figure E - 1 - Windows Start Screen

Apps & Tiles

The **Windows 8** Start screen will contain a number of Apps, and many more will be installed as you add more applications etc. Not all of these apps can fit on one screen so you will often need use the **slider** at the bottom of the screen in order to view all the necessary apps.

Accessing Pinning/Unpinning All Apps

You can add and remove the tiles for apps and control panels in the Start screen. Right-click on a blank area of the Metro UI **Start** screen and you will see the **All Apps** icon. Click the **All Apps** icon to display all the installed applications etc. Right-click any icon to bring up the menu at the bottom of the screen. You can then click the appropriate icon to **pin the app** to (or unpin from) the **Start** screen, or to the **taskbar** in the **Desktop application**.



Figure E - 2 - All Apps

Windows 8

Desktop Application

When the **Desktop app** is running (click the app in the Start screen or use the **Windows Logo Key**  + **D** key combination) you can use lower left hot corner to switch between the Start screen and the **Windows Desktop**. To do so move your mouse to hover over the bottom left corner of the screen and click the pop-up.

When you move to the lower left hot corner in the Start screen itself it will take you back to your most recently used app.

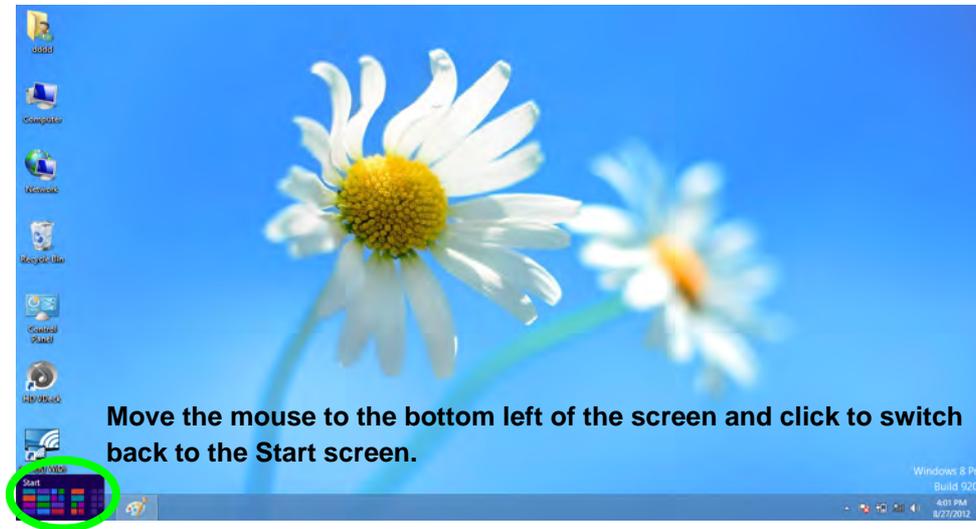


Figure E - 3 - Desktop

When the Desktop app is running you can right-click the lower left hot corner (or use the **Windows Logo Key**  + **X** key combination) to bring up an advanced context menu of useful features such as Control Panel, Programs and Features, Power Options, Task Manager, Search, Windows Explorer, Command Prompt, Device Manager and Network Connections etc.

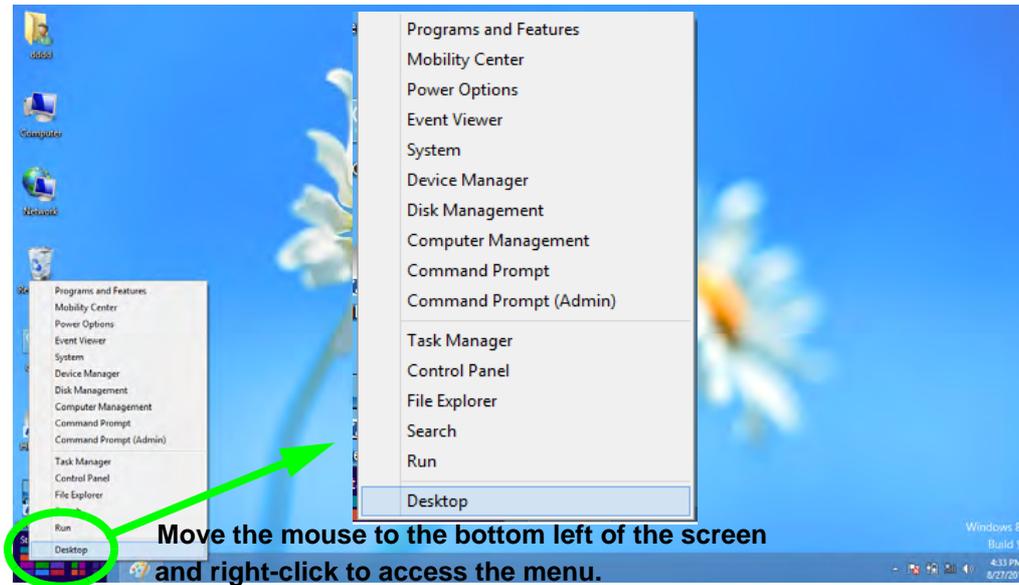


Figure E - 4 - Advanced Context Menu (Right-Click lower left hot corner)



Display Most Recently Used Apps

If you are in the **Start** screen, **Desktop** or an app you can move your mouse to the upper left corner of the screen to get back to the most recently used app.

To view all the most recently used apps hover over the top left of the screen and then move the mouse down along the left side of the screen to display the list.

Windows 8

Windows 8 Charms Bar

The right side of the screen displays the *Windows 8 Charms Bar*. The Charms Bar contains the **Search**, **Share**, **Start**, **Devices** and **Settings** menus. To access up the Charms Bar move the cursor to the upper or lower right corners of the screen, and then hover over one of the items in the Charms Bar to activate it (the bar will be black when it is active), or use the **Windows Logo Key**  + **C** key combination.

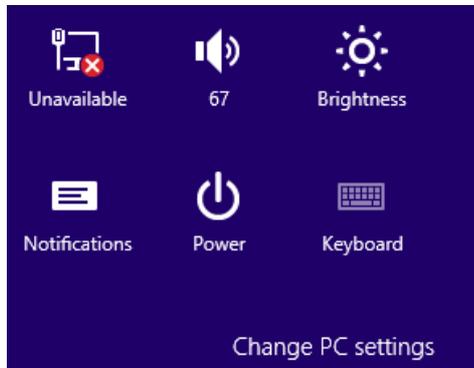


Figure E - 5 - Start Screen with Charms Bar

E - 6 Windows 8 Start Screen & Desktop

Charms Bar Items

- **Search** : You can search for any file, application, apps and control panel settings with instantaneous results.
- **Share** : This button is used to share information with people via mail or social networks.
- **Start** : Click to bring up the Start Menu (the same function as pressing the Windows Logo Key or clicking the bottom left of the screen).
- **Devices** : Click this button to change connected peripheral device settings e.g. an external display.
- **Settings** : This button gives instant access to the computer settings, such as Network, Audio, Brightness, Notifications, Power and Keyboard (click **Change PC Settings** to activate the PC Settings menu).





Charms Bar - TouchPad Access

To quick access the **Charms Bar** using the TouchPad:

1. Place your finger **off** the TouchPad (slightly to the right of the pad resting on the computer).
2. Move your finger across to the left on to the TouchPad.
3. The Charms Bar will then pop-up.

Figure E - 6 - Settings Menu

Windows 8 Control Panel

In many instances throughout this manual you will see an instruction to open the **Control Panel**. The Control Panel is much the same as that in *Windows 7*, however it can be accessed in a number of ways in *Windows 8*.

- Click **Search** in the **Windows Charms Bar** (see previous page) and the search pane will pop out. Type *Control Panel* and select it from the results to the left.



Figure E - 7 - Search (Control Panel)

- Click on **Computer** in the **Start** screen, click on **Computer** in the top menu and select **Open Control Panel** from the ribbon.

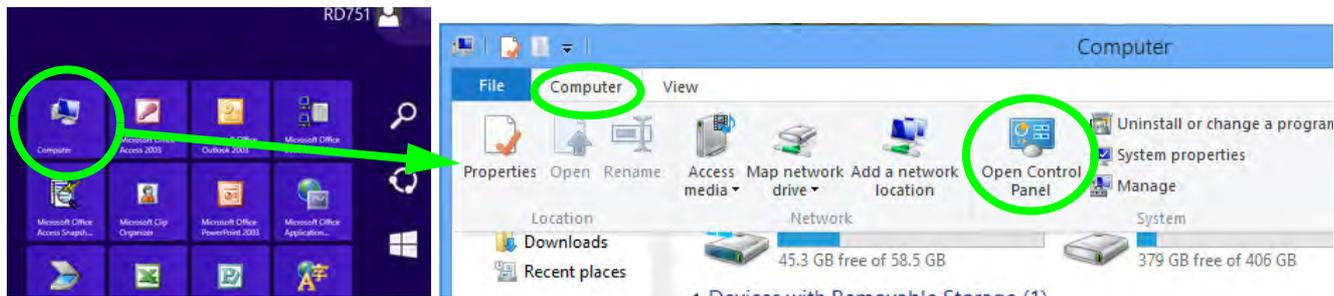


Figure E - 8 - Open Control Panel (Computer)

- When in the **Desktop** app (this does not apply to the Start screen) click on **Settings** in the **Windows Charms Bar** and select **Control Panel** from the menu.

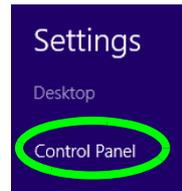


Figure E - 9 - Settings Charms Bar (Desktop App Only)

- **Right-click on a blank area of the Metro UI Start screen**, click the **All Apps** icon and click Control Panel.

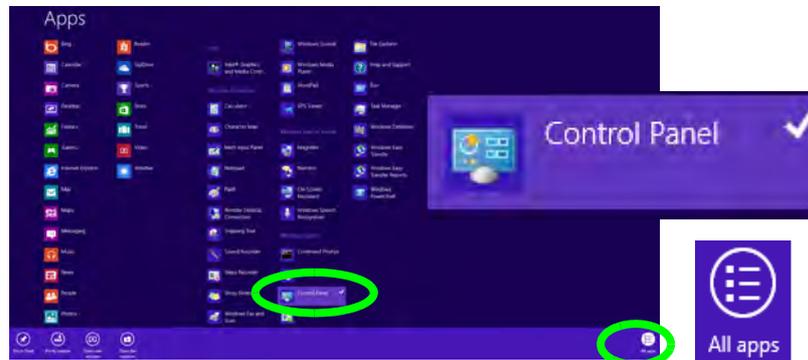


Figure E - 10 - All Apps - Control Panel

Windows 8

- Right-click the lower left hot corner to bring up the menu and select Control Panel (see *Figure E - 4 on page E - 5*).



Keyboard Shortcut to Control Panel

You can also use keyboard shortcuts to access the Control Panel. Press the **Windows logo key**  and **X** to bring up the context menu, and then press **P** to bring up the Control Panel. Alternatively press the **Windows logo key**  and **R** to bring up the **Run** dialog box, and then type "**Control Panel**" and press Enter to access the Control Panel.

Windows 8 Taskbar

In many instances throughout this manual you will see an instruction to access the **notification area of the taskbar**. In *Windows 8* the taskbar is accessed from the **Desktop** application. If you are in the Start screen you will need to click the Desktop app to switch to the Desktop.

The taskbar is displayed in much the same way as it was in *Windows 7*, and you can see the notification area of the taskbar in the bottom right of the screen. Some of the Control Panels and applications referred to during the course of this manual can be accessed from here.



Figure E - 11 - Desktop Taskbar

You can pin/unpin apps to/from the taskbar in much the same way as you can to the Start screen (see *“[Accessing Pining/Unpinning All Apps](#)” on page E - 3*).

LED Indicators

The LED indicators on the computer display helpful information about the current status of the computer.

Icon	Color	Description
	Orange	DC Power is Plugged In
	Green	The Computer is On
	Blinking Green	The PC Camera is In Use (for 14.0" / 35.56cm Model A computers only)
	Blinking Orange	The Computer is in Sleep Mode
	Orange	The Battery is Charging
	Green	The Battery is Fully Charged
	Blinking Orange	The Battery Has Reached Critically Low Power Status

Table E - 1 - LED Power Indicators

Icon	Color	Description
	Green	The (optional) Wireless LAN Module is Powered On
	Orange	Win 7 - The (optional) Bluetooth Module is Powered On
Win 8 - The (optional) Bluetooth Module is Installed (<i>this is not a power on/off indicator in Windows 8</i>)		
	Green	Hard Disk Activity
	Green	Number Lock Activated
	Green	Caps Lock Activated
	Green	Scroll Lock Activated
	Blue	Power Button

Table E - 2 - LED Status Indicators

Keyboard - Windows 8

The main difference between the *Windows 7* & *Windows 8* keyboards is in the function of the **Windows Logo Key** & **Menu/Application Key** (in the **Start** screen), otherwise the keyboard functions are identical (see *“Keyboard - Model A” on page 1 - 13/“Keyboard - Models B & C” on page 1 - 14*).



Figure E - 12 - Keyboard - Model A

The function/hot key indicators function in the same manner as outlined for *Windows 7* on *“Function/Hot Key Indicators” on page 1 - 15*. However the indicators work under the **Desktop** App (see *“Desktop Application” on page E - 4*) and not under the Start Screen.



Windows Logo Keyboard Shortcut

Use the Windows logo key  + **D** key combination to switch between the Start screen and Windows Desktop (see *Table E - 3* overleaf for further information).

Menu/Application Keyboard Shortcut

When the Desktop app is running you can use the Menu/Application key  on the keyboard to display the context menu as per a mouse right-click. In the Start screen this function is useful to quickly display the **All Apps** icon.

Keyboard Shortcuts

The following Windows Logo Key (Winkey) keyboard shortcuts are useful for navigation/operation in *Windows 8*.

Windows Logo  Key +	Description
Tap Winkey	Toggle between the Start screen and the foremost running app or the Windows Desktop
C	Display Charms menu
D	Switch to the Windows Desktop and toggle show Desktop
E	Switch to the Windows desktop and launch Windows Explorer with Computer displayed
F	Display file Search
I	Open the Settings charm
K	Open the Connect charm
L	Lock the computer and display the Lock screen
P	Display the Second Screen menu (see Figure E - 14 on page E - 16)
R	Switch to the Windows Desktop and display the Run dialog box
Z	Access the App Bar (see Figure E - 4 on page E - 5)

Table E - 3 - Keyboard Shortcuts

Function/Hot Key Indicators & Control Center

The function/hot key indicators and Control Center function in the same manner as outlined for *Windows 7* on “*Function/Hot Key Indicators*” on page 1 - 15 and “*Control Center*” on page 1 - 16. However both of these functions work under the **Desktop** app (see “*Desktop Application*” on page E - 4) and not under the Start screen, and the Control Center does not feature the wireless/Bluetooth buttons and Airplane Mode etc.



Control Center

Click on any button to turn any of the modules (e.g. TouchPad, Camera) on/off.

Click on the power conservation modes to switch between Performance, Balanced or Energy Star modes (see page 3 - 10). To remove the Power Conservation Modes screen just click in a blank area of the icon or press a key on the keyboard.

Click on the buttons (or just click and hold the mouse button) to adjust the slider for Brightness/Volume.

Click on Display Switch and click to choose a display mode from the menu (see page C - 10).



Figure E - 13 - Control Center

Video Features

You can switch display devices, and configure display options, from the **Display** control panel (in **Appearances and Personalization**) in *Windows 8* in the same manner as *Windows 7* running the **Desktop** app (see “*Desktop Application*” on page E - 4 and *Appendix C*). In *Windows 8* it is possible to quickly configure external displays from the **Devices** menu item in the **Charms Bar** (see “*Windows 8 Charms Bar*” on page E - 6).

To Configure Displays from Devices (Charms Bar):

1. Attach your display to the appropriate port, and turn it on.
2. Go to the **Charms Bar** and select **Devices**.
3. Click **Second Screen**.
4. Click on any one of the options from the menu to select Duplicate, Extend or a Single display.

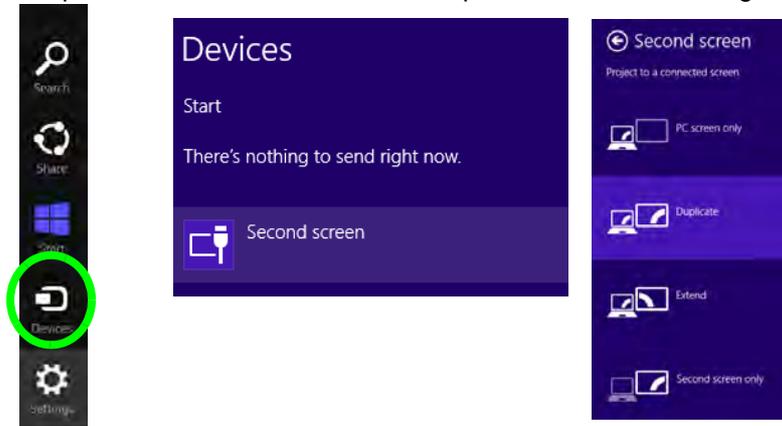


Figure E - 14 - Second Screen (Devices)

Power Options

Power Options can be accessed from the Control Panel in the same manner as *Windows 7* from the Desktop app. The **Power** item in **Settings** in the **Charms Bar** in *Windows 8* may be used to **Shut down**, **Restart** or send the computer to **Sleep**.

Shut Down, Restart or Sleep

1. Go to the **Charms Bar** and click **Settings**.
2. Click **Power** .
3. Select **Sleep**, **Shut Down** or **Restart**.

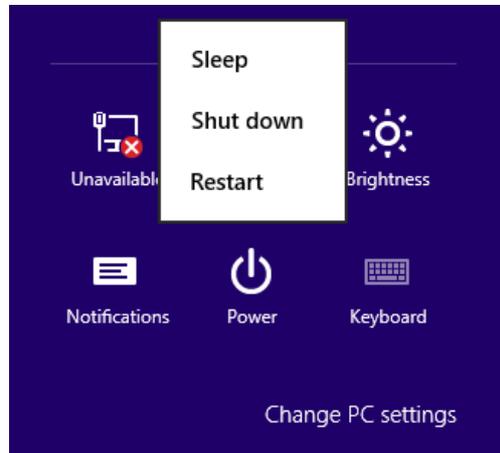


Figure E - 15 - Power (Settings)

Windows 8

Ctrl + Alt + Delete Key Combination

You can use the **CTRL + ALT + DEL** key combination from almost any of the *Windows 8* interfaces/apps to bring up a full-screen displaying **Lock**, **Switch User**, **Log off**, **Change a password** and **Task Manager** options. If you click the **Power** icon in the lower right corner of the screen a power management option menu appears to display **Sleep**, **Shut down**, and **Restart**.

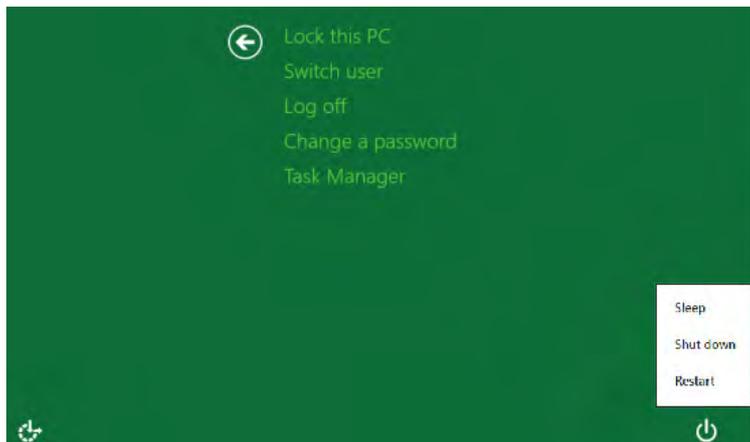


Figure E - 16 - CTRL + ALT + DEL Menu

To fully control all the power options (including Hibernate mode) go to the **Power Options** control panel and configure the power button, sleep button and lid (see *Figure E - 17 on page E - 19*) to perform the function selected.

E - 18 Power Options

Wake On LAN Settings

If you require your computer to wake up from network activity in *Windows 8* then make sure that the computer is either in **Sleep** or **Hibernate**. The power/sleep button (**Fn + F4** key combo) and closed lid may be set to send the computer in to a power-saving state. Click **Choose what the power buttons do** on the left menu in **Power Options** to bring up the menu.

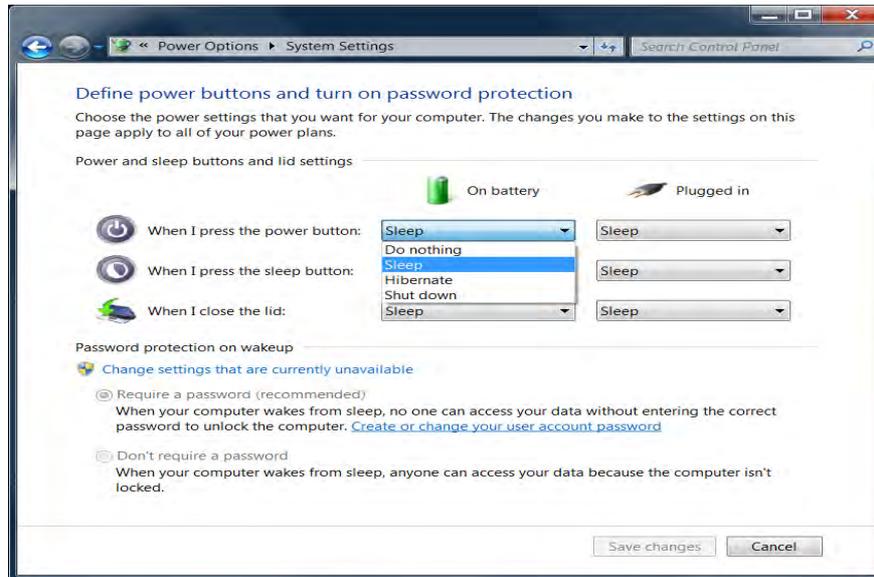


Figure E - 17 - Power Options Define Power Buttons



Wake On LAN Support (Windows 8)

Wake-On-LAN is only supported from **Sleep** or **Hibernate** states in *Windows 8*.

Wake-On-LAN is not supported from Shut-down states in *Windows 8*.



Screen Resolution for Metro Style Apps (Windows 8)

The minimum resolution in which Metro style apps will run is **1024x768**.

The minimum resolution required to support all the features of Windows 8 (including multitasking with snap) is **1366x768**.

These specs are the minimum screen resolution that supports all the features of Windows 8 on a useful physical size.

Running Metro UI Apps

To run Apps in the Metro UI in *Windows 8* you will need to check that the **Screen Resolution** and **User Account Control Settings** are compatible with the system requirements:

Screen Resolution Settings

1. Switch to the Windows Desktop (click the App or use the Windows logo key  + D key combination).
2. Right-click a blank area of the Windows Desktop and select **Screen Resolution**.
3. Adjust the **Resolution** to make sure that it is at least **1024 * 768**, although preferably **1366 * 768** or above (see sidebar).

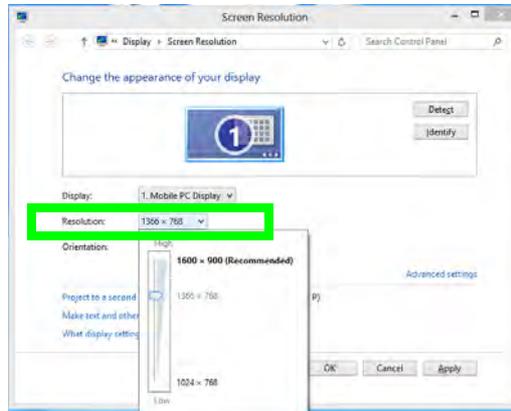


Figure E - 18 - Screen Resolution

User Account Control Settings

If your computer meets the minimum screen resolution requirements, and still you can't run Metro Apps, then that you have to check the status of **User Account Control** (UAC). Metro Apps may fail to open when the UAC is turned off. To check whether the UAC is on or off, follow the instructions below.

1. Open the **Control Panel** (see *“Windows 8 Control Panel” on page E - 8*).
2. Click on **User Accounts** and then click on **Change User Account Control settings** (or click **System and Security** and click **Change User Account Control Settings** under **Action Center**).
3. If the slider is in the **Never notify** position, then the UAC is disabled.
4. To enable or turn on the UAC, move the slider to **Always notify** or **Notify me when apps try to make changes to my computer (default)** position, and then click **OK**.

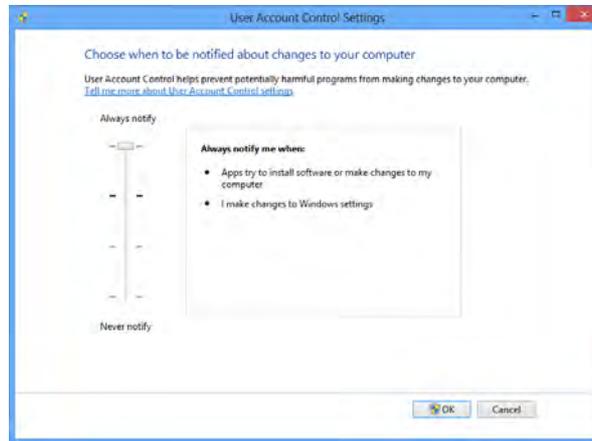


Figure E - 19 - User Account Control

Drivers & Utilities

Make sure you install all the drivers and utilities for your system. Follow the instructions in *Chapter 4 “Drivers & Utilities” on page 4 - 1* / *“Modules & Options” on page 7 - 1* for installing all the basic system drivers and module drivers for *Windows 7 & 8*.

However note that the **USB 3.0 driver is not required for Windows 8**, and that the **PC Camera driver is only required for 14.0” / 35.56cm Model A computers**.

Driver Installation (Windows 8)

1. Insert the *Device Drivers & Utilities + User's Manual* disc into the computer's DVD drive.
2. Click the message "Tap to choose what happens with this disc."
3. Click **Run autorun.exe**.



Figure E - 20 - Autorun Driver Installation Disc

4. Click **Install Drivers** (button), or **Option Drivers** (button) to access the **Optional** driver menu.
5. Check the driver installation order from [Table E - 4, on page E - 24](#) (the drivers must be installed in this order) which is the same as that listed in the **Drivers Installer** menu below.
6. Click to select the driver you wish to install, (you should note down the drivers as you install them).
7. Follow the instructions for each individual driver installation procedure as listed on the appropriate pages.

Windows 8

Win 7 SP1/Win 8 Driver	Page #	Win 7 SP1/Win 8 Driver	Page #
Chipset	Page 4 - 6	PC Camera Module (Only 14.0" / 35.56cm Model A computers require a camera driver for Windows 8)	Page 7 - 3
Video (VGA)	Page 4 - 6	Wireless LAN Module (see page E - 30)	Page 7 - 11
LAN	Page 4 - 6	Intel® Wireless Display Application	Page 7 - 32
CardReader	Page 4 - 6	Bluetooth & WLAN Combo Module (see page E - 37)	Page 7 - 37
Touchpad	Page 4 - 6	3G Module (for Models A & B only & see page E - 42)	Page 7 - 44
Hot Key	Page 4 - 7	Trusted Platform Module	Page 7 - 91
USB 3.0 is not required for Windows 8		Intel Rapid Storage Technology (required for hard disks in AHCI mode)	Page 7 - 105
MEI Driver	Page 4 - 7	Intel® Smart Connect Technology	Page 7 - 106
Audio	Page 4 - 7		

Table E - 4 - Driver Installation

All drivers provided are for Windows 7 with Service Pack 1 or Windows 8.

Note that you need to install both the WLAN & Bluetooth drivers for the Intel and 3rd party WLAN & Bluetooth Combo modules.

PC Camera (Windows 8)

Use the **Fn + F10** key combination (see *“Function/Hot Key Indicators” on page 1 - 15*) or **Control Center button** to toggle power to the PC Camera module.

A PC Camera driver is only required if you have a **Model A** computer with a **14"/35.56cm screen** (see *“PC Camera Driver Installation” on page 7 - 4*). **Model B & C** computers **do not require any driver installation**.

When the **14"/35.56cm screen Model A** PC Camera is in use the power LED indicator will blink orange (see *Table 1 - 2, on page 1 - 11*).

When the **Model B/C** PC Camera is in use the LED indicator to the left of the camera will be illuminated in **red** (see **2** *Figure 1 - 4 on page 1 - 9/Figure 1 - 4 on page 1 - 9*).

Note that you need to use the **Camera App** in *Windows 8* to take pictures and capture video (the camera application listed in **Chapter 7** is for *Windows 7* only).

Metro UI Camera App

1. Make sure the PC Camera is turned on by using the **Fn + F10** key combination (or **Control Center button**).
2. Run the Camera App from the Metro UI by clicking on the **Camera App icon** .
3. The camera interface is a translucent app bar with three buttons.

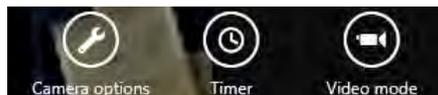


Figure E - 21 - Camera App Bar

- **Camera options:**. Click this button to open a window with three main options:


Camera Options

- **Resolution** (determined by the camera spec)
- **Audio device** (select microphone to use)
- **Video Stabilization** (a toggle based on spec of the camera)

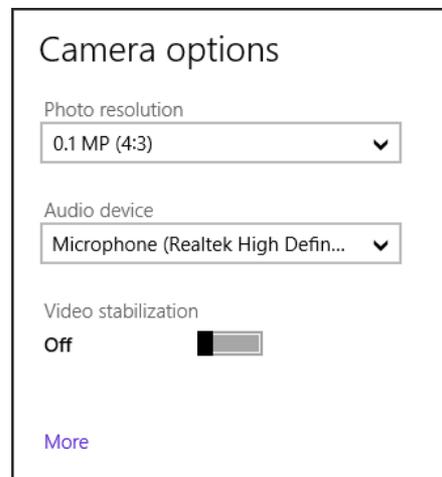


Figure E - 22 - Camera Options

You can also click on **More** to adjust **Brightness**, **Contrast** and **Flicker** (if you find that the video screen in the camera program is flickering, you can try to adjust the setting here),

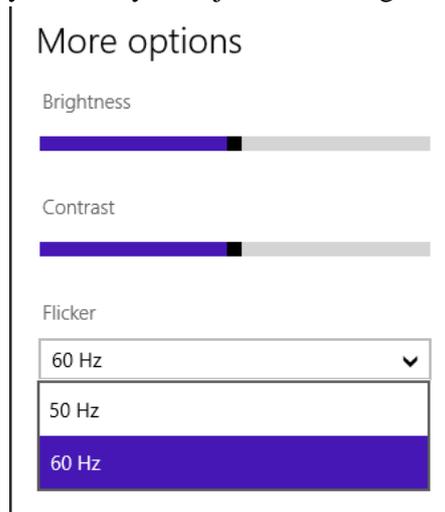


Figure E - 23 -More Camera Options

- **Timer:** This button will start a three second countdown before the system takes a still photo or video recording starts.
- **Video Mode:** This button toggles between still photo mode (transparent button ) and video recording mode (highlighted white button )

Taking Pictures/Capturing Video

1. Make sure the PC Camera is turned on by using the **Fn + F10** key combination (or **Control Center button**).
2. Run the Camera App from the Metro UI by clicking on the **Camera App** icon .
3. Click to select the timer if you require a countdown before capture.
4. Click to select either photo or video modes.
5. Click in the main window to take a picture or start video capture (if video capture begins a timer will appear in the bottom right corner of the screen).
6. To stop video capture click the main window again.
7. Captured photos and videos will be saved to a **Camera Roll** folder within the **Picture** folder in **Libraries**.

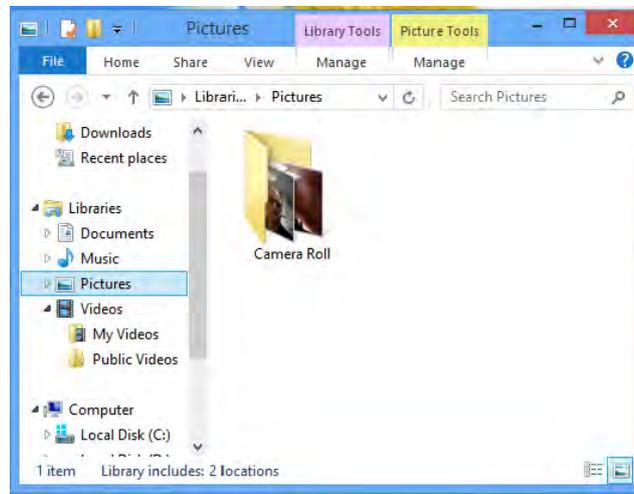


Figure E - 24 - Libraries - Pictures

8. A scroll arrow will appear on the left side of the screen after any pictures/videos have been captured.
9. Click the arrows (on either side of the screen) to browse through the captured photos/video, and back to the Camera App.
10. Clicking on a captured photo will bring up an App bar with **Crop** and **Delete** buttons.



Figure E - 25 - Crop & Delete Buttons (for Still Photos)

11. Use the handles to **Crop** any captured picture, and click **OK** to save the changes made.
12. Click **Delete** to delete any captured photo (note that no prompt will appear to confirm the delete).
13. Right-click any captured video to bring up app bar with **Trim** and **Delete** buttons.



Figure E - 26 - Trim & Delete Buttons (for Video Files)

14. Use the buttons at either end of the slider to adjust the video length and click **OK** to save the changes made.

Wireless LAN Settings (Windows 8)

If you have included an **Intel® or 3rd Party** Wireless LAN (or WLAN & Bluetooth combo) module in your purchase option, make sure that the WLAN module is on before installing the driver.

Use the **Fn + F11 key combination** (see *“Function/Hot Key Indicators” on page 1 - 15*) or **Control Center button to toggle power to the Wireless LAN module**. Make sure you install the drivers in the order indicated in *Table 4 - 1, on page 4 - 3*. See *“3rd Party 802.11b/g/n Driver Installation” on page 7 - 12* or *“Intel® WLAN Driver Installation” on page 7 - 13* for driver installation information, however see overleaf for WLAN configuration information in *Windows 8*.

Note that you need to install both the WLAN & Bluetooth drivers for the Intel and 3rd party WLAN & Bluetooth Combo modules.

WLAN Configuration in Windows 8

You can configure a wireless connection using one of the following options, however make sure the Wireless LAN module is turned on (and not in Airplane Mode) before configuration begins.

Charms Bar

1. Go to the **Charms Bar**.
2. Select **Settings** and then click the **WiFi icon** (it should read **Available** under the icon and **Airplane mode** should be **Off**).
3. A list of available access points will appear.

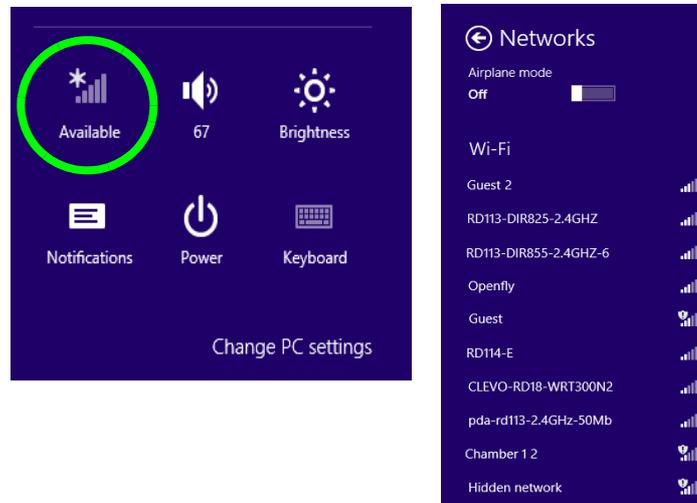


Figure E - 27 - WiFi Settings (Charms Bar) & Networks

Windows 8

4. Double-click an access point to connect to it (or click it and click **Connect**).
5. Enter a network security key (password) if required, and click **Next**.
6. You can choose to share or connect to devices or not.
7. When you are connected to the network access point it will display the Connected icon **Connected** .
8. Select any connected network and click **Disconnect**  to disconnect from a connected access point.

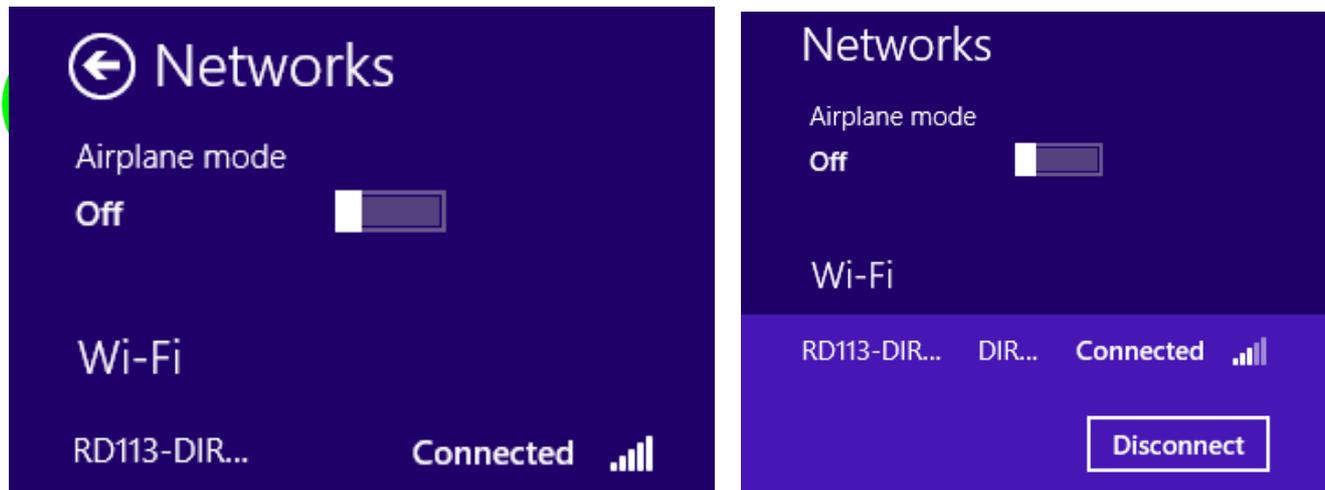


Figure E - 28 - Networks Connected / Disconnect

9. You can click the **Airplane Mode** button to turn the mode On or Off.
10. If you click on **Change PC Settings** (at the bottom of **Settings** in the **Charms Bar**) you can turn **Wireless** or **Airplane Mode** On/Off (see over).

E - 32 Wireless LAN Settings (Windows 8)

11. You need to either use **Airplane Mode**, or to **turn the WLAN module off** aboard aircraft.

The image shows a screenshot of the Windows 8 'PC settings' application. On the left is a navigation pane with the following options: Activate Windows, Personalize, Users, Notifications, Search, Share, General, Privacy, Devices, and Wireless (which is highlighted in blue). The main content area shows two settings:

- Airplane mode**: Turn this on to stop wireless communication. The toggle switch is currently in the 'Off' position.
- Wireless devices**: The 'Wi-Fi' toggle switch is currently in the 'On' position.

To the right of the settings is a red rounded rectangle containing a warning icon (a bell with a slash) and the following text:

Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited.

Make sure the module is either **OFF** or in **Airplane Mode** (for **Windows 8** only) if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

Figure E - 29 - PC Settings (Wireless)

Windows 8

Desktop Mode

1. Switch to the Windows Desktop (click the App or use the Windows logo key **+** **D** key combination).
2. Click the wireless icon  in the notification area of the taskbar.
3. A list of available access points will appear.
4. Double-click an access point to connect to it (or click it and click **Connect**).
5. Enter a network security key (password) if required, and click **Next**.
6. You can choose to share or connect to devices or not.
7. Select any connected network and click **Disconnect** to disconnect from a connected access point.

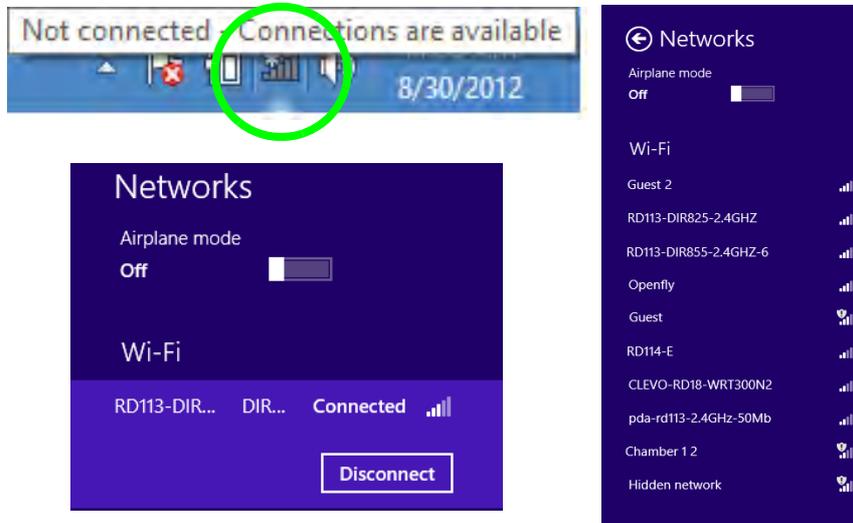


Figure E - 30 - Windows Desktop Taskbar Notification Area WLAN Connection

Control Panel

If you are in **Category View** do the following (see over for Icon View):

1. Open the **Control Panel** (see *“Windows 8 Control Panel” on page E - 8*).
2. Click the **Network and Internet** control panel.
3. Click **Connect to a network**.

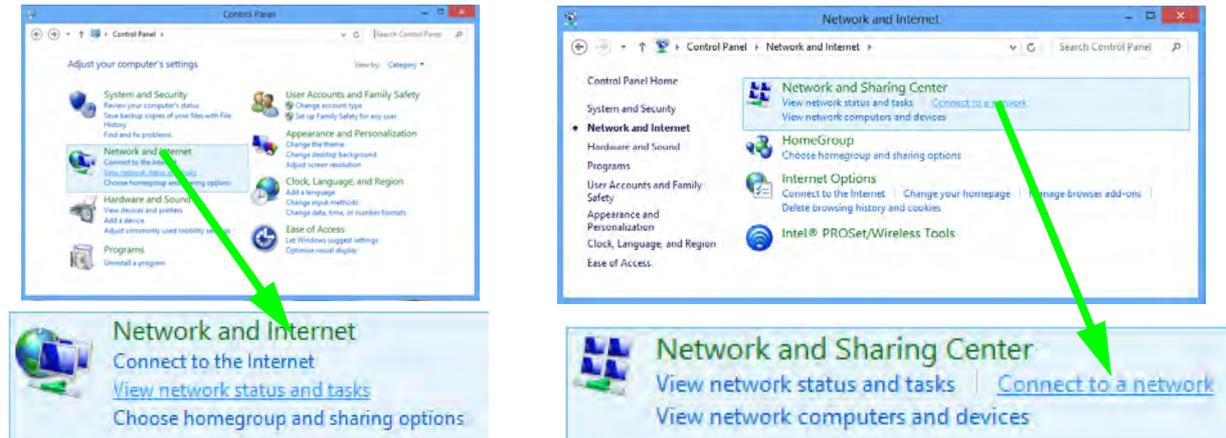


Figure E - 31 - Network and Internet Control Panel

4. A list of available access points will appear.
5. Double-click an access point to connect to it (or click it and click **Connect**).
6. Enter a network security key (password) if required, and click **Next**.
7. You can choose to share or connect to devices or not.
8. Select any connected network and click **Disconnect** to disconnect from a connected access point.

Windows 8

If you are in **Icon View** do the following:

1. Open the **Control Panel** (see “*Windows 8 Control Panel*” on page E - 8).
2. Click **Network and Sharing Center**.
3. Click **Change Adapter Settings**.
4. Double-click **Wi-Fi**.



Figure E - 32 - Network and Sharing Center Control Panel

5. A list of available access points will appear.
6. Double-click an access point to connect to it (or click it and click **Connect**).
7. Enter a network security key (password) if required, and click **Next**.
8. You can choose to share or connect to devices or not.
9. Select any connected network and click **Disconnect** to disconnect from a connected access point.

E - 36 Wireless LAN Settings (Windows 8)

Bluetooth Settings (Windows 8)

If your purchase option includes the **Combination Wireless LAN & Bluetooth module** (either **Intel®** or **3rd Party**) then install the driver as instructed in **Chapter 7** (see links below).

Use the **Fn + F12** key combination or **Control Center** button to toggle power to the **Bluetooth** module.



Bluetooth Data Transfer

Note that the transfer of data between the computer and a Bluetooth enabled device is supported in **one direction only (simultaneous data transfer is not supported)**. Therefore if you are copying a file from your computer to a Bluetooth enabled device, you will not be able to copy a file from the Bluetooth enabled device to your computer until the file transfer process from the computer has been completed.

- For **3rd party Bluetooth modules** see *“3rd Party Bluetooth (V4.0) Combo Driver Installation” on page 7 - 38.*
- For **Intel Bluetooth combo modules** see the installation procedure see *“Intel Bluetooth Combo Driver Installation” on page 7 - 39.*

Bluetooth Configuration in Windows 8

You can configure a Bluetooth connection as below, however make sure the Bluetooth module is turned on (and not in Airplane Mode) before configuration begins.

Desktop Mode

1. Switch to the Windows Desktop (click the App or use the Windows logo key **+** **D** key combination).
2. Click the notification area of the taskbar and double-click the Bluetooth icon  (or click and select **Show Bluetooth Devices**).
3. The **Devices** item in **PC Settings** will appear.

OR

Charms Bar

1. Go to the **Charms Bar**.
2. Select **Settings** and then click **Change PC Settings**.
3. The **Devices** item in **PC Settings** will appear.

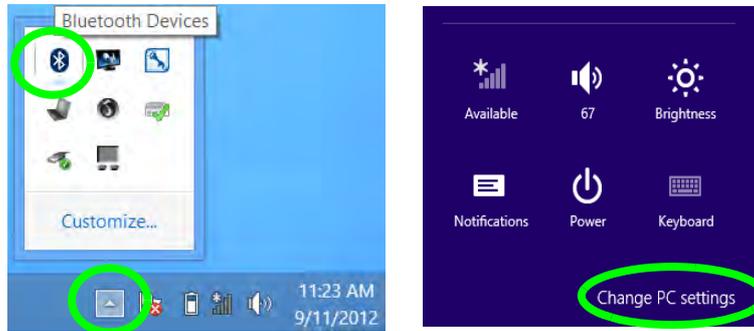


Figure E - 33 - Bluetooth Taskbar Icon & Change PC Settings (Charms Bar -Settings)

4. Click **Add a Device**.
5. Double-click the device you want to pair with the computer.

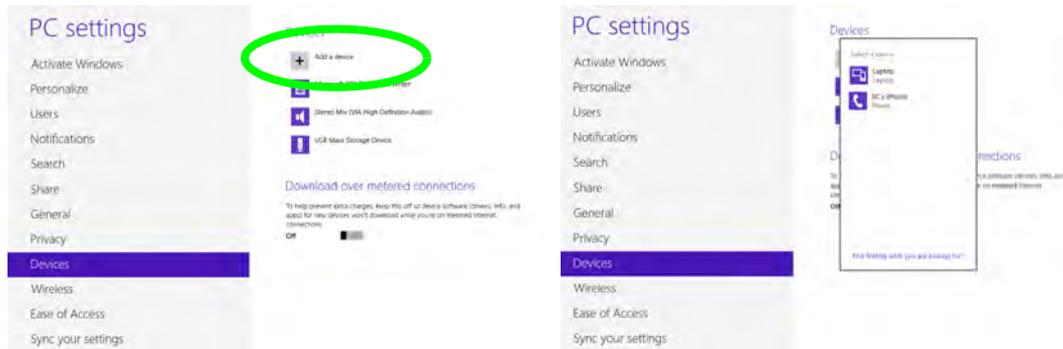


Figure E - 34 - PC Settings (Devices) - Add A Device

6. On first connection the computer will provide you with a pairing code to be entered onto the device.

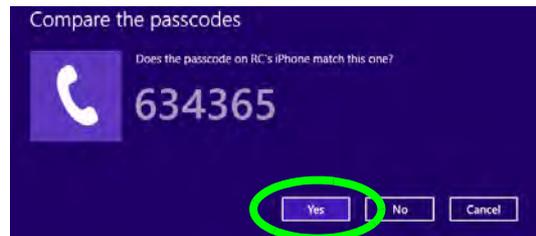


Figure E - 35 - Enter the Passcode

7. Enter the code into your Bluetooth enabled device and click **Yes** on the computer to complete the pairing.

8. You need to either use **Airplane Mode**, or to **turn the Bluetooth module off** aboard aircraft.

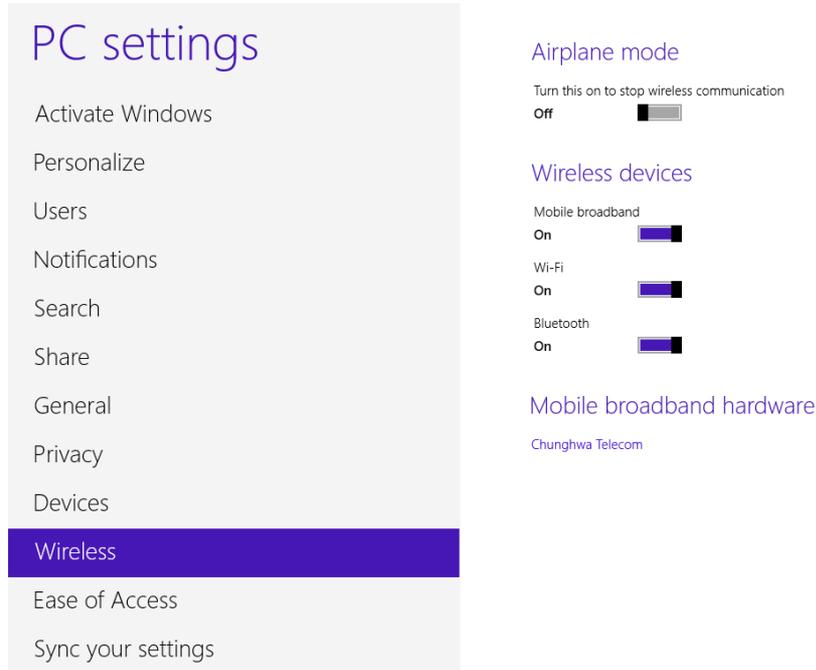


Figure E - 36 - PC Settings (Wireless)



To Make your Computer Discoverable to Bluetooth Devices

1. Switch to the Windows Desktop (click the App or use the Windows logo key **⊞** + **D** key combination).
2. Click the notification area of the taskbar, click the Bluetooth icon  and click **Open Settings**.
3. Click **Options**, and make sure that **Allow Bluetooth devices to find this computer** check box (**Discovery**) has a tick inside it.
4. Make sure that the **Alert me when a new Bluetooth device wants to connect** check box (**Connections**) has a tick inside it, if you want to be notified when a Bluetooth device wants to connect.

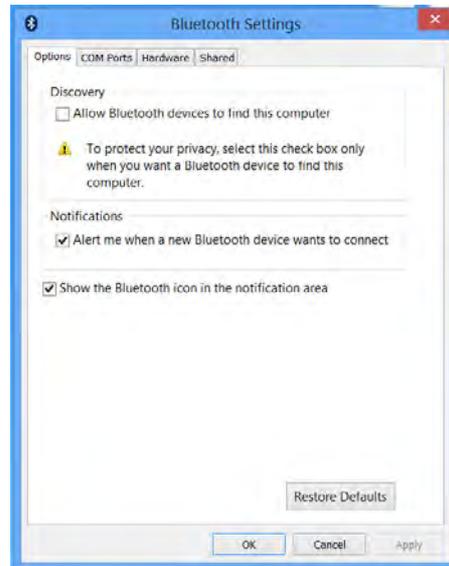


Figure E - 37 - Bluetooth Settings

3G Settings (Windows 8)

If you have included an **optional UMTS/HSPDA OR UMTS/HSPDA+** based 3G Module (Universal Mobile Telecommunications System or High Speed Packet Access) module (see “*Communication*” on page D - 5 for specification details) in your purchase option, *you do not require a driver/application installation for Windows 8*. Follow the instructions on page 7 - 45 to install the USIM card (which will be provided by your service provider), and then **use the Charms Bar Wireless icon to access the 3G network** in the same manner as the WLAN (see overleaf).



Important Notice - 3.75G/HSPA & Bluetooth/Wireless LAN Modules

In order to comply with FCC regulations you should NOT operate the 3.75G/HSPA module and the Bluetooth/Wireless LAN modules at the same time as this may disrupt radio frequency, and cause interference. When the 3.75G/HSPA module is powered on, make sure that the Bluetooth/Wireless LAN modules are powered off.

Wireless Device Operation Aboard Aircraft

The use of any portable electronic transmission devices aboard aircraft is usually prohibited.

Make sure the module is either **OFF** or in **Airplane Mode** (for *Windows 8* only) if you are using the computer aboard aircraft.

3G Configuration in Windows 8

You can configure a 3G connection as below, however make sure the 3G module is turned on by pressing the **Fn + []** key combination (give the module about 10 seconds to power on) or Control Center button (and not in Airplane Mode) before configuration begins.

Charms Bar

1. Go to the **Charms Bar**.
2. Select **Settings** and then click the **WiFi icon** (it should read **Available** under the icon and **Airplane mode** should be **Off**).
3. A list of available access points will appear.

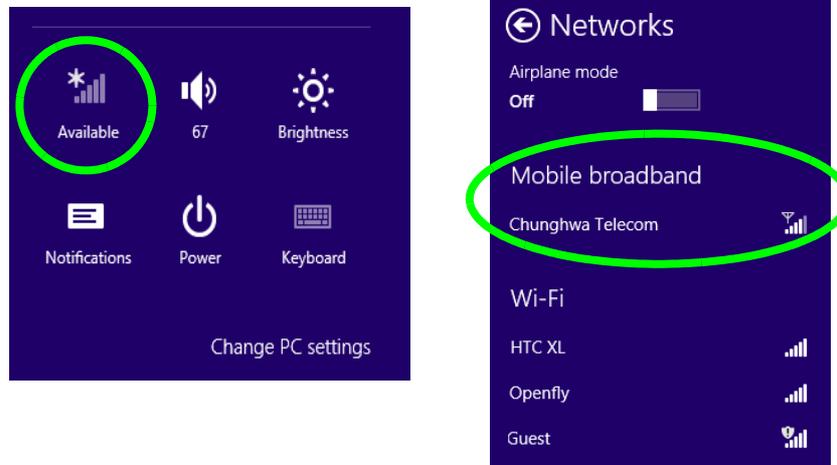


Figure E - 38 - WiFi Settings (Charms Bar) & Networks (with Mobile Broadband)

Windows 8

- Any 3G service provider (connection information is usually stored on the USIM card) will appear under Mobile Broadband.
- Double-click any connection icon under Mobile Broadband (or click and click **Connect**).



Figure E - 39 - Mobile Broadband (Connect)

- The system will connect to your network.
- A **Connected** will appear alongside the 3G connection (click the connection to view the timer which indicates your connected time for the current session).

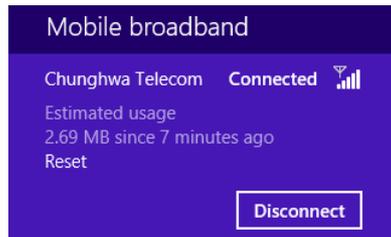


Figure E - 40 - Mobile Broadband (Disconnect)

8. You can then access the internet, download e-mail etc. as per any internet connection.
9. To disconnect you can select the connection and click **Disconnect** .
10. You need to either use **Airplane Mode**, or to **turn the Mobile Broadband module off** aboard aircraft.

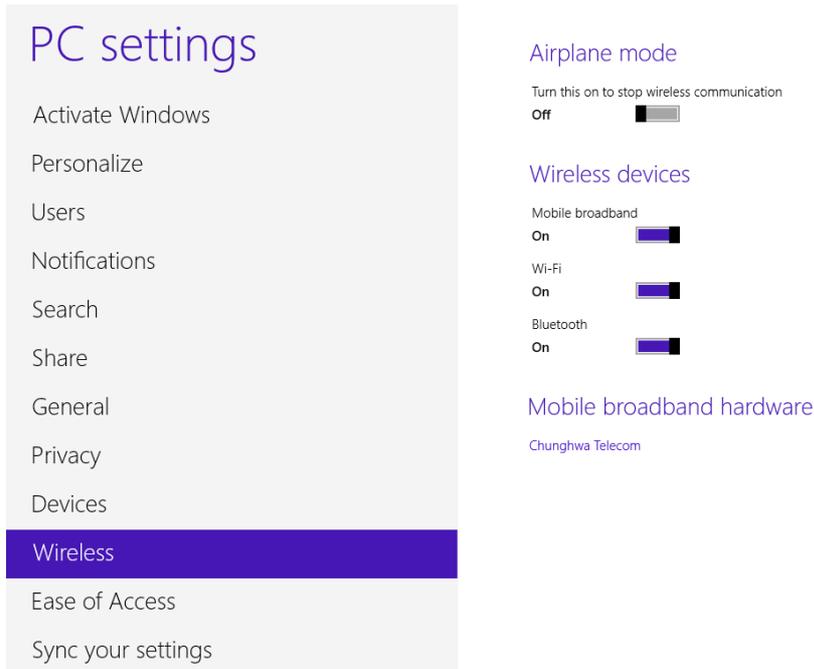


Figure E - 41 - PC Settings (Wireless)



EM820W 3G Module PIN Code & Power-Saving

Note that there may be some issues when a PIN Code is set for the EM820W 3G module (if you are unsure of your module version contact your distributor/supplier) in *Windows 8*, Mobile Broadband has been turned off, and the system has resumed from a power-saving state. **To prevent any issues it is recommended that you simply do not enable a PIN for the EM820W 3G module.** The following provides instructions for disabling the PIN code; for specific instructions on resolving the issue where “**Insert a SIM**” appears in the connection see *“Resolving the “Insert a SIM” issue with the 3G Module (Windows 8)” on page 8 - 16.*

Disabling a PIN code for a 3G Module

1. Go to the **Charms Bar**.
2. Select **Settings** and then click the **WiFi icon**.
3. Right-click the 3G connection and select **View connection properties**.

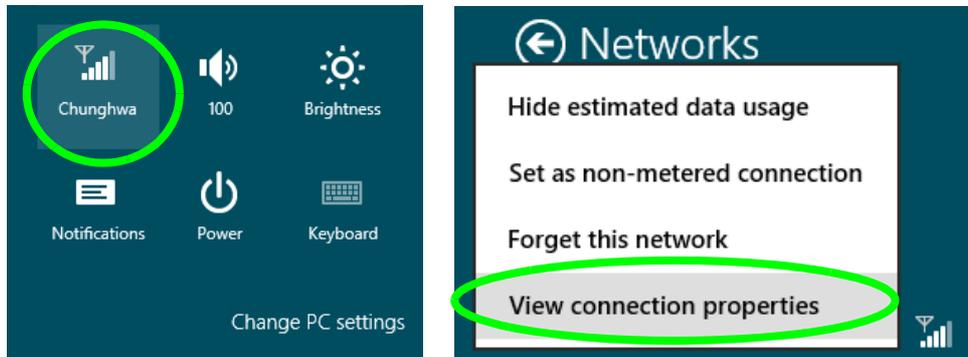


Figure E - 42 - WiFi Settings (Charms Bar) & Right-Click Connection to View Properties

4. Click **Security** (tab) and click **Disable PIN**.
5. Enter the PIN number and click **Disable PIN** and click **OK** to confirm.
6. **It is recommended that you do not Enable a PIN for the EM820W 3G module.**

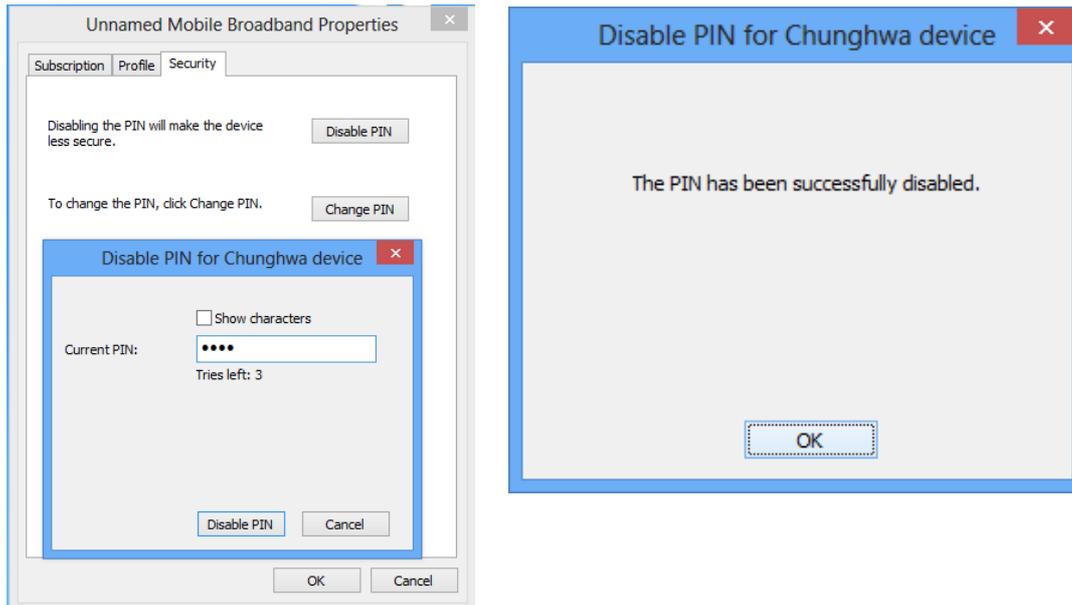


Figure E - 43 - Disable PIN

